GARDENERS

LABYRINTH

James Stephens.

1) HILL T

2) BROSSARD D.

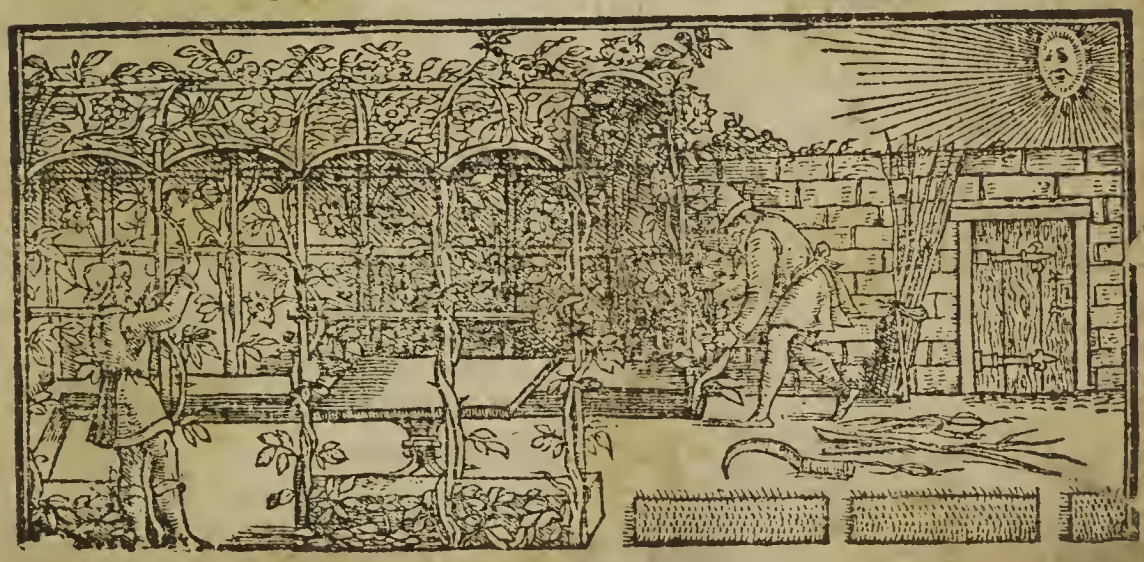
The Gardeners Labyrinth.

CONTAINING A DISCOVRSE of the Gardeners life, in the yearly trauels to be *bestowed on his plot of earth, for the vse of a Garden*: with instructions for the choice of seeds, *apt times for sowing, setting, planting, and* watering, and the vessels and instruments seruing to that vse and purpose:

Wherin are set forth diuers Herbers, Knots, and Mazes cunningly handled for the beautifying of Gardens.

Also the Physick benefit of each Herb, Plant, and Flowre, with the vertues of the distilled waters of euery of them, as by the sequele may further appeare.

Gathered out of the best approued writers of Gardening, Husbandrie, and Physicke: by *Dydimus Mountain.*



LONDON,
Printed by HENRY BALLARD.
1608.

TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND HIS SINGVLAR GOOD LORD, SIR *William Cecill,* Knight of the most noble Order of the Garter, Baron of Burghley, Lord high Treasurer *of England, &c.* Henry Dethicke *wisheth long* health, with increase of honour.

Onsidering (right Honourable) my *promise plighted vnto my friend, (lately enterred) I was enforced to performe the perfecting of this English Treatise: otherwise I had not so willingly attempted to solicite your honour with this vulgar stile. And sithens that reason requireth, and duety demandeth, the satisfying of the trust in me reposed, I doubt not but that mine enterprise will be allowed. Vnreasonable were I, and destitute of all humilitie, if that I would obstinatly neglect the earnest desire of the deceased: likewise, worthy were I to be deemed vndutifull, and altogether vngratefull, if that I should omit any opportunitie, whereby I might encrease so rare a commoditie to my countrey. I therefore respecting the request of my friend, and tendring the profite of my countrey, haue craued herein (as heretofore in all other mine affaires) your honours protection, and the rather, for that I find none (your honour excepted) neither in antient authoritie, neither by common consent, neither by present proofe, that hath more warily, and wisely warded the weale of this countrey. In fine, to auoid tediousnesse, I haue omitted all circumstances, wherby I might display the sundry commodities and rare rudiments, contained in this painefull, and gainful discourse: but surceasing to tra-*

uise farther in this terrestriall Gardeners Labyrinth, *I wish vnto your honour by daily praier, the fruition of the Heauenly Paradise, crauing of the omnipotent and prouident God, the guider of that gorgeous Garden, that he would vouchsafe to grant vnto you, the sweet sauour of his chiefe fragrant flowres, that is, his comfort to cleaue fast vnto you, his mercy to keepe you, and his grace to guide you, now and euermore.*

Your honours most humble,

HENRY DETHICKE.

cuerie Chapter contained in this Labyrinth.

THe first deuising of Garden plottes, with their commodities in time past. Chap. 1:

The diligence required of a Gardener, and what increase a well laboured earth yeeldeth. chap. 2.

The chusing of a Garden plotte, with the goodnes of the earth. chap. 3.

Of plainer instructions for the chusing of a battle ground, with other matter necessary. chap. 4.

Of the placing of a Garden plot, with the commodities thereunto belonging. chap. 5.

What aire is noious to men and to plants, and why a Garden should be placed nigh to the owners house. cha. 6.

The forme of inclosures inuented by the Romanes. chap. 7.

The inuentions of erecting a strong hedge, for the defence of a Garden. chap. 8.

The cause why dunging of Gardens was misliked in ancient time neare vnto houses, and what dunge is best allowed for pot hearbes. chap 9.

Of the kindes of dung, and which is commended for a Garden. chap. 10.

What is to be considered before the leuelling of Beddes. chap. 11.

Of the framing of hearbs, walkes, and Alleis in a Garden. chap. 12.

The form of disposing quarters, beds, and borders, with the sowing, choice, and defence of the seedes, with the weeding of beddes. chap. 13.

The artly disposing of beddes for the increase of Kitchin hearbes, with the witty defences to be vsed after the seeds are bestowed. chap. 14.

The workmanly diuiding of Beds, for rootes and hearbs. chap. 15.

The rare inuentions for the defence of seedes committed to the earth, that they may not be indamaged by Birds and creeping things. chap 16.

The witty helps for the Garden seeds to be imploied before and after the sowing of them, lest that they should bee harmed by outward or inward iniuries. chap. 17.

Of the nature and election of sundry seedes, with the apt times commended for the sowing of Kitchin hearbes. chap. 18.

Certaine precepts for the sowing of delectable flowres & tender herbs, with the obseruations of the Moone. chap. 19.

The commended times to be obserued in the bestowing of seeds and plants in the earth, with the discommodities. chap 20.

Of certaine curious instructions, for the bestowing of seedes and daintie hearbes. chap. 21.

In what space of time seeds committed to the earth in the increase of the Moone, commonly shoot vp. chap. 22.

What diligence is to be had in weeding of a Garden. chap. 23.

Of the times of watering beddes, and what manner of water ought to be vsed for plants, with the inuentions of vessels. chap. 24.

Of the remouing of plantes, with the breaking and slipping of sundry sets. chap. 25.

Certaine instructions for the gathering and preseruing of Kitchin hearbes and rootes, with flowres, daintie hearbs, and

and rootes to the vse of Physicke. chap.26.
The remedies which preuaile against Snailes, Canker-wormes, Garden-fleas, and Earth-wormes. chap.27.
The helps against Garden Moles, Ants, Gnats, Fleas, and Frogs, wasting hearbs, trees, and fruits. chap.28.
Of rare practises against Serpents of the Garden, and other venemous things, hurting aswell men as Kitchin hearbes, trees, and fruits. chap.22.
Of the helps against Scorpions, Todes, Garden Mice, Weasels, and all other beasts, wasting hearbes and fruits. chap.30.
Of remedies against haile, lightnings, tempests, and beating downe of Kitchin hearbes, trees, and fruits. chap.31.
Of the helps against frosts, blasting of trees, mists, and rust. chap.32.
Certaine proper knots deuised for Gardens, to be placed at the owners discretion.

The Chapters conteined in the second part.

THe secrets in sowing and remoouing the Garden Colewort, with the Physicke helps of the Colewort, and distilled water thereof. Chap.1.
The order of sowing the Beete, with the physicke helps of the Beete, and water distilled thereof. chap.2.
The order in sowing or setting of the Bleete, with the commodities thereof. chap.3.
The order in sowing or setting of Arage, with the physick helps therof. cha.4
The sowing & remouing of Sperage, with the physicke helps therof. chap.5.
The ordering and sowing of Spinage, with the physicke helps thereof. chap.6.
The ordering and sowing of the garden Sorrell, with the physick helps of the Sorrell and Pimpernell, and the water distilled thereof. chap.7.
The ordering and sowing of Louage, and Buglosse, with the physicke helps of them both, and the water thereof. chap.8.
The figure of the Furnace named *Balneum Mariæ*. Fol.26.
The order of sowing, remouing, and setting the Marigolde, with the physicke helps of Marigoldes and water thereof. chap.9.
The ordering and sowing Parcely, with the physicke helps of Parcely, and the water distilled thereof. chap.10.
The ordering and sowing of Garden and wild running Tyme, with the physicke helps of Tyme, and water thereof. chap.11.
The ordering and sowing of Mints and Holihoke, with the physicke helps of the Mints and Mallowes, and water thereof. chap.12.
The ordering and sowing of the Artochoke, with the physicke helps therof. chap.13.
The ordering and sowing of the Endiue and Succory, with the physicke helps both of them and the water thereof. chap.14.

The

The ordering and sowing of Lettuce, with the physicke helps of Lettuce, and the water thereof distilled. Chap. 15.

The ordering and sowing of Purselane and Rocket, with the physicke helps of them both, and of the water of Purselane. Chap. 16.

The ordering and sowing of Cheruil, Smallage, Taragon, and Cresses, with the Physicke helps of Cheruil and Garden Cresses, and the distilled waters thereof. Chap 17.

The ordering and sowing of Buckes horne, Strawberry, and Mustard seede, with the Physicke helps of them all, and water distilled from them. Chap. 18.

The ordering and sowing of Leekes and Ciues, with the Physicke helps of the Garden Leeke, and water thereof. Chap. 19.

The ordering and sowing of the Onion, with the physick commodities of the Onion, and water thereof. Chap. 20.

The ordering and sowing of Garlike, with the physicke helps of Garlike, and the water thereof. Chap. 21.

The inconuenientes of Garlik out of Pliny. fol. 103.

The ordering and sowing of the Scalion, and Squill Onion, with the physick helps thereof. Chap. 22.

The ordering of garden Saffron, with the physicke helps thereof. Chap. 23.

The ordering and sowing of Nauews, with the Physicke benefits thereof. Chap. 24.

The ordering and sowing of the Rape and Turnup, with the Physicke helps of the Rape, and water thereof. Chap. 25.

The ordering and sowing of Radish, with the Physick benefits of Radish, and the water thereof. Chap. 26.

The ordering and sowing of the Parsnips, and Carrets, with the physick helps of them, and the water of Parsnip. Chap. 27.

The ordering and sowing of the garden Poppie, with the physicke helps of Poppy, and the water therof. Chap. 28.

The ordering and sowing of Cucumber, with the physick commodities therof. Chap. 29.

The ordering & sowing of the Gourd, with the Physicke helps of the same, and the water thereof. Chap. 30.

The helps and secrets of the Pompons, Mellons, and muske Mellons, with the physicke commodities of the Pompons and Mellons, and the distilled water of Mellons. Chap. 31.

Worthy instructions about the setting and sowing of sundry physicke hearbes, fragrant hearbes and flowres, and of the blessed Thistle, with the physicke helps of the Thistle, and the water thereof. Chap. 32.

The setting and sowing of the hearbe Angellica, with the physicke helps therof. Chap. 33.

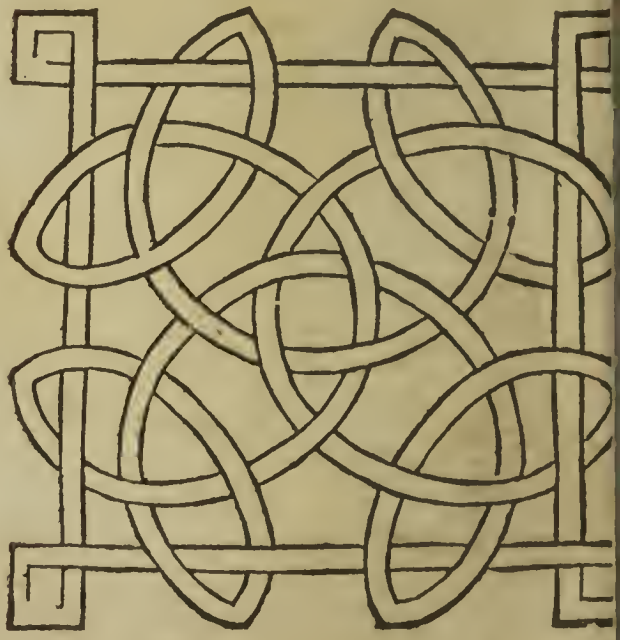
The sowing of the hearbe Velerian, with the physicke helps of the same, and the water of the hearbe and root therof. Chap. 34.

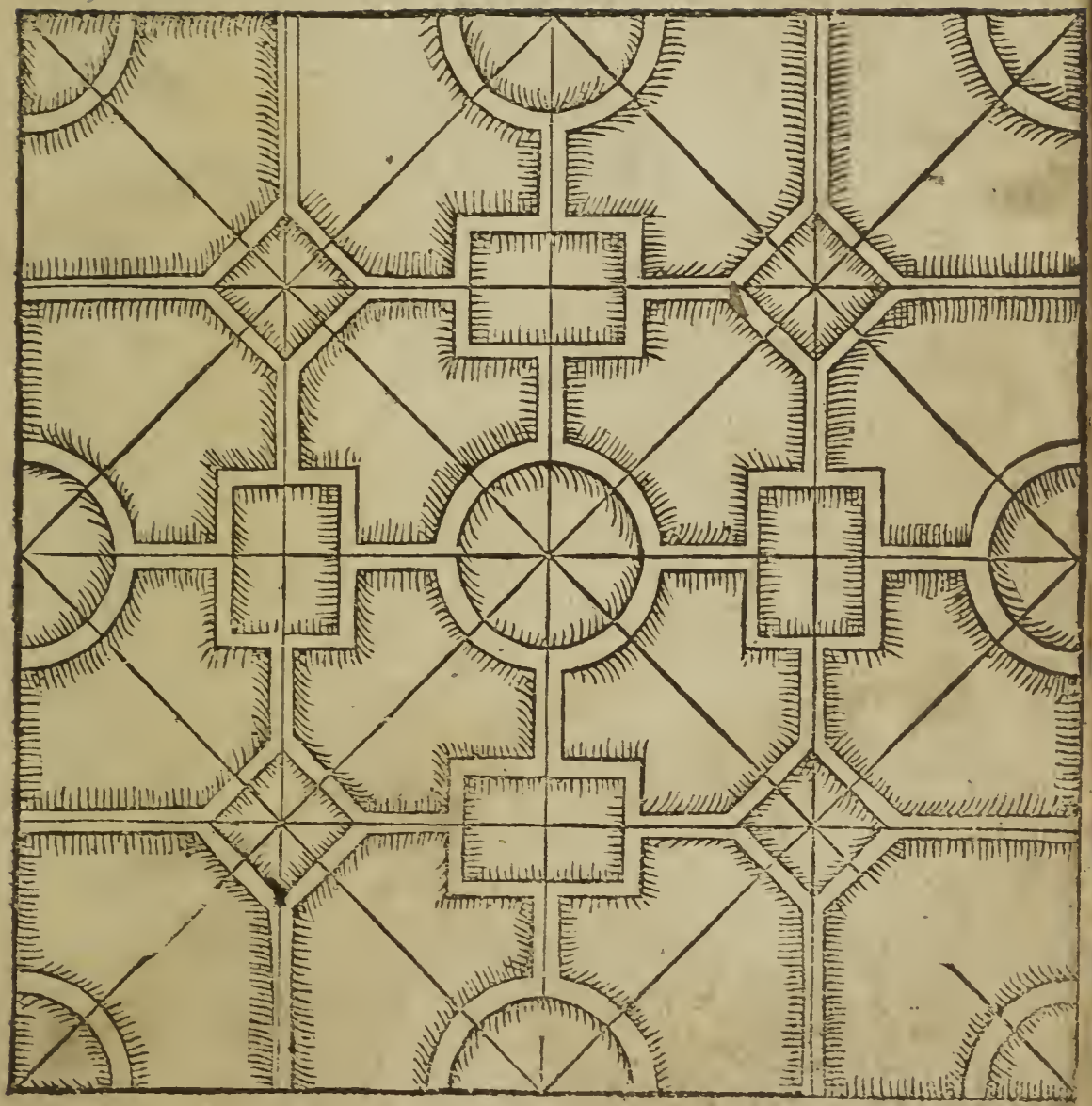
The bestowing of the Bittony, with the physicke commodities of the same, and the vertues of the water thereof. Chap. 35.

The bestowing of Louage, with the physicke helps, and vertues of the water thereof. Chap. 36.

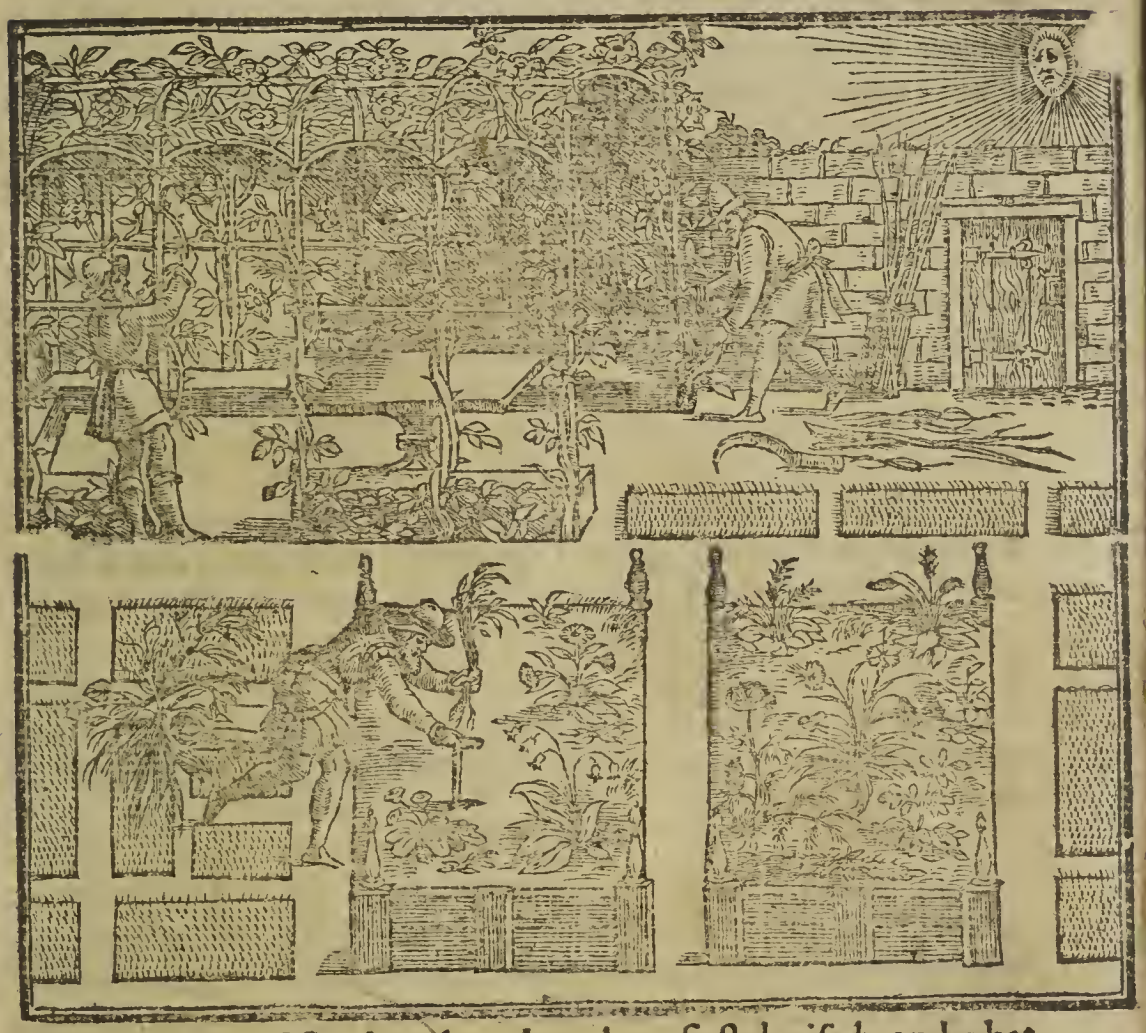
The bestowing of Elecampane, with the physicke helps of the same, and the water distilled of the hearbe and roote thereof. Chap. 37.

FINIS TABVLÆ.





fold trauels, great cares, and diligence, to be yearly bestowed in euery earth, for the vse of a Garden: with the later inuentions, and rare secrets thereunto added, (as the like) not heretofore published.



The inuention of Garden plots, by whom first deuised, and what commoditie found by them in times past. Chap. 1.

THe worthy Pliny (in his xix. booke) reporteth, that a Garden plotte in the ancient time at Rome, was none other, then a small and simple inclosure of ground, which through the labour and diligence of the Husbandman, yelded a commoditie and yearely reuenue vnto him. But after yeares (that man more esteemed

med of himselfe, and sought an easier life) deuised and framed this ground plotte for the mind, as for pleasure and delight: as may well appeare by that Epicure, of whom Cicero maketh mention, in his booke intituled De natura Deorum, who liuing at ease, and conceiuing a felicity in the Garden, endeuoured first to place and frame the same within the wals of Athens, which before (as it should seeme) lay open, and vndefended in the wild field, and the culture of it not had in so much estimation, as to place them nie to their townes and houses: For which cause, doth Plinie (by good reason) rightly attribute the inuention of the delectable garden to him. The Garden plottes, which the ancient Romanes possessed (as Plinie reporteth) were onely set about with trees, hauing a dead inclosure made onely of bushes, that needed reparing euerie yeare: in which especially were sowne the red Onions, Coleworts, great Leekes, Cresses, great Mallowes or holie Okes, Endiue, Rocket, and sundry sallet hearbes: In these they found such a commoditie, as marueilously pleased them, seeing they by enioying the hearbes, needed no fire about the dressing and preparing of them, and spared a charg of flesh, besides a daily profit that they got, by the hearbs and wood brought to the citie to be sold. The meaner sort of that time so little cared and esteemed the eating of flesh (who in generall accounted it a kind of reproch, to be knowen to haue eaten flesh) that they refusing this taunt, did (as to a shambles or flesh market) hant daily to the garden.

Columella reporteth lib. 10 that ẏ ancient husbandmen so slenderly loked vnto (or rather forced of) gardens, ẏ they in furthering the growth and yeld of their fruits and hearbes, bestowed small trauel and diligence. And as they appeared negligent in their labors of the garden, so were they well pleased with a mean liuing, insomuch that the common sort fedde and liued willingly on grosse and simple hearbes. But after the age and people were reformed, & brought by the instructiō of the Epicure, to a more delight of themselues in coueting to feed on dainty hearbes and Sallets, with meats delectable, and taking an earnester care for the pleasing of their mouths, they laboured then to become skilful, and to vse a greater care about the ordering and apt dressing of Garden plots, by wel fensing and comely furnishing of their ground, with sundry needful and delectable trees,

plants,

plants, and hearbes: in which trauels and diligence of the husbandmen, so good successe and commoditie ensuing, procured not only the willing carriage of hearbs, fruits, and other commodities farre off to be exercised vnto cities and market townes, by which these through the sale obtained a daily gaine and yearely reuenue, for the aide of their houshold charges, but allured them also to place and frame gardens, as well within Cities and townes as fast by, that a cost bestowed, might after possesse the procreation and delight of minds, besides the proper gaine made by the fruits, flowres, and hearbs, gathered in them. The Garden plots ae length grew so common among the meaner sort, that the charge and the chiefest care of the same, was committed vnto the wife, insomuch that these acounted not the wife of the house to be a huswife indéd, if she bestowed not a paine and diligence, as Cato reporteth, in the wéeding, trimming, and dressing of the garden: but to be briefe, and leauing further to report of antiquitie, I thinke it high time to declare the effects and commodity of this worke taken in hand, and first to intreat of the care, helps, and secrets to be learned and followed in the garden ground: All which in a pleasant maner, shall after be vttered in distinct chapters, to the furtherance and commodity of many Gardeners, and al such hauing pleasure therein.

What care and diligence is required of euery Gardener: to these, what increase and commoditie a well laboured earth yeeldeth. Chap. 2.

THe husbandman or Gardener shal enioy a most commodious & delectable Garden, which both knoweth, can, and will orderly dresse the same: yet not sufficient is it to a gardener, that he knoweth, or would the furtherance of the garden, without any cost bestowed, which the works & labors of the same require: nor the wil againe of the workman, in doing and bestowing of charges, shal smally auaile without he haue both art & skil in the same. For that cause, it is the chiefest point in euery facultie and busines, is to understand & know what to begin and follow: as the learned Columella out of Varronianus Tremellius aptly vttereth. The person which shall enioy or haue in a readines these thrée, and wil purposedly or with diligence frame to him a wel dressed garden, shal after obtain these 2. cõmodi-

ties, as vtility and delight: the vtility yéldeth the plenty of hearbs, flowres, and fruits right delectable: but the pleasure of the same procureth a delight, and (as Varro writeth) a iucunditie of minde. For that cause a garden shall workmanly be handled, & dressed vnto the necessary vse and commodity of mans life, next for health, and the recouery of strength by sicknes féebled: as the singular Palladius Rutilius both learnedly vttered, and the skilfull Florentius, that wrote cunningly of husbandry in the Gréke tongue, certaine yeres before him: Lastly, by sight vnto delectation and iucundity through the fragrancie of smell: but most of all, that the same may furnish the owners and husbandmans table, with sundry séemely and dainty dishes to him of small cost. The garden ground (if the same may be) ought rather to be placed néere hand, wherby the owner or Gardener may with more ease be partaker of such commodities growing in the Garden, and both oftner resort, and vse diligence in the same. So that this is the whole care and duety required of euery owner and Gardener in their plot of Ground. Yet may I not be vnmindfull, that the Garden doth also require a dunging at the apt times: of which in the proper place we shall after intreat.

What consideration and choosing is to be vsed in any Garden plot, with the goodnesse and worthinesse of euery earth. Chap. 3.

As to the nature & goodnes of a garden ground, the especialler that ought to be eschued, are a bitter and salt earth of tast, if so be we meane to make a fertil, commodious & wel yélding ground: for these two natures of earth, were very much misliked in ancient time, as may appeare by the skilfull Poet Virgil, who saieth that euery earth is not allowed or commended, for the yéld of Garden hearbs. For which cause, the minde of the ancient husbandmen is, that the Gardener by taking vp a clod of earth, should artly trie the goodnes of it after this maner: in considering whether the earth be neither hot and bare, nor leane by sand, lacking a mixture of perfit earth: nor the same found to be wholly chalke, nor naughty sand: nor barren grauell, nor of the glittering pouder or dust of a leane stony ground, nor the earth continuall moist, for all these be the speciall defaults of a good and perfit earth. The best ground for a Garden,

den, is the same iudged to be, which in the Summer time is neither very drie, nor clayie, nor sandie and rough, nor endamaged with gapings, procured by heat of the Summer, as the worthy Didimus in his Greeke instructions of husbandrie writeth. Wherfore the earth which in summer time is wont to be drie, either perisheth or loseth all the seeds sowne, and plants set in it, or yeeldeth those thinne, and weake prouing on the ground. For the clayie ground of it selfe, ouer fast holdeth: but the sandie and rough, in a contrary maner: so that neither is wont to nourish plants, nor retaine water. Therefore an apt earth for a garden, shal you readily trie and find out, if the same thorow wet and dissolued with water, you shall see to haue a much clamminesse and fastnesse. In which ground, if a watrinesse shal exceede, then shall you iudge the same disagreeable and vnfruitfull: if dissoluing the earth with water, you shall find the same very clammie, or much cleauing to the hand & fingers as if it were ware, this earth shall you acount as wholly vnprofitable. Pliny willeth that a garden plot before all other matters done to it, be very wel clensed of stone, and to these, that the earth proue not full of chappes, or but few to be seene, lest the sunne beames entring betweene, may so scorch and burne the rootes of the plants. For which cause, the best and gentle or worthiest earth shall be chosen, in which you mind to commit your seedes: or for the same, that the nurce as a mother, may often agree to the fruit, or yeeld to be an aider and furtherer to it.

Certaine plainer instructions, much furthering the Gardener, in the knowledge and choice of a good and battle ground, with other matter necessarie.

Chap. 4.

The Gardener minding to trie and know a fat earth, for the vse of a garden shall worke after this maner: in taking a little clod of the earth, and the same to sprinckle with faire water, kneading it well in the hand: which after appearing clammie, and cleauing or sticking to the fingers, doth vndoubtedly witnes that earth to haue a fatnes in it. An other trial of a battle earth may thus be purchased, if you dig vp a rotten clod, in a maner blacke, and the same able enough to couer it self with the growth of ye owne grasse, & appearing also of mixt colour, which earth, if it be found thinne and close, may

 well

well be fattened and made clammy, through the adioyning and mixing of a fat earth to it. The garden ground doth also require a swéetnesse to consist in it, which the Gardener shal easily find and know by taste of it: if so be he take vp a clodde of the earth in any part of the ground which most misliketh him, and moistning the clod with faire water in an earthen potshard, doth after the dipping of the finger in this moist earth and water, let a drop softly fal on the tongue, he shall incontinent féele and perceiue (by reason of the taste) of what condition the same is. Further, euery fat earth being reasonablie lose, is euermore commended and chosen, which of it selfe requireth small labour, and yéeldeth the most increase. But worst of al others is that ground, which shal be both drie and grosse, leane and cold. In the kindes of ground, the chalke is to bee refused: which properly the ancients name the clayish, and reddish earth. The worthie Varro commended the same ground, which of it selfe being drie and pliable, yéeldeth properly walworts. The same earth doeth Calumella greatly allow, which of the owne accord yéeldeth or bringeth forth Wilding or Crabbe trees, yong springs, the Slow or Bullesse trées, Elme trées, and such like. So that a battle ground, is on such wise found and knowne: the rather of the crescent things, séene in it of the owne accord: yet of necessity may euery ground well agrée, to be mixed and turned in with dung. Florentius vttereth an other triall of a fruitfull ground: if so be the Gardener diggeth vp a furrow, of a foote and a halfe déepe, and filleth the same againe with the owne earth, which in short time after gapeth or choppeth, this no doubt is a weake and leane earth, but if the earth thus ordered, swelleth or retcheth out, then is it a sure note, that the same is a battle and fat ground. And this is noted to be a mean earth, which after the digging and raking euen, gapeth but a little. This I thought not good to be couered nor willingly ouer passed: that a garden plot situated or standing neare to a mote, or compassed by a mote, is not alwaies laudable, in that the séeds bestowed in the same, and diuers plants set in it, do lightly and sone through the water vapourating forth, waxe old: yea the fruits (whether those shalbe of the hearbs or trées) are for the more part caused vnpleasant, and ouermoist. Further conceiue, that a garden ground, ought to be of a moderate increase, and easie dressing:

which

which neither is very moist, nor ouer drie of it selfe. To these such a earth is greatly commended as being new digged, birds couet to it: and that crowes especially follow the new casting of the digger. If the earth shall be found naughtie or vnfruitfull, as the clayie, sandie, and chalkie, then ought the same to be amended, after the minde of the skilfull, with mearse and dung laid thrée foote déepe, and well turned in with the earth: if this be perceiued ouer thin and leane, then to be mixed and holpen by a fat earth: or to a barren and ouerdrie ground, may be mixed a moist and verie fat earth. A waterie ground is made the better, if the same be mixed with a sandy or smal grauelly earth, and déep allies made, for the conueying and shifting of the water falling in the night. But to vse such a tedious paines in these, Pliny accounteth it a madnesse: for what fruite or gaine may be hopped after, in bestowing such a trauell and diligence in the like ground plotte? To conclude, euery reasonable earth may verie much be holpen, through the wel dunging and laboring of the Gardener: of which matter (in the proper place) we meane fully to intreat.

Of the placing and standing of a Garden plot, with the necessarie benefit of a water to a Garden, and other matters profitable. Chap. 5.

IT is right necessary (saith Varro) to place gardens neare to the Citie, aswel for the benefit of pot-hearbes and roots, as al maner of swéete smelling flowres, that the Citie greatly néedeth. Where these placed in a soile farre off that they cannot so conueniently and in due time be brought to the Market to be sold, in such places are altogether disallowed, & thought friuolous for the turne. Cato doth very much commend the Garden plot placed neare to the City, in which both yong trées to beare vp vines, & willow or Osier trees be planted nigh to water sides, & in al places waterie: and that through the garden ground, water or springs be sene running. To these the sédes of most hearbes committed into a well dunged, dressed, and faire or large open plot, in which besides all kindes of fruits, for the vse of man, workemanly planted and set in apt times of the yeare. This skilful Cato also willeth, that al kindes of garden grounds be placed and framed neare to the Citie, aswel for the Garland or posie

flowres,

flowres, as all manner round and delectable rootes, with the swéete and pleasant smelling trées: as all the kindes of the Roses, the swéete Iacemine, the Eglantine briar, the Myrtle trée, and all others of like sort, sowed and planted in due seasons of the yeare. But a Garden plotte, onely seruing for the vse of pot-hearbes and the kitchin, ought especially to be a battle ground, sufficient moist of it selfe, and well turned in or workemanly laboured with dung. Garden plottes ought to be placed farre from Barnes, Hay-lofts and Stables, if the same possibly may be refused, or otherwise chosen for the turne: that in the chaffe or dust of the strawes (as enemy to them) the plants hardly breake and suffer, insomuch that the very strawes blowne abroad with the winde, and falling on herbs, do greatly annoy and harme them, as the singular Florentius in his Gréeke instructions of husbandrie skilfully vtteretb. For these, saith he, by cleauing to the plants in the falling, pierce the leaues, which once pierced, are incontinent burned with them. All Gardens aswell prosper by the dunging with rootes, as with the proper dung allowable: yet dunging the garden earth, with the branches and leaues of trées, is of the skilfull Gardeners very much disallowed, as vnprofitable and noyous to hearbs.

As to the wel standing of a garden behoueth: the aptest and most laudable placing of a garden plot shalbe, if the plaine ground lying somwhat aslope, shal haue a course of spring water running thorow by seuerall parts. But this course of water running thorow the garden plot, may in no wise be bigge. And the smalnes of the labouring and dressing of a garden ground, is more of yéeld, then the largenes of it, not laboured in a maner at all.

It behoueth to haue a Well in a garden, vnlesse some running water, as either ditch or small riuer be neare adioyning: for that a swéete water sprinckled on yong plants and hearbes, giueth a speciall nourishment. If a Well be lacking in the garden, then digge a déepe pit in some conuenient place of the garden: although it may be a painefull labour for the Gardener, to draw water out of the same. For a garden ground néedeth often to be watered, through which all séeds committed to the earth, as Pliny reporteth, both sooner breake forth, and spéedier spread abroad. That a pit with water of long continuance may be purchased, the same at that time Colu-

mella

mella willeth to be digged when the Sunne shall obtaine or occupie the last degrées of Virgo: which is in the moneth of September, before the equinoctiall harueſt. For the vertue then of wel-springs are throughly tried and found out: at which time through the long drought of Summer, the earth lacketh the due moiſture of raine. If a well or pit to purpoſe cannot bee made in the Garden: then frame vp a ſquare pit or Ceſterne leauelled in the bottome with bricke and Lime to receiue the raine water falling, with which in the hotteſt Summer daies, you may water the beddes of the Garden. But if all theſe manner of helpes and waies ſhall faile the Gardener, or cannot well be compaſſed in the Garden ground, then ſhall he dig the ground after the mind of Palladius Rutilius, three or foure foote the deeper or lower. For ths beddes on ſuch wiſe ordered, being workmanly laboured and ſowen, may the better endure through the lowe ſtanding, the whole drought of the Summer daies. In the Garden ground beſides, this ſhall you obſerue, that when the Allies or pathes of the beddes be ouer cloyed with water, to dig deepe gutters here and there after your diſcretion, in ſuch order, that the water falling and running along, may be guided into a conuenient pitte, made at the lower ſide or ende of the Garden, for that onely purpoſe. Here further learne, that what Garden plot the nature of the moiſture helpeth not, the ſame may you aptly deuide into parts, in conuerting the ſpaces, digged & dreſſed for the winter time to lie open to the South, and thoſe prepared for the Summer time, like vnto the North quarter.

What aire commended for the benefit of a Garden, and which benoious as well to Man as the Plants: and the reaſon why Garden plots ought to be placed nigh to the owners houſe. Chap. 6.

EVery ground-plot lying neare to the City, as well the Garden as Orchard, ought to be placed neare to the houſe, for the oftner recourſe & diligence to be beſtowed of the owner: and the Garden eſpecially to be laboured and well turned vp with dung: through whoſe iuice and fatning, the earth may yeelde hearbes of her owne accorde. As touching the aire commended for a Garden, the ſame being cleare and temperate is beſt allowed, in that this not onely cheriſheth and

 proſpereth

prospereth the hearbes growing in it, but procureth a delight and comfort to the walkers therein. An euill aire in the contrarie maner, troubled with the vapours of standing pittes, ditches, and such like mixed to it, doth not only annoy and corrupt the plants and herbs growing in that Garden fast by, but choke and dull the Spirits of men, by walking in the same. Besides, the windes biting, and frosts mortifying, doe both harme and destroy Plants. Auicen writing of the aire, doeth in skilfull manner vtter, that the same aire, which after the Sunne setting is some cold, and after the Sunne rising speedily hotte, is both subtile and healthfull to man. So that a contrarie aire to this, worketh the contrary to Man and Plants. Yet that aire is accounted worser, which seemeth as it were to wring or binde hard together the heart: yea, making strait or letting the attraction of aire. The learned Neapolitane Rutilius, besides these reporteth, that the subtilnesse or healthfulnesse of aire, doe declare those places free from low vallies, and stinking mists or fogges in the night, that might annoy both men and the plants. Heare it doeth not much disagree from the matter, to write in generall of the qualities of the windes, and of these in the briefest manner. First, the Easterly and Westerly windes bee in a manner temperate of qualitie, as betweene a hotnesse and coldnesse, yet of the two, the Easterly winds be knowne drier. Further, the Easterly winds are for the more part hotter then the Westerly, and the Westerly by report of the ancient, somewhat more moist then the Easterly. Of all the windes for the benefit of the Garden, is the South-west winde especially commended: as the worthie Florentius in his greeke rules, and others of experience affirme.

Besides these, as vnto the clemencie or temperatnesse of aire, and healthfulnesse of the place belongeth, a Garden plot in cold countries ought in a contrary maner to be placed, as either to the East or South quarter: if the same be such a plot of ground, which both conteineth trees and Plants, or hearbs comming vp in it, lest the Garden plot excluded from these two parts, by the object or standing against of some most great and high hill, be so nipped, frozen, and withered, with the extreame cold long continuing, or the Garden plot otherwise farre distant from the comfort of the Sunne on the North part, or else the Sun only shining low and weake, at the West quarter of the same:

The

The singular Cato willeth, that the Garden, if a man can, be placed at the foote of an hill: and the same beholding or lying open to the South, especially in a healthfull place. For a Garden plot thus defended by an high hill, on the North part, and al the day comforted by the open face of the South quarter, is procured to yéelde the sweeter and timelier fruits, in the seasons of the yeare. But in hot Regions or Countries, the open place of a Garden ground must be rather scituated towards the North quarter: which may through the like standing, auaile as well to health of bodie and quickning of the spirits, as to profite and pleasure.

This besides conceiue, that the placing of a Garden ground, néere to a Fenne or Marish, is euery where to be misliked and refused: if the same lie open towards the South or West, and yearely in the Summer time is accustomed to be drie: for on such wise happening, the aire thereabout gathered vp, doth in the falling againe, engender either the Pestilence, or wicked vermin, much harming the Garden plot lying nigh to it. There is also a great regard to be had to the water, mote, or ditch, standing nie or round about the garden ground: whether this for the more part be wont to vaporate or breath forth any noysome aire, that may both to men and the plants bee harmefull. For peculier or proper is the same (or rather such is the propertie) of very many still waters and motes. So that it is the counsell of the skilfull (if any like be knowen) to refraine from placing any Garden plotte or Orchard, if the owner may chuse, neare to the same.

The forme of the inclosures, which Husbandmen, and Romanes in time past inuented. Chap. 7.

FOrasmuch as the same may bee thought a méere madnesse, to haue chosen out a fitte plotte of ground, and to cast, digge, and dresse it seemely in all points; yet lying open day and night, as well to the incursions and common haunt, as the iniuries to be wrought and done by robbers or theeues, fowles and beasts: for that cause, I heere mind to intreat of sundry maners of fencing, and compassing in of the Garden grounds in ancient time. First, the skilfull and warie Husbandmen in time past, being those of good abilitie, built them

wals about of Frée stone artly laid, and mortered together, and some did, with baked bricke like handled. Others of lesser abilitie, and of the meaner sort, framed them inclosures, with stones handsomely laid one vpon an other with morter or clay: and some of them couched the broad Salt stones, with other bigge and large stones (in like order about) where such dwell by quarries of stone. But very many of the baser and poorer sort, made them fences and wals about, with mudde of the ditch, dung, chaffe, and strawes cut short, and well mixed together. Others there were, which with bigge Canes set vpright, by small poles bound together, so fenced their Garden plotte, in handsome manner round about. Some also with yong willowe trées, set by certaine distances, and the drie blacke thorne (purchased from the wood) being bound in (betwéene the spaces) so framed their inclosure: but this manner of inclosing wrought or built by Art, the skilfuller named a dead and rough inclosure, made especially for the keeping and defending of cattell out of the Garden ground. Yet the hedge or inclosure erected after this manner, required euery yeare to bee new repaired and bound vp in the places needfull, to the tediousnesse and great paines of the husbandman.

The learned Columella in his husbandrie reporteth, that the Romanes in time past, fenced and inclosed their Garden grounds, with bigge quarters set vpright, and poles with lathes, very thicke fastned to them by small rods of the Sier trée, walling them in. Some bored large holes thorow bigge bodies or stockes of trées, that quarters or great poles made for the purpose might passe thorow them, either by two or three together, in reasonable distance, with paile borde raised and fastned along to them. Some also through the timber of trées (set into the earth) fastned bigge poles or long quarters round about, much like to the diuall cattell poundes in our age. But some attaining to more skill, errected as Varro reporteth, a naturall inclosure, set about with blacke or white thorne trées, and yong willowes: which had besides the rootes of a quick-set hedge, that in time growing vp, withstood tempestes, windes, land-floods, yea fire the consumer of all things put to it. The ancient husbandmen did besides these, inuent the casting vp of banks and countermures of earth, round about the Garden plotte, much like to the trenches in time of warre

about

about Bulwarkes and Tents: and these they specially made neare to high waies or by Riuers, or Marishes, or Fens lying open, or other fieldes, that the Garden plot might on such wise bee defended, from the damages and harmes both of Theeues, Cattell, and Land-floods.

For a plainer conceiuing of the aboueſaid, learne these following; that the ancient Husbandmen did cast vp, and made a deepe ditch about their Garden ground (standing in the open fielde) which might receiue all the raine water falling: and this they so digged with a slope passage, whereby the water might runne the easier and freelier from the bottome. The earth and clay cast vp on the inside (fast by the brinke) they so wrought vp together, that hardly any person (after the drying of the countermure) could clime ouer the same. Some also made high Bankes or countermurs, without a ditch digged about, and the same so serued in the open fieldes in stead of a wall.

To be briefe, the inclosure which longest endured, surest, and of least cost, was the same that the Romanes in ancient time made with brambles, and the white thorne laid orderly in bankes, for the better growing vp. For this inclosure or hedge (after yeares sprung vp) endured by reporte of the learned Cato an infinite time: yea experience in our age, doth likewise confirme the same. For which cause, this inclosure was very much commended of the ancient Romanes, who well conceiued and knew, that the bramble decaied and died not at any season, except it were digged and plucked quite vp by the rootes. Yea they learned by practise, that the bramble singed or scorched with straw flaming, recouered and grew euery yeare after, both stiffer, rougher, and thicker together.

The latter inuentions of errecting a natural and strong hedge, which in time growing, may proue a most sure defence and safegarde of the Garden. Chap. 8.

THe most commendable inclosure for euery garden plot, is a quick-set hedge, made with the brambles & white thorne: but the stronger and more defensiue hedge is the same, which the singuler Democritus in his Greeke instructions of Husbandrie (that wrote long before Columella and Palladius Rutilius) cunningly vttereth, and the

same with ease and small cost after this maner: Gather saith he, in a due season of the yeare, the sedes found in the redde berries of the biggest and highest Briars (which by a more common name with vs, are called the wilde Eglantine Briars) the through ripe sedes of the brambles (running low by the ground) the ripe sedes of the white Thorne, and to these both the ripe Berries of the Goose-berry and Barberrie trees: this done, mixe and steepe for a time all the Berries and seedes in the bending meale of Tares, vnto the thicknesse of Honie: the same mixture lay diligently into olde and vntwisted Shippe or Well-ropes, or other long worne ropes, and fittered or broken into short pieces, being in a manner starke rotten, in such order, that the sedes bestowed or couched within the soft haires of them may be preserued and defended from the colde, vnto the beginning of the spring. At which time where you be minded that the inclosure or hedge shall runne and spring vp, there dig in handsome manner, two small furrowes, and these either two or three foote asunder, and a mans foote and a halfe deepe: into which lay your ropes with the sedes, couering them workemanly with light earth, and (if neede shall require) water by sprinkling, or moisten the sedes, in the same wise againe.

The worthie Columella (in his husbandrie) and the Neapolitane Palladius Rutilius writing the like instruction, in a manner, will, that the ground plotte in which a hedge shall bee erected, be compassed with two narrow furrowes, digged three foote distant one from the other, and a mans foote and a halfe deepe: but these to bee made in the Equinoctiall Harueſt, at what time the ground shall be well moistned with showers. The furrowes thus prepared, they appointed to lie open all the winter thorow; after in the moneth of Februarie, the ropes with the sedes, laid into each furrowes to bee couered not thicke ouer with light earth, for hindering the growth of the sedes, especially of the white Thorne: and that this action bee rather wrought, when as the winde bloweth from the South or Southwest. The sedes thus couered with diligence, shall appeare within a moneth either more or lesse, and the tender yong Thornes sprung vp to some height, must bee helpen and staied with willow twigges or rather small proppes, set betweene the empty spaces, vntill the Thornes by their further growth,

ioyned

ioyned together, may stay one the other: which within few yeares, will grow to a most strong defence of the Garden or field, and a sure safegard against outward iniuries. Columella besides willeth, that a willow or Sallow hedge, be set on either side, and in the middle roome or space betwéene the two furrowes, couered and euen raked, that these might so stay the tender thornes, springing vp in either furrow, vnto the time they ioyned, and were growne aboue this willow hedge, or at least vnto such strength, that they well stayed one of the other. Others there are as the famous Diophanes (among the Grécke writers of Husbandrie) and with him many the like, which will a quicke-set hedge to be errected, and made after this maner. The bigger armes or rods of the bramble, they willed to be cut into short portions or parts, and these laide a slope into open furrowes of a span deepe, to bee diligently couered with earth: after to vse about the plants, a daily digging or rearing vp of the earth, and watering of them if neede so requireth, vntill the plants budde forth, and the leaues of the stemmes open, which by this manner of comforting and cherishing, shall grow in a few yeares to a strong, sure, and continuall hedge.

The Neapolitane Palladius Rutilius, instructeth the way and maner of errecting an other quicke-set hedge on this wise: plant saith he, yong Elder trées neare thrée foote asunder, then the sédes of the brambles, lapped diligently in long lumps of softned and moist clay or tough earth, lay the same orderly in a shallow furrow, betweene the Elder trées, which aptly couered with light earth, and watering the places if neede so requireth, will within thrée yeares following, grow to such a strength and surenesse, that the same will bee able enough to defend the iniuries both of the thiefe and beast. Palladius Rutilius reporteth, that this hedge of brambles after thrée yeares growth, ought to be sengeed with flaming straw; for on such wise handled, it prospereth afterward the better: In that the bramble as hee saith, through the euery yeares sengeing or burning with straw, ioyeth and increaseth the better: yea through the yearely burning,, as the skilfull Husbandmen affirme, they shoote out harder and rougher of prickes.

And this manner, to be briefe, is a generall way of inclosing Garden grounds, with small cost, and easily performed. Although the

comeller

comlier inclosure or hedge of a Garden be the same, which is made of the white thorne artely laide: that in few yeares with diligence cut, waxeth so thicke and strong, that hardly any person can enter into the ground, sauing by the Garden dore: yet in sundrie Garden grounds be hedges framed with the Priuet tree, although far weaker in resistance: which at this day are made the stronger, through the yearely cutting, both aboue, and by the sides: yea the same also caused through the like doing to grow the euener and thicker, to the beautifying of the Garden ground, and for other necessary purposes. To conclude, I haue vttered here the making of certaine naturall inclosures for a Garden, which may with the meanest cost be errected in any ground.

The cause why certaine skilful husbandmen in ancient time misliked the dunging of Gardens neare to the house: and what dung best allowed for the kitchin or pot-hearbes. Chap. 9.

There were in ancient time, as Pliny recorderh, certaine wittie husbandmen, that wholly refused and forbad the dunging of gardens placed nigh to the dwelling houses: in that this dunging might not onely infect the aire thereabout, but cause also the crescent things to proue both vnsauerier and more corrupt. And in this matter the worthie writers of husbandrie commended highly the Greeke Poet Hesiodus, which writing very cunningly of husbandrie, omitted the dunging of the fields, and Garden plots, contented rather to counsell vnto healthfulnes then willed the same to fertilitie. Insomuch as it was supposed enough at that time, to haue fatned the fields and Garden plots, with the leaues and emptie cods of the Beanes, Peason, Tares, and such like, turned worke-manly in with the earth in due season of the yere, and not to haue emploied or dunged the ground with a rotten and pestilent matter, incommodious to man and the Plants. Which wise men haue well found out, in that the sowen plants sprung vp in such an earth, yelde for the most part a harmefull qualitie to the daily feeders on them, hardly to be amended.

Yet for that neither the ancient, nor later Husbandmen, seeme to follow the instruction of this precept, nor approue or allow any proper dunging, in prescribing and commending the same in general: for that cause, I heere purpose to intreat in a briefe manner, of the nature and

and vse of the same. But first of all to warne you that a good and battle ground néedeth small dunging, where a drie and thinne or leane earth in contrary maner requireth plenty of dung. A earth onely drie (as Maro reporteth) well ioyeth to be often fed, and diligently laboured with fat dung: But the ground that hath a meane substance in it, requireth in like maner a meane dunging to be vsed. Further conceiue, that good dung doeth (for the more part) procure a good and battle earth the better, yea this helpeth and amendeth the euill and naughtie earth: But the euill dung in a contrary maner, doeth euermore cause all earths the worser: And this behoueth the Gardener and husbandman to know, that as the earth not dunged is both cold and stiffe: euen so the ground by the ouermuch dunging may be burned altogether. For which cause (Columella reporteth) that more auailable and better it is, often to dung the earth, then ouermuch at one time to bestow in the ground. The earth digged vp to serue for the spring, ought to be dũged in the wane or decrease of the Moone about S. Martins day: that the same lying all the Winter thorow, may so be dissolued, against the time of committing sæds to the earth: and in the moneth of March to be dunged againe, that the earth well moistened with showres (in the month of April) may be procured the apter, for the bestowing of your finer and daintie sædes in the same. Herein consider the leannesse or fatnes of your earth in the often dunging of it, and the worthines of your sæds, which may require a like paines to be bestowed on the ground. The plot of earth prepared for the Winter sædes, ought to be well turned in with dung about the end of September, & the sæds committed to the earth, after the ground be well moistned with showers. The dung in a Garden plot, for the planting of yong sets ought not to be couched or laid next to the rootes of the plants: but in such order the dung vsed, that a thin bed of earth be first made, for the setting of the yong hearbs, next laid to this a handsome bed of dung, as neither too thicke or thin spread on that earth: aboue that let another course of earth be raked euer of a reasonable thicknesse: which workmanly handled & done, sée that your plants be set handsomely into the ground, and in a chosen time. For the earth and beds (on such wise prepared) helpe that the plants bestowed shal not at al be burned: neither the heat of the dung, hastily breath forth to them.

Of the kindes of dung, and which well commended for the dunging of Gardens. Chap. 10.

AS touching the worthines & excellency of dung, the Greek writers of husbandry (to whom many of the latin Authors consēt) affirm that the Doues dung is the best, because the same possesseth a mightie hotnesse, for which they willed this dung to be strawed the thinner, and in a maner (as thin to be scattered abroad) as seedes on the earth, wherby the same may so season ỳ earth measurably, & not on a heap or thick bestowed (as M. Varro reporteth) much like to the dung of cattel thrown abroad on the ground. The dung also of ỳ hen and other foules greatly commended for the sourenes, except ỳ dung of geese, duckes, & other water foules, for their much & thin dunging. And although this dung last, be weaker then the others, yet may the same be profitable, as the selfsame Varro witnesseth out of ỳ Greek instructions of husbandry. A commendation next is attributed to the Asses dung, in that the same beast for his leisurely eating, digesteth easier, & causeth the better dung, which bestowed in the earth, for that the same is most fertil by nature, bringeth or yeideth forth least store of weeds, and procureth very much al plants and hearbs: yea this causeth the most swet and pleasantest hearbs & rootes. The third in place is the Goats dung, being most sowre, which inseeth the sheeps dung yet fatter. After this, both the ore and cow dung, next ỳ swines dung, worthier then the oxen or kine, but greatly disallowed of Columella, for the mightie hotnesse, in that the same burneth the seedes immediatly bestowed in the earth. The vilest and worst of al dungs after the opinion of the Greeke writers of husbandrie, is the horses and mules, if either of these be bestowed alone in the earth, yet with the sower dungs mixed, either wil profitably be abated or qualified. But the same especially is to be learned & obserued of euery gardner and husbandman, that they fatten not the earth, if it be possible, with dung of one yeare for the same, besides that it is of no vtility, it engenderth also many noisome wormes and kinds of vermine. But of the contrary mind is Columella, who willeth the earth to be fatned with dung which hath lien a yeare, and not aboue, in that the same, as he reporteth, bringeth forth least weedes, and possesseth as yet a

sufficient

sufficient strength for the turne. But how elder the same be, so much the lesse profitable, in that it lesser auaileth: yet the newest dung (saith he) will well agrée for Medowes or the fields, in that the same procureth the more yéeld of grasse, being bestowed in the moneth of February and March, in colder countries, and the Mone increasing of light. The mud also of a running water, as the ditch or riuer, may be imployed in the stead of dung. The dung besides of thrée yeares is estéemed very good, for that in the longer time lying, whatsoeuer this shall haue of the euill qualitie, and stinking sauour, the same by that time vapoured forth: and if any hard matter consisted in the same, the age thoroughly resolued it. Howsoeuer it shall happen, that the earth be the worthiest dung of all, for flowres and Kitchin hearbes in the very thin ashes reported to bee, which in nature is hot. For the kind of dung either killeth or driueth away the Garden Fleas, the Wormes, the canker Wormes, found commonly on Coleworts, Snailes and all other créeping things wasting the stemmes of plants and hearbes. The dung which men make (if the same be not mixed with the rubbish, or dust swept out of the house) is greatly misliked, for that by nature it is hotter, and burneth the sédes sowen in that earth: so that this is not to be vsed, vnlesse the ground be a barren, grauelly or very loose sand, lacking strength in it, which being on such wise, requireth the more helpe of nourishment and fatning, through this kind of dung: yet for lacke of the foresaid dungs, the others may be put in vse: so that these with the Spade be often changed and dispersed in the ground. Here you may not forget, that a waterie garden plotte requireth the more plenty of dung, but a drie earth néedeth the lesser dunging: the one for the daily moisture running in it, being ouercold and stiffe, is through the often applying of the hot dung, resolued and made temperate. And the other drie of it selfe through the heate consisting in it, by much applying of this hot dung, is of the same burned: for that cause the moisture of ground ought to haue store of dung, but the drier, smal dunging. That if no kind of dung can be purchased, then in grauelly grounds, it shal be best to dung the same with chalk: but in chalkie places, ouer-thick, those dung with grauelly earth: for on such wise garden plots, shal not only be caused to be battle and fruitful, but shal also become faire and delectable, as Columella the most

 diligent

diligent and skilful instructer (of the Romane Gardens) witnesseth: let this last instruction of Pliny be remembred, that at what time soeuer you mind to dung a Garden for yelding of few weeds, see that the wind blow then from the West quarter, and the Mone decreasing of light, and the earth also drie: But for the dunging of a Medowe (as before vttered) let the same be done in the increase of the Mone, &c For by such an obseruation followed, the plentifulnesse of yeld is marueilous much increased: as after the worthy Greekes, the Latine writers of husbandrie haue noted.

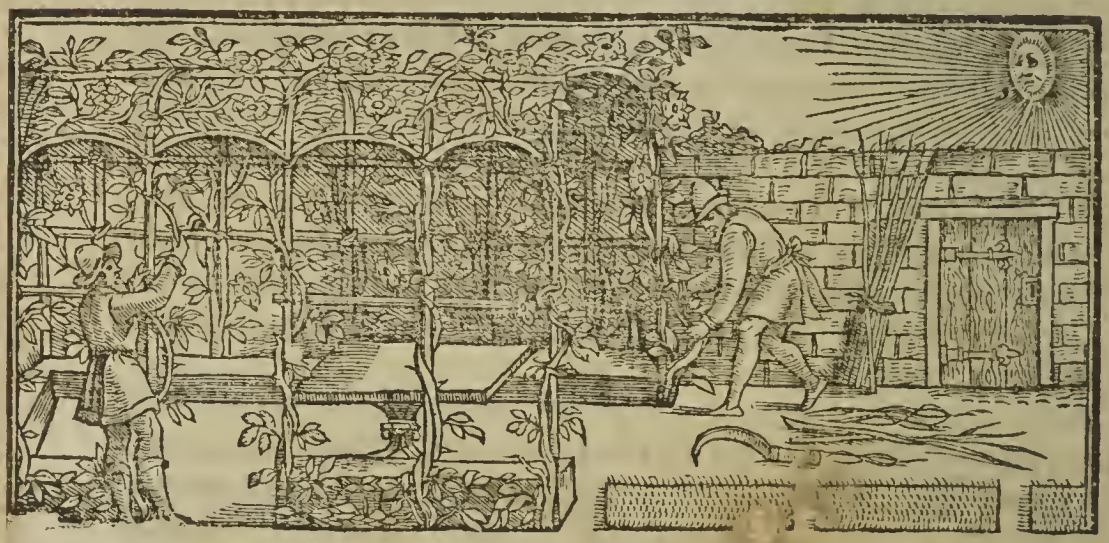
What is to be considered of euery Gardener, after the casting forth and leuelling of the beds, with the disposing of the earth. Chap. 11.

BEfore I intreat of the sowing of Gardens, it behoueth to admonish you, that it much auaileth in a Garden, to frame seemely walkes and Allies, for the delight of the owner, by which he may the freelier walke hither and thither in them, & consider thoroughly al the matters wrought and done in the garden, if the disquietnes of mind hinder not the benefite of the same. The walkes and Allies shall to that end be disposed, that they may serue in the stead of a dunging in those places, as the worthy interpreter M. Cato (ẏ cunningly wrote of the ancient husbandrie) witnesseth. These before considered, let vs come vnto the matter: Certaine skilful practitioners admonish, that a Garden plot or field, be not sowen ouer al, vntill the earth before shall be well moistned with showers. That if these fall in due season and time (then the skilfull Gardeners agree) to be wel liked. If any be otherwise occasioned to sow, as often so it hapneth, then the seeds slowly breake forth, how workmanly soeuer the seedes may be bestowed in a drie Garden ground, or plough land, as ẏ worthie Columella witnesseth: which like matter in certaine countries is wont to be exercised, where the condition of the aire is on such wise. For what ẏ same is which shalbe bestowed in a drie earth, is euen ẏ like, as if the same were laid in a house which corrupteth not. But when showers fal on the seeds (committed to the earth certaine daies before) they after shoote vp in one day: yet are these seedes in danger (sowne in the meane time) of Birds, and Ants or Pismires, except the seedes be (before the sowing) preserued and defended with those helps

helps which shal after be vttered in ẏ proper place following. How-soeuer the occasion and weather serue, the Gardner shal employ his diligence, that the Garden ground or field, which ought to be leuelled and sowne in the spring time (that the same may yélde the proper fruits in the Summer time) be digged and dunged (if néd so require to the earth) about the end of harueſt, when as yet the cold season and frosts be not approched, nor bitter weather begun. And the same garden plotte or quarters of the garden, which the Gardener would in the harueſt time haue couered with the sallet, pot-hearbs and roots, ought to be turned vp in the beginning of Summer, or in the moneth of May, that the clods of earth may through al the colde Winter, and hot Summer weather (speaking or rather héere meaning of the greater Gardens) be so dissolued, as the worthie Maro skilfully instructeth.

And to these, that the rootes of the vnprofitable hearbes or wédes may likewise be killed: after the winter or summer time ended, dung then muſt be orderly turned in with the earth: as in the moneth of March (the Mone decreasing) for the spring time, and in the end of harueſt for the winter time. And when the sowing time approcheth or draweth neare, then shall the garden ground (as the proper order and maner of euery countrie is) be diligently raked, wéded & purged, both of the stones and vnprofitable roots: after the same, let the earth be dunged and orderly digged, as in the maner afore taught, which through the diligent digging so often repeated, that the dung with the earth by the twice labouring ouer, be well dissolued and mixed together. After this digging and dunging againe the second time (if the ground néedeth such fatting) and the earth leuelled, may the garden (about the midst of February, but I rather suppose in the moneth of March to be more agréeable, and the Mone especially in her first quarter) be beautified in apt places of the same, with séemly hearbes, before the quarters and beds be workmanly troden out by the Gardener, the instruction of which hearbes shall fully be bettered in this next Chapter.

The framing of sundry hearbs delectable in a Garden, with the walkes and Allies artly deuised in the same. Chap. 12.



THe herbar in a gardē may be framed with Juniper poles, or the Willow, either to stretch, or to be bound together with Osiers, after a square forme, or in arch maner winded, that the branches of the Vine, Mellon, or Cucumber, running and spreading all ouer, might so shadow and kēpe both the heat & sun from the walkers and sitters there vnder. The herbs erected and framed in most gardens, are to their much refreshing, comfort and delight. These two, as the vpright, directed by quarters set in the earth, & leaning to the wall, neare to which faire Rosemarie, or the red Rose, set to run straight vp, and the winding in arch maner framed (as I vttered afore) with the Juniper or withie poles, to shadow the wals there vnder. To this fastning the vine, and sundrie hearbs which in the growing vp, runne and spread ouer the same, as the Briony, Cucumber, Gourd, & diuers others, of which here vnder we shal more fully intreat. But first I meane to speake of those herbs, which the Gardener planteth and ordereth to run for beauties sake in an vpright herbar: after to intreat of those which he either soweth or planteth, to run ouer the winding or arch herbar. The plants to run vp & serue comelieste for the straight herbar, ought to be those of a fragrant sauour, and that grow

grow or shoote vp high, and are spread abroad, which especially framed in a garden for delight and pleasure, and these properly named wall herbes, in that they are set in a manner leaning to the wall, with the quarters set vpright, and plots fastned ouerthwart, along the which, the Rosemarie, the Jasmine, and red Rose in many gardens, set to grow vpright, which in time growing, beautifie an vpright herbar, although these couer not the same, through their shorter and lower growing then the herbar: yet the commoditie ensueth by the herbar, that the owners friends sitting in the same, may the frélier sée and behold the beautie of the Garden, to their great delight. The erection and garnishing of the winding herbar may best be wrought with Juniper poles, in that these may well endure without repairing for tenne yeares: but those framed with the Willow poles, require euerie thrée yeares to be repaired.

The owner or Gardener that would set Rose trées to runne vp by the poles of the herbar, ought workemanly to beginne and doe the same about the middest of Februarie, and in the first quarter of the Moone, the beds before well reared with a stonie and drie earth, and not with dung. The Rose trées with their rootes, are also to be planted in short and narrow beddes diligently raised with a drie earth: but if the Gardener or owner will, slippes may be broken off from the rootes, cut in a slope maner at the heads, about a mans foote and a halfe long, writhed at the ends, and so set in a slope manner, a foot déepe into beds, well reared with a drie earth, and in the encrease of the Moone. The old trées new set euerie fift yeare in the wane of the Moone take root the sooner, and yéeld the more Roses, being proined and refreshed euery yeare with new and drie earth about the rootes, for neither the slips nor old rootes ioy in a fat clay, or moist ground, but in the drie and stony earth, and to be sette in rankes well a foote distance one from another, in drie beddes well reared vp: for bestowed in rankes of such distance betweene, they prosper the better, and yéelde more Roses. The sédes of the Rose committed to the earth, doe slowly come vp, yet so often as you minde to sowe the sédes, bestow them a foote déepe in light and drie earth, about the middest of March with vs, and in Februarie in hotter places, the Moone then increasing.

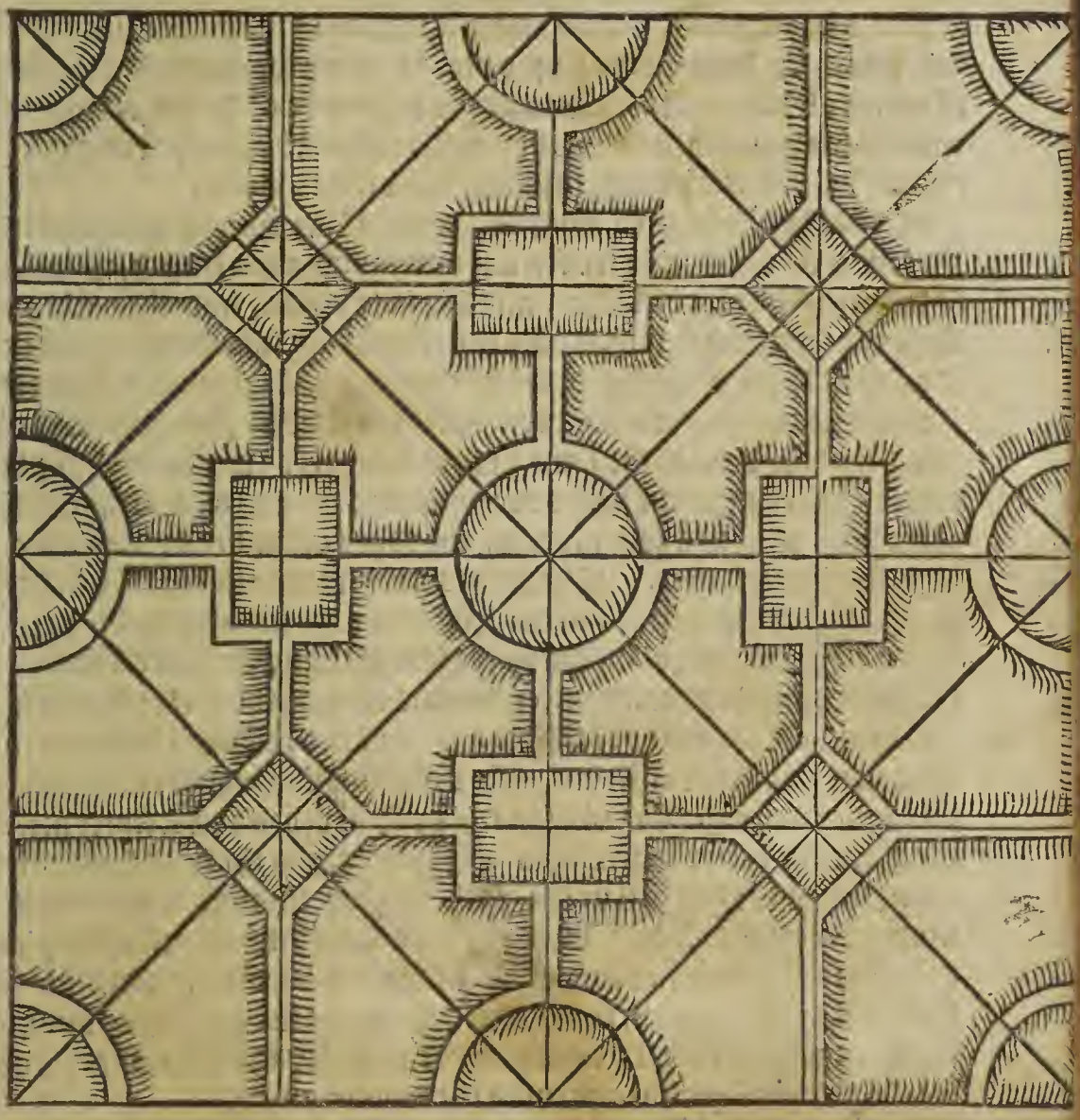
Here

Here may any truely learn by the instruction of the worthy Neapolitane Palladius Rutilius, which are the sæds of the Rose: for a man (saith he) may not thinke the yellow grains within the Rose flowre (being of a golden colour) to be them, but the knobs which grow after the maner of a most short and small peare, the sæds of which are then ful ripe, when they be perceiued brownish and soft, which will be in the moneth of September. The owner also may set the Jasmine trée bearing a flagrant flowre, the muske Rose, damask Rose and Priuet trée, in beds of drie earth, to shoote vp & spread ouer this Herber, which in time growing, not only defendeth the heate of the Sunne, but yéldeth a delectable smell, much refreshing the sitters vnder it. But this Arch-herber for any kinde of Roses, may not be built much aboue a mans heigth for the short growth of them. And as this herber is delectable to the eie, euen so laborsome, & with diligence to be tended: for which cause the more number in England, plant Vines (for the lesser trauell) to runne and spread ouer the vpright and square hearbs, framed with quarters and poles reaching a bredth. After the hearbes sæmely performed, in conuenient places and walkes of the Garden ground (heere meaning and speaking of the large plottes) the Allies euen troden out, and leuelled by a line, as either thrée or foure foote abroad, may cleanely be sifted ouer with riuer or sea sand, to the end that showers of raine falling, may not offend the walkers (at that instant) in them, by the earth cleauing or clagging to their fóte. The commodities of these Allies and walkes, serue to good purposes, the one is, that the owner may diligently view the prosperity of his hearbes and flowers, the other for the delight and comfort of the wearied mind, which he may by himself or fellowship of his friends conceiue, in the delectable sights, and fragrant smels of the flowres, by walking vp and downe, and about the garden in them, which for the pleasant sights & refreshing of the dul spirits, with the sharpening of memory, many shadowed ouer with bauting or Arch-hearbs, hauing windowes properly made towards the garden, whereby they might the more fully view, and haue delight of the whole beauty of the garden. But the strait walks, the wealthy made like Galleries, being al open towards the garden, & couered with ẏ vine spreading al ouer, or some other trées which more pleased them. Thus briefly haue I touched

the

the benefits of walkes and Allies in any Garden ground: which the Gardener of his owne experience may artly tread out by a line, and sift ouer with sand, if the owner will, for the causes afore vttered.

The forme of disposing the beddes, and apt borders about, with the sowing, choice, and defence of the seedes, and weeding of the beddes. Chap. 13.



THe quarters well turned in, and fatned with good dung a time before, & the earth raised through the dunging, shall in handsome

maner by a line set down in the earth, be troden out into beds, & seemely borders, which beds (as Columella witnesseth) raised newly afore with dung, and finely raked ouer, with the clods dissolued, and stones purged forth, shalbe artely troden out into three foote of breadth, and into what length the owner or Gardener will: but to such a breadth especially troden forth, that the weeders hands may well reach vnto the midst of the same, lest they thus going to the beddes, and weeding forth the vnprofitable hearbs and grasse, may in the meane time tread down both the seeds sprouting vp, & plants aboue the earth. To the help of which, let the pathes betweene the beddes be of such a reasonable breadth (as a mans foot) that they passing along by, may freely weede the one halfe first, and next the other halfe left to weede.

The beds also ought (after the minde of the worthy Neapolitane Paladius Rutilius) to be troden out narrow, and of a length, as twelue foote long if the plot be large, and fiue foote broad, and the pathes of these of a seemely breadth, for the easier reaching into the middle of the beds, or at the least frelier to the furtherance and speed of the weeders. In a moist and waterie Garden plotte this skilful Neapolitane willeth, that the beds in the same ground be reared two foot high, for the better prospering of the seedes committed to the earth, and the plants come vp. But in a drie ground, the edges of the beds raised a foote high, shall well suffice. The pathes troden out betweene the beddes ought to be of good depth and euen, whereby the water sprinkled gently forth by a water pot on the vpper face of the beds, and falling into the pathes, may the easier enter into the beds, to the better moistning and feeding of the rootes of the plants, and the rest superfluous to run the easier into other Allies or pathes needing this moisture, which by this easie running along in the pathes, shall procede a spedier moistning, and far better watering of all the beds, yea the superfluous water in the end, lying still in the pathes, may through a slope gutter made in the middest of them, be directed forth into a conuenient place made for the purpose, of some distance from the beddes. And this instruction much auaileth to beddes in the night time, when as mightie showers happen to fall, which might ouercloy the beds, were it not for the gutters spedily conueying the waters away.

All these instructions conceiued, the Gardener or owner may then prepare himselfe to the commmitting of seedes to the earth.

earth: in which he ought to be carefull, that after the bestowing of the sædes in the earth, a clearenesse or mildnesse of the aire may for certaine daies succéde: for through the aire and weather fauoring, and the sædes sowen in warme places, where the Sun long shineth, doe they most spædily breake and shoote aboue the earth, so that the sædes be new and good, the age of which in this doing, much auaileth to be examined and knowne. Therefore euery Gardener and owner ought to be carefull and diligently to foresée, that the sædes committed to the earth (as M. Cato willeth) be neither too olde, drie, thinne withered, nor counterfeited, but rather full, new, and hauing iuice. These notes of the sædes remembred, and the Gardener minded to commit them to the earth, ought afore to regard, that the winde at that instant bloweth not from the North, but rather from the South, or Southwest, nor the day very cold: for in such seasons and daies (as all the skilfull report) the earth is then timorous and fast shut, hardly receiueth and nourisheth the sædes committed to it, where the ground in a contrary manner, doth willingly apply and retaine the sæds, bestowed or sowne in faire daies, and temperat hot.

The artly disposing of sundry beds, for the sowing and increase of diuers fruits and Kitchin hearbs, with the wittie defences to be vsed after the seedes are bestowed. Chap. 24.

THe Gardener minding to commit chosen sæds into sundry beds, ought to learne, that the beds lying open to the South, be high raised, through the wel mixing of horse dung with the earth, and after the euen raking and leuelling to remain a certain time vnsowed: then one or two of the beds in the moneth of March, and in the increase of the Moone, may he sow with Lettuce & Purselane sædes, for these sooner spring vp in the moneth of March then February, to be remoued in the beddes, after the plants be shotte vp halfe a finger high. In those beddes may he also sow the Parcely, Rocket, Sorrell, Endiue, and diuers other Sallet hearbes: which after they be somewhat come vp, may be thinner set in other beddes. Haue beside a speciall regard to your sædes, that they bee neither too old, withered, thinne, and emptie: and the borders of those Beddes may you bestow with the sædes of the Artochoke, well two hand breadth asunder.

In another bed you may sow fine sedes, to haue pleasant hearbes that may be kept drie for the potte or Kitchin in the Winter time, and those which yeld delectable flowres, to beautifie and refresh the house, as the Marioram, French balme, Tyme, Hissope, Basill, Sauerie, Sage, Marigolde, Buglas, Borage, and sundry others. The Gardener may trie these sedes in beds, lying all open to the warme Sunne, as the Orenge, Lemmon, Pomecitron, Pomegranate, the Myrtle and Date, but these ought to bee fenced by a succour on the North side, that the cold aire hinder or let not the comming vp of them. When the Citron or any of these be well sprung vp, the Gardener ought to remoue and set them into proper chests filled with light earth, which at will and pleasure may be rolled hither and thither, for the better auoiding of the Sunnes great heate, and bitter cold aire, by standing vnder a couer or Penthouse, made for the onely purpose. In another bedde being of good length, and placed toward the quicke-set hedge, and to runne ouer the Arch Herber, may the Gardener bestow sedes of the Cucumber, Citrone, round Gourd and long: In another bedde also, being long and narrow, and deep furrows at each side made, to set vessels lower then the beds, may the Gardener sow sedes of the sundry kindes of Melons. That the birds and other fowles may be defended from comming to the sedes committed to the earth, the skilfull will, that the white thorne be laid on the beds: but to bestow your sedes in beds rather in the moneth of March then February, and the Moone increasing, do spedier appeare aboue the earth. But if the Gardener feareth lest the sedes committed to the earth should be in danger through the bitter cold aire, and Suns heat following (as yearely the like so happeneth) the beds may then be couered with thick Mattresses of straw in such maner, that they hinder not through their weight, the crescent things comming vp, which may thus be ordered, in setting first vp sundry forked sticks at each corner, and in the sides of the beddes, on which long rods laid, reaching to each corner, and at the endes, as Columella willeth: these done, let him wittily lay on the Mattresses, in couering & defending the yong plants from the cold or heat, at that time. But at such times as the aire being cleere in the cold season, the Mattresses (when the Sun shineth warme) may be taken off, for the spedier increasing of the Plants springing vp. All hearbs and rotes

for

for the Kitchin, prosper far better by their remouing, and thinner setting, through which (by report of the skilfull) they yelde a pleasanter sauor. There are of Greeke writers of husbandry, which will the sowing of seedes to be done in the increase of the Moone, as from the first quarter, vntill the full light of the Moone, and she knowing at that time to be vnder the earth in the day time. Others hauing deuised a perfiter way, do not allow a timely or early sowing of seedes, for which cause they disposed and diuided the same sowing of seedes, into two, yea into three or foure seuerall times of the day, contenting by this meanes to auoide the vncertaintie of the time to come: herein calling to minde the husbandly prouerbe of the worthie Columella, which saith, Haue no mistrust in the committing of seedes to the earth.

It therfore behoueth the Gardener, which hath an earnest care for the purchasing of kitchin or pot hearbs, to regard and see that the seeds committed to the earth be full & new, ỳ earth artly prepared, the dung in the same laudable, and water at hand for the vse of the seeds. For the seedes sound and good, do yeld after the sowing plants of the like goodnesse and vertue: the earth labored and made apt, wil very well keepe and prosper the seedes committed to it: the dung being good and well mixed with the earth, will cause the earth battler, and to these the loser, whereby water diligently sprinkled on the same, may the freelier and easier enter in, to feede and cherish the rootes, and the water seruing to the same end, that it may as by a feeding pappe, nourish and bring vp all crescent things.

The workmanly casting forth, diuiding, and preparing of beds for the most hearbs and rootes of the Kitchin. Chap. 15.

The owner or Gardener ought to remember, that before he committeth seedes to the earth, the beds be disposed and troden out, into such a breedth and length, as best answereth to euery plant & root, in that the beds to be sowen for the Nauew rootes, ought to be troden out large and long: next to which may the beddes for Coleworts and Cabbages bee ioyned of a sufficient breedth: to these next may you place beddes of a reasonable breedth for the Rapes and Turen roots: then for a seemely diuision in the Garden, may he tread out by those an Alley of three foote broad; next to which, if the Gardener will,

may he dispose sundry beddes together for diuers kindes of hearbes, as the Arache, Spinedge, Rocket, Parcely, Sorrell, Bétes, Sperage, Cheruill, Borrage, Fenell, Dill, Mints, white Poppie, and sundrie others. Next ioyning to these, may the owner or Gardener place an other alley of thrée foote broad, by which, frame beddes for the Lékes and Ciues: and to the next, may the Gardener ioyne beddes for the Onions and Chiboules; by these next, the Scalions and Garlike in two beddes disposed. Then leuell out by these an Alley of thrée foote and a halfe broad, to which the Gardener may adioyne many beddes about for borders, seruing as well for the képing in of the sauours, as for hedges, and pot hearbes for the Winter. After these, it shall bee right profitable to leuell a bedde, onely for Sage, another for Isope, the like for Tyme, another for Marioram, a bedde for Lauender, another for Rosemarie and Southerenwood, a bedde for Sauerie and Isope, beddes for Cottemarie, Basill, Balme, and running Tyme: yea a bedde for Camomile, for the vse of benches to sit on, and a delectable Labyrinth to bee made in the Garden (if rome will so serue) with Isope and Tyme, or the Winter Sauerie onely. In the Garden besides, to sow and plant diuers Physicke hearbes, and pleasant flowres, shall be to great vse and commoditie, in that these beside their delectable sight, yélde a commoditie to our bodies, in curing sundry griefes as well in women, as men: for which cause, it shall be necessary to sow beds of physicke hearbs next to these, as the blessed Thistle, the Romane wormwood, the Sperage, hearbe Mercurie, Gentiane, Dittanie, hearbe Fluelline, Harts tongue, Buglosse, Selfe heale, Liuerwort, Lungwort, Stecados, Valeriane, Spiknard, Lionsfoote, Mugwort, hearbe Patience, Angelica, Bittony, and many others, of which in the second part shal particularly be vttered, and their Physicke benefits to be employed many waies.

The rare inuentions and defences for most seeds to be committed to the earth, that these be neither endamaged of Birdes or creeping things. Chap. 6.

ALL worthy writers agrée, that in vaine the husbandly Gardener shal trauel, yea and all other, if the séeds bestowed in the earth happen

happen after to be endamaged either of wormes, and other creeping things, or otherwise scraped vp and wasted by birds, or else harmed by any other iniury, whether the same be wrought within or without the earth, for which cause, that the owner or Gardener may auoid these iniuries, it is high time that he employ a care and diligence in the conceiuing of these remedies and secrets following. If seeds to be committed to the earth, are a little time before the bestowing, steeped in the iuice of houseleeke or Singreene, they shal not only be without harme preserued from Birdes, Ants, field Mice, and other spoilers of the Garden hearbs, but what plants shoot vp of these, shall after proue the better and worthier, as I obserued the like, found noted both in the Greeke commentaries (of matters of the field) and Latine Authors of husbandrie: which to bee most true, although experience instructeth and approueth the same, yet this many times happeneth in sundry Countries, that small store of the hearbe can be found to supply the turne, by reason whereof the Gardener must be forced to exercise a sparer way after this maner, in steeping of the hearbe for a night in a good quantitie, and the same to sprinckle sufficiently on the seedes, whereby they may all the night drawe and drinke in the substance of the hearbe, as the worthie Columella instructeth.

And for lacke of this hearbe altogether, (the said Authour reporteth) that the Gardener may vse in steade of it, the sote cleaning on the chimney, which gathered a day before the bestowing of the seedes in the earth, and mixed for a night with them, doth the like defend the seedes in safetie.

The Greeke writers of husbandrie (and after them Plinie, and the worthie Neapolitane Palladius Rutilius) report, that those seedes may bee preserued in safetie from all euill and Garden monsters, if the bare head without flesh, of either Mare or shee Asse (hauing beene couered of the Male) bee buried in the Garden, or that the middest of the same fixed on a stake set into the earth, bee erected.

The worthy Pliny further reporteth, that there is a garlike growing in ye fallow field (named Allium) which on such wise boiled, ye the same will not grow againe, and strawed on the beds sowne, doth in such maner auaile, that Birdes after will not scrape vp the earth,

nor

nor spoile the sedes bestowed in them. And such which haue eaten of this, are taken (as being astonished) with the hand. The well practised Affricanus vnto the same matter instructeth, that if a quantity of wheate or barley be boiled or infused in wine, and mixed with Mélwort, as either the blacke or white, and the same sprinkled abroad by the pathes of the beds round about, doth on such wise defend the sedes sowne from the iniurie of birds. But those being in a manner dead by eating of this, or at the least starke drunke, he willeth then to hang vp by the legges on a long rodde sticked in the earth, to the terror and fearing away of all other birds comming to the place. Nor this worthie Author omitteth the rare practise of the decoction of riuer Creuisses, with which if the Gardener shall sprinkle his sedes before the sowing, Birdes will neuer after (a matter to be marueled at) approch to the garden beddes: yea the plants beside, which are sprung or shotte out of these, shall indure and continue safe and free from all the iniuries of creeping things. There are certaine skilfull practitioners, which affirme to haue auailed mightily in driuing away birdes, by the onely sprinkling of this decoction aboue taught of the plants come vp, which matter hath of many beene experienced aboue a hundred times, so that the same were wrought at a certaine period and time of the Mone. Sundrie practitioners mixed the bruised leaues of the Cypresse tree, with the sedes for a night, and the same mixture on the morrow they bestowed in the earth, being afore well wrought and turned in with dung. For on such wise the plants sprung out of these, were deliuered from all maner of gnawing or creeping things. Others skilfully practised, vsed the drie shauings or filings, either of the Hartes horne, or Elephants tooth, which they mixed with the seedes for a day, committed them after to the earth, or they otherwise sprinkled, the sedes to be sowen with the water of the infusion and mixtion of these for a night.

The wittie helps commended of the ancient for the Garden seedes, to be employed as wel before as after the sowing, that those be not harmed by outward nor inward iniuries. Chap. 17.

THe singular Poet Virgil counselleth, that the sedes to be committed to the earth, be afore sprinkled & moistned with the water of

Niter

Nytre infused, or the Wine made of the same.

The Greeke Apuleius willeth, that seedes (before the sowing) be sprinckled and moistned with Wine, for on such wise handled, the plants springing and shooting vp, weaken the lesse, yea being feeble, they shall mightily bee holpen with water and Wine mixed and sprinckled on them.

There are certaine Greeke instructers of husbandrie (both of Plinie, Columella, and the Neapolitane Palladius Rutilius) allowed and commended, which will, that the rootes of the wilde Cucumber be infused for one whole day and a night in faire water, and with the same, through the often sprinckling, so to moisten well the seedes, the next day those seedes couered ouer with a blancket, they will, the next morrow to be committed to the earth, affirming the seedes thereby to prosper the better, and these for a certaintie to be preserued from all euill annoyances. The selfe same doth the skilfull Apuleius will, that a few Lentels bee also mixed with the seedes in the sowing of them, for as much as the same pulse by propertie auaileth against the harmes of windes. This Author further willeth, that for a safety of the seedes bestowed, a speckled Toode, named of the Greekes Phrynon, bee drawne by a line in the night time round about the Garden or field, afore the earth be laboured, or diligently digged and dressed of the Gardener: and the same after inclosed in an earthen potte, to be buried in the middest of the Garden or fallow field, which at the present sowing time approched, shall be digged forth, and throwne or carried from that place, a great distance off, lest the Plantes (after the Seedes sowne) growing vppe in that place, may prone or become bitter and vnpleasant of smell.

The Egyptian and Greeke instructors of husbandry report, that the seeds after the bestowing, will remain vngnawne or bitten, and free of harme by creeping things in the Garden, if the seedes shall be committed to the earth when the moone possesseth her half light, or is quarter old. It might be thought an obliuiousnes, to haue ouerpassed the physicke experiment of ỳ singular Democritus, both for ỳ seeds & plants, noted diligently (of the skilful Neapolitane Palladius Rutilius) after this maner: Bestow & close ouer (saith Democritus) of the Seaor riuer Creuises, no fewer then x. in number, into a glasse body

filled vp with water, the same set abroad in the aire, let so stand to be sunned for ten daies together, the sedes that you would after haue to remain in the earth vnharmed, sprinckle & moisten with the same water for eight daies together: after these eight daies ended (as Rutilius instructeth) doe in like maner with that water, vntill the plants after your desired mind be wel sprung vp, at which experiment thus handled, you will greatly maruell: for out of these sedes, what plants shall be sprung and shot vp, will not onely driue Beasts and Cattel from the eating of them, but all other creeping things of what condition they be, from the gnawing and biting of them, of which matters shall further be intreated, in the preper Chapters a little after, and for other defences and helps of sedes as occasion offereth in the places shall be vttered.

The laudable instructions of the ancient, in the nature and election of sundry Seedes, with the apt times commended for the sowing of most Kitchin hearbs.

Chap. 18.

THe singular Columella instructeth, that al sedes bestowed in the Garden, for the vse & benefit of the kitchin or pot, ought rather bee in the increase of the Mone, as from the first, vnto the sixth day. Forasmuch as all sedes committed to the earth, in the decrease or wane of the Mone, either slowly breake and shote vp, or else so weakely increase, that these after serue to small purpose. It many times also hapneth (as the worthy Varro reporteth) that although the sedes bestowed in the earth, be done in the increase of the Mone the sedes besides hauing a iuice, waighty, ful, white meale in them, & in no maner corrupted or too old, yet these notwithstanding are hindered through some euill constellation, which of the skilful is named an influence of heauen, were the gardners diligence neuer so much, so ẏ it is not impertinēt to the matter here to recite what the worthy Neapolitane Palladius Rutilius reporteth of ẏ gardenground, which saith, that a Garden plot, placed and lying vnder a fresh and swēte aire, and moistned gently by some spring or swēt water running by, is in a maner battell and ready enough, wherby the same requireth but a smal instruction & diligence, to be bestowed in the sowing of it. The bestowing of sedes in a moist earth, the beds afore shot cast, ought to be done in the warme season of the Spring, as in May,

and

and the moone increasing, for sedes on such wise handled, prosper the better, through the warme and drie time following. But if occasion moueth you to commit sedes into a drie ground, and that water be farre distant, then digge the allies of the beddes deepe, and in a slope maner, for the better leading of water from beds sufficiently moistned, to others lacking moisture: and to these such a drie earth better agreeth to be sowen in the harueſt time, the ground before well moistned with showers, herein not forgetting the choise of sedes, nearest agreeing to the natures of these two earthes, with the furtherance of the moone at time of the sowing. If the Gardener mindeth to commit sedes to the earth in the Summer time, let the same be done in the increase of the Moone, in the moneths of July and August. In the harueſt time about the middle of September, and in October, the moone in those moneths in her first quarter: for the time againe of committing sedes to the earth, let the same be done in the moneths of February and March, the moone at those times increasing of light.

The sedes which ought especially to be sowen in the earth, about the end of harueſt, as about the middle of September, and in October the moone at those times increasing, that these may all the Winter endure, and be strengthned in the ground, are the Endiue, Onions, Garlike, Scalions, the great Garlike, yong Leeke heads, Coleworts, Mustard sede, and such like.

The Garden ground naturally colde, or all the day receiueth but a weake comfort of the Sunne, through his short presence or tarying there, or else in cold countries, as at Yorke, and farther North. In such places I say, the bestowing of many sedes better agree to be done about the middle of the Spring, or in the moneth of May, in warme and calme daies, the moone then increasing of light.

But the sedes to be committed to the earth in those countries and places in the harueſt time, ought rather to be done sooner or before the time with vs, where the sedes otherwise to be bestowed in hot countries and places in the spring time, require farre timelier to be done, as in the beginning of the moneth of March, and the sedes to be sowen in those places in the harueſt time, to be bestowed much later.

The sedes that at will of the Gardner may be committed to the

earth, either in Harueſt, or Spring time, chiefly for the Kitchen or pot, vnder a gentle aire, and in a battle ground, are theſe; the Colewortes, Nauew, Artichoke, Endiue, Lettuce, Dill, Rocket, Coliander, Parcely, Fenell, Radiſh, Parſnip, Carret, and ſundrie others. Yet theſe by the report of the skilful, come better forward, being ſown in the moneth of Iuly, the country there hot; but in the country temperate, the ſeedes ought rather in the moneth of Auguſt; and in the countrie being colde, in the moneth of September. Thoſe ſeeds committed to the earth in warme and calme daies, proſper far better then thoſe being ſowen in hot and nipping colde daies: for that the warme comfortably draw vp the plantes, whereas the hot daies (in a contrary manner) doe drie, and the bitter colde ſhut the earth.

The ſeedes which the Gardener minde to beſtow in the earth, ought not to be aboue a yeare old, & that bruiſed haue a white meale within & ful, for otherwiſe being ouer old, or withered, they wil neither grow, nor profite at all. The freſher and newer that the ſeeds be at time of the beſtowing in the earth, as the Leeke, the Cucumber, and the Gourd, ſo much the ſoner theſe breake, and appeare aboue the earth: contrariwiſe, how much the older the ſeedes ſhall be, as the Parcely, Beetes, Organy, Creſſes, Pent-royall, and Coliander, ſo much the ſpeedier do theſe ſhoote vp, and appeare aboue the earth, ſo that the ſeedes before the ſowing be not corrupt.

Certaine precepts of the skilfull in our time, for the ſowing of many delectable flowres, and tender hearbes, with the obſeruations of the Moone, in theſe, and in other matters neceſſary.

Chap. 19.

The latter writers of Husbandrie report, that theſe tender Hearbes, and pleaſant flowres, as the Mariorani, Saueric, hearbe Fluelline, Bugloſſe, the bleſſed Thiſtle, the hearb Angelica, Valeriane, Balme, Annis, Dill, Fenell, Organy Mintes, Rue, or hearbe Grace, Sperage, Arache, Spinache, Beetes, Endiue, Borage, Rocket, Taragone, Parcely, Sorrell, Endiue, Strawberrie, Lettuce, Artichoke, and ſundrie others, the Marigolde of all kindes, Roſecampion, the redde and white, the flowre Armoure, the

Flowre

Flowre Petilius, the Columbine white and blew, sweete Johns, the Pincke, Hearts ease, the Pionie, red Lillie, hearbe Sticas, or Lauender gentle, Batchelers-button, the Gilliflowre of all kindes, the Carnation, and many others, ought rather to be committed to the earth in the spring time, and sowen in the moneths of March and April, for they spædier come forward, then bestowed in the moneth of February, heerein considering the state & diuersity of the time. The sæds also of the tender herbs committed to the earth in an apt time, and the Moone in her first quarter, do the spædier shoote vp, being specially sowen after showers of raine, on Sunny and warme places, (as lying open all day to the Sun) which on such wise do the sweetest and spædiest breake, yea and appeare about the earth. For which cause, a diligent care must be had in the bestowing of tender sædes, that the winde then bloweth not from the North, nor done in colde and close daies: for these both include the sædes in the earth, and hinder their growing and shooting vp.

Sædes bestowed in hot places, doe sooner yeelde their stemmes and leaues, yea these spædiest giue their sædes. Such time vse in the sowing of your sæds as may be both mild and warme, in that warm daies following spæde more forward the sædes bestowed.

As touching the most sæds committed to the earth, they ought rather (as afore vttered) to be new, not reuiled, but full, big, weightie, faire of colour, fattie or hauing a iuice, which broken, giue a white meale and not drie pouder; for the sæds that after the breaking yæld a drie pouder, doe well declare them to be corrupt, and seruing to no purpose.

The seedes thus tried afore, and bestowed at that time in the earth, when showers fell a day or two before, and a temperat day at the sowing of the sæds, do very well prosper the growing, & procure these to shoote vp far speedier, in that a colde aire at the sowing, and a day or two after is knowen to be harmefull to sædes, through the including of them in the earth, and hindering in their growth and shooting vp.

If necessity forceth the Gardener to bestow any seedes or plants in a salt earth, let these be either set or sown about the end of harueſt, whereby the malice and euill quality of the ground may be purged, through the showers falling all the winter.

If the owner or Gardener mindeth to bestow yong trees in this ground, let swéete earth or riuer sand bee turned in with the same.

The Gréeke writers of husbandrie (after whom Columella and Rutilius will, that all the kindes of pulses, as peason, hastings, vetches, tares, and such like, to bee sowen in a drie earth, sauing the beanes, which rather ioy to be bestowed in a moist ground.

What seedes the Gardener mindeth to commit, in a well dressed earth, let these be bestowed from the first day vntil the sul light of the Moone, (well nigh) for that séedes sowen in the wane of the Moone come vp thin, and the plants insue weake of growth. Such trées as the husbandman mindeth to build withall, let those rather be cut down after the consent of the skilful in the last quarter of the moone, (she shining at that time) of small light, yea neare to her change, and vnder the earth.

In the cutting downe and gathering of corne (as Macrobius willeth) for the longer preseruing of it and the straw drie (so that the same be done in a drie season) doth better agrée, being in the wane of the Moone.

Such crescent things as the Gardner (or Husbandman) mindeth otherwise to sell, ought to be cut, and gathered in the full Moone, whereby the greatnesse thereof, such thins may yeeld a better sale, and be delectabler to the eye.

Such things as the husbandman mindeth to preserue a long time moist, as Apples, Peares, Wardens, and such like, let them (after the minde of the skilfull) bee rather gathered nere the full of the Moone.

For the committing of séedes to the earth, although the ancient husbandmen prescribe proper moneths and daies, yet may euery person herein kéepe the precept, according to the nature of place and aire, so that these diligently be considered, how certaine séedes there are, which spédier spring vp, and certaine which slower spring vp aboue the earth.

The

The commended times to be obſerued, with the annoiance and incommodity to be eſchewed in the beſtowing of ſeedes and plants in the earth. Chap. 20.

THe ſingular D. Niger learnedly vttereth, that the more of eſtimation the ſeedes and plants are, with trauels thereabout beſtowed, ſo much the circumſpecter ought euery Gardener and husbandman to be: and the more inſtructions & help the Gardener may attaine, and the greater danger he may therein auoid, the more carefull ought he and all others to be.

The daily experience is to the Gardener, as a Schoolemaſter to inſtruct him, how much it auaileth and hinderth, that ſeedes to bee ſown, plants to be ſet, yea Sions to be grafted (in this or that time) hauing herein regard, not to the time eſpecially of the yeare, as the Sunne altereth the ſame, but alſo to the Mones increaſe and wane, yea to the ſigne ſhe occupieth, and places both aboue and vnder the earth.

To the aſpects alſo of the other planets, whoſe beames and influence both quicken, comfort, preſerue, and maintaine, or els nip, wither, drie, conſume, and deſtroy by ſundry meanes, the tender ſeedes, plants, yea and grafts, and theſe after their property, and vertue naturall or accidentall.

Herein not to be forgotten, the apt choiſe and circumſpection of the earth, with other matters generally required in the ſame, for which cauſe (after the minde of the ſkilful Aſtronomers) and prudent experimenters, in either committing ſeedes to the earth and planting, or other like practiſe to be vſed about the ſeedes, plants, and yong trees, theſe rules following are to be vnderſtanded and kept (which they haue left to vs for our commodity) in caſes of importance, and where the occaſion may be imploied.

When the Mone and Saturne, are either three score degrees of the Zodiack aſunder (which diſtance in heauen) is named of the ſkilfull, a Sextile aſpect, it is then commended to labour the earth, ſow, and plant, marked after this maner. *

But when theſe are 126. degrees aſunder, which properly is named a Trigon, or trine aſpect thus noted △ for the more part, the[illegible] that time better commended for laboring the earth, whether [illegible] dre of tilling, gardening, ſowing, planting, and ſetting, or cutting [illegible] chuſe the [illegible]ge.

In

In a contrary manner, the Garden ground of the drieſt, or the ſæedes verie drie, then in committing ſuch ſæedes to earth, let the moone be increaſing, and drawing neare to her full.

To the better furthering of the Gardeners traueis, he ought afore to conſider, that the Garden earth be apt and good, well turned in with dung, at a due time of the yeare, in the increaſe of the moone, ſhe occupying an apt place in the Zodiacke, in agréable aſpect of Saturne, and well placed in the ſite of heauen. All theſe thus afore-hand learned, and with diligence beſtowed, procure the plants the ſpædier to grow, and ware the bigger, if afore weighty, ſui, &c. as be-fore vttered in the nineteenth Chapter, for otherwiſe this care and paines beſtowed about the ſæedes and plants, nothing auaileth the Gardener.

The yearely Almanacks do marueilouſly help the Gardeners in the election of times, for ſowing, planting, and grafting, but eſpecially in obſeruing the moone, about the beſtowing of plants, as when the moone increaſing, occupieth Taurus and Aquarius. But if it be for the ſetting of yong trées, let the ſame be done in the laſt quarter of the moone, ſhee then being in Tauro, and in a coniunction with Venus, for ſo theſe ſpædier take roote in the earth, and the Gardener planting in either Taurus and Aquarius, or Virgo and Piſces, muſt as carefully take hæde alwaies, that the moone is not euill aſpected of Saturne and Mars.

In the planting alſo of yong trées, let the ſame be done from the middle of October, vnto the middle of March. In the ſowing of ſæedes, in a well dreſſed Earth, let the Moone runne at thoſe times in Taurus, Cancer, Virgo, Libra, and Capricornus.

But this diligently learne, that the ſæedes and Plants increaſe the better, if any of theſe ſignes ſhall be aſcending in the Eaſtangle, and that Mars neither beholdeth the Aſcendent, or the Moone by any aſpect, but ſhall be weakly ſtanding in a weake place of the figure at that time.

Here might many other rules, as touching the particular fauour, and hinderance of the ſtarres bee vttered, but that it is not my intent in this Chapter to bee tedious in wordes, or darke in ſenſe. For which cauſe, let theſe few rules content the Gardener, who

by

by exercising of them, and through an instructer, may inuent other rules more particular.

Yet I feare me, that the common sort of men will suppose these rules to extend somewhat aboue their capacitie, which for zeale I beare vnto my country, moued me notwithstanding to vtter and put such matter into their heads, procuring them therby (that where the daintinesse and value of the sedes, and plants so require) to request the counsell of some skilfull, that both may make plaine these precepts, and instruct them in other rules alike, if neede requireth.

To conclude, the Gardener must heresuppose all matters on his part to be fully and duly first prepared and wel appointed, and then to attend, or diligently take heed to those times aforе vtteerd for the working of the planets and starres, in the bestowing of sedes and tender plants in the earth.

In what space of time seedes committed to the earth, in the increase of the Moone, commonly shoote vp and appeare aboue ground.
Chap. 22.

FLorentius (a Greeke writer of Husbandrie) cunningly vtteereth, that the naturalnesse of the ground, the clemency of heauen, the fauour of the weather, and age of the sedes, procureth that the sedes being bestowed in the ground, doe either speedier or later shoote vp into plants. For which cause, the daintie sedes committed to the earth in a faire and warme day, the place hot or lying open to the Sun, and the sedes new, doe farre speedier shote vp, then those that being sowen in a contrarie season, place, and ground.

All sedes sowen, doe euermore appeare aboue the earth at one certaine time in a manner, for which cause the Gardener ought to haue regard vnto the proper times answering to the bestowing of sedes, and gathering the fruits or yeelde of each sedes.

The

The Spinage, Rocket, Basil, and the nanew sedes, breake and appeare aboue the earth, after the third day sowing, if a warme aire succeede.

The Lettuce seeds bestowed in a well dressed earth, do break and appeare aboue ground by the fourth day folowing, if the clemency of aire aid therto: the Cucumber and Citrone sedes bestowed in the increase of the Mone, and showers of raine falling the same or the next day following, procure them to appeare the fift day after.

The seeds of that sightly hearbe, named the flowre Armour, being sowne in the increase of the Mone, and the aire fauouring, doe breake and appeare aboue the earth by the seuenth or eight day following.

The sedes of the hearbe Dill, bestowed in the earth, in the increase of the Mone, do (for the more part) appeare by the fourth day following.

The sedes of the Garden Cresses and Mustarde, committed to the earth in the increase of the Mone, do commonly appeare aboue the ground by the fift day after.

The Leke sedes (bestowed in the ground) in the Summer time, are seene aboue the earth by the first day following, but in the Winter time in well dunged beds by the tenth day after.

The sedes of the hearbe Rocket, committed to the ground in the increase of the Mone, appeare by the eight day following.

The sedes of all kindes of Coleworts, bestowed in well dressed beds, are euermore seene by the tenth day following, if the cold aire hindereth not.

The sedes of the great Lekes bestowed in well dunged beddes, appeare many times by the nineteenth, but oftner by the twentieth day following.

The Coliander seeds, bestowed in well trimmed beds, and in the increase of the Mone, are commonly seene aboue the earth by the fiue and twentieth day: but the yong plants later appeare, if the sedes bestowed are new.

The sedes of the Organy and Saueris, bestowed in light earth, and the Mone increasing, do appeare aboue the ground by the thirtie day following.

The

The Parcely sedes committed to the earth, and the increase of the Wone, do commonly breake and appeare aboue ground, by the fortieth day following, although they are not many times seene before the fiftieth day.

Thus haue I briefly vttered a true and pleasant instruction, both for the age of sedes, and skill of the Gardener in the sowing of them. For as I haue aboue said, the Leke, the Cucumber, and Citrone sedes doe spedier come vp, being new sedes: in a contrary maner, the sedes of the Parcely, Beets, Spinage, Cresses, Sauery, Organy, Peny-royall, and Coliander, the elder that these are (before the bestowing in the earth) the spedier the sedes breake and appeare aboue ground.

The sedes in like maner of the Cucumber, steeped in milke or luke warme water for a night, and committed to the earth, vnder a warme aire, do far spedier breake, and appeare aboue ground. The like may the Gardener conceiue to be done with the seeds of the Artochoke, and many other hearbes, of which shall particularly be vttered in the proper places hereafter.

The third moneths sowing, or rather in May, to such dwelling far North, or where snow lieth long, there (this bestowing of sedes) better agreeth, especially where the quality of Summer is knowne to be moist.

But in other countries (this like) by a seldome happe answereth, sedes three moneths olde committed to the earth in harueste time will better agree, being done in hot countries, the Wone herein considered.

The Gardener in his well trimmed earth, (the time aiding) may commit to the grounde all worthie and excellent kinde of sedes, plants, slips, kernels, and such like: but these for a triall bestow in the beds in your Garden.

So that in any new kinds of sedes, not assayed or proued before, the Gardener may not throughly hope that these will prosper in his ground.

These sedes committed to the earth in moist places, doe spedier shoot vp (the Wone helping) then bestowed in drie ground: for which cause, election vsed in sowing of good and ful seeds (in either ground) much auaileth.

The sæds or sets bestowed in shadowie places, although the earth be wel laboured before, do rarely or very seldome prosper, and yæld their flowre.

The plants growne to their flowre, may at that time (after the minde of the Neapolitane Palladius Rutilius) bee little or nothing handled, for doubt of corrupting their flowre, or the sooner shedding of them.

What care and diligence is required of euery Gardener, in the plucking vp, and cleare weeding away of all vnprofitable hearbes growing among the Garden plants.

Chap. 23.

AFter the sædes being workemanly bestowed in the beddes, the Gardeners next care must be, that he diligently pul vp, and wæde away all hurtfull and vnprofitable hearbes, annoying the Garden plants comming vp.

But about this exercise in wæding of the beds, there is a disagrément among the writers of husbandrie. For certaine denie that the raking doth profit the plants any thing at all, in that by the rake the roots of the garden plants are so vncouered, and the plants with the same felled, and caused to lie flat on the ground, which if colde weather ensue, are vtterly killed with the nipping aire, for which cause, they better thought of that wæding and clensing exercise, by pulling vp with the hand, so that the same were done in due order and time.

Yet it pleased many husbandmen in time past to rake vp the wæds in bed; yet not after one maner, nor at all times alike, but according to the vsage of the countrie, the good skill and condition of the weather: for which cause, in what maner soeuer this exercise shall be taken in hand, that wæding shall næde or be required in these places, the Gardener shall not attempt or beginne the wæding of beds with the hand, before the plants well sprung vp, shall sæme to couer their proper beds, and that in this high growth, the plants shal be mixed and ioyned one to the other, according to the nature and forme in their growth.

In this plucking vp, and purging of the garden beds of wæds and stones, the same about the plants ought rather to be exercised with

the

the hand, then with an iron instrument, for feare of febling the yong plant, yet small and tender of growth.

And in the weeding with the hand, the Gardener must diligently take heede that he do not too boisterously lose the earth, nor handle much the plants in plucking away of the weeds, but the same purge so tenderly, that the rootes of the yong plants bee not loosed and febled in the soft earth: for occasion wil moue the careful Gardener to weede daintie hearbes, being yet yong and tender, lest grosse weedes in the growing vp with them, may annoy and hinder their increasing. Therefore the yong plants in some readinesse to be taken in hand, ought not to be stayed vntill their strong & big growth, but weeded in the mean time, for doubt of the inconueniences aboue vttered. But the common hearbes for the kitchin, the Gardener shal not begin to weede before they be grown strong in root, and big shot vp. And this learne, that if the earth be lose and soft at the time of weeding the dainty plants, you may not then lose and pul vp weeds, but in a soft and tender maner: and yet fine hearbs require al times to be weeded, so that showers of raine haue well softened the earth a day before.

The walking or treading often about the beds of the litle and tender plants showing vp, loseth much the soft earth about them, yea this so setleth downe the ground by the helpe of showers of raine falling, that the weeds growing vp in those beds, are caused the harder to be plucked vp. And sometime the rootes of ths weedes in the plucking vp with the hand are left behinde, through this fastnes caused of the earth.

Here remember, that you neuer take in hand or begin the weeding of your beds, before the earth be made soft, through the store of raine falling a day or two before.

Here conceiue, that the clipping, plucking away, and pressing downe of sundrie hearbes with Tiles or other weighty things, after they be growne to some greatnes, is to great purpose, forsomuch as this causeth them to keepe the longer green, and to yeld the thicker, bigger, and fairer tuffes, besides the letting of the hearbes, that they grow not vp into seede; and to giue these a pleasanter sauour, then the same that before they possessed in their growth simply.

As

As by a like meanes and ordering, both the Lettuce, Cabbedge, and Colewort, may be caused better and more pleasant of taste, then the leaues simply growing, without any such manner of ordering.

In the like condition do the Radish and Nauew rootes grow the fairer and bigger, if diuers of the greene leaues (after some growth) be handsomely clipped or broken off.

But of the apt ordering of these two last, in causing their rootes to be far bigger then customable, & pleasanter in tast, shall more fully be vttered in their proper Chapters hereafter, in the second part of this treatise.

The commended times for watering of the Garden Beddes, and what maner of water ought necessarily be vsed to plants, with the later inuentions of diuers vessels aptest for this purpose. Chap. 24.

THe beds being furnished with seedes in due age of the Moone, requireth diligence (if the aire sufficiently moisteth not) in the watering of them, lest the ground being verie drie of the proper nature, may through the drithe for the lacke of raine, cause both the seedes and tender plants shot vp, to perish and drie.

For which cause euery Gardener ought carefully to consider the condition and property of the earth of his garden, whether of it selfe the same be very moist, or ouer drie, which two extreames learned, he may with more diligence bestow paines about the watering of the Garden beds, so often as neede shall require.

And for that the seasons in a manner, sufficiently instruct euerie owner and Gardener, when to water the plants come vp, it shal not be (of my part) a new instruction to vtter vnto them, the daies and times necessary to water the plants, seeing the yongest of any discretion know that the beds chiefly require watering after a drought, or when many hot daies haue chanced together, as the like especially commeth to passe in the summer time, about the Cosmick rising of the Canicular or dog Star, which with vs commonly happeneth about the seuententh day of July. And this watering of the beds, ought rather be done (as Pliny witnesseth) in the morning, some after

the

the Sunne rising) and at the euening when the Sunne possesseth a weake force aboue the earth. The reason this Author alledgeth of the same, is that by watering at the hot time of the day as at none, the water then made hot by heat of the Sunne, would so burne the yong and tender rootes of the plantes. And in this watering of the beddes, the Gardener must haue a speciall care and regard, that he moisten not the plants too much, lest cloying them too much with water, they after ware feeble and perish. The water best commended for watering of the plants, is the same drawen or gotten out of the Riuer, or other narrow streame ebbing and flowing, or els sweetly running one way, through the helpe of Springs falling into it. But if the Gardener be forced to vse Well-water, drawen especialy out of a deepe Well, or the water out of some deepe pit, he ought then to let the same drawen vp stand for two or three daies together, or at the least for certaine houres in the open aire, to be warmed of the Sun, lest the same being new drawen vp, and so watered or sprinckled forth on the beds both raw and colde, may feeble and kill the tender yong plants comming vp.

The age also of the plantes, shall greatly direct the Gardener to know how much and how smally he ought to moisten them at each time needfull, for the tender yong plants new come vp, require a lesser watering, and the same gently where the hearbes more growen, wel ioy to be plentifully moistned with the water temperate warm. And this water ought gently to be sprinkled forth on the beds, with a watering pot, and by other meanes, which after shalbe demonstrated, that the roots of the yong hearbs may alike drinke in of the water, and not to be cloyed through the ouer fast, or too much moisture sprinkled on them, by which doing, these the rather retaine the spirit vanquishing, procured to passe thorow the exhalation of the earth. For which cause, the beds at one instant shal not fully be watered, but as the earth and plants drinke in, so gently sprinckle forth the water, in feeding the plantes with moisture, as by a brest or nourishing pappe, which like handled, shall greatly prosper the tender plants comming vp, where they otherwise by the hasty drowning with water, are much annoyed, and put in hazard of perishing.

To the water standing in the Sunne, if the owner or Gardener mixe a reasonable quantity of dung, after his discretion, this mixture no

no doubt will be to great purpose, for as much as the same gently watered or sprinkled abroad, procureth a proper nourishment to the tender plants and yong hearbs comming vp.

The colde as well as the salt water, is knowen to be enemy vnto al kindes of plants, yet Theophrastus reporteth, that the salt water is more proper for the watering of certaine plants, then any other.

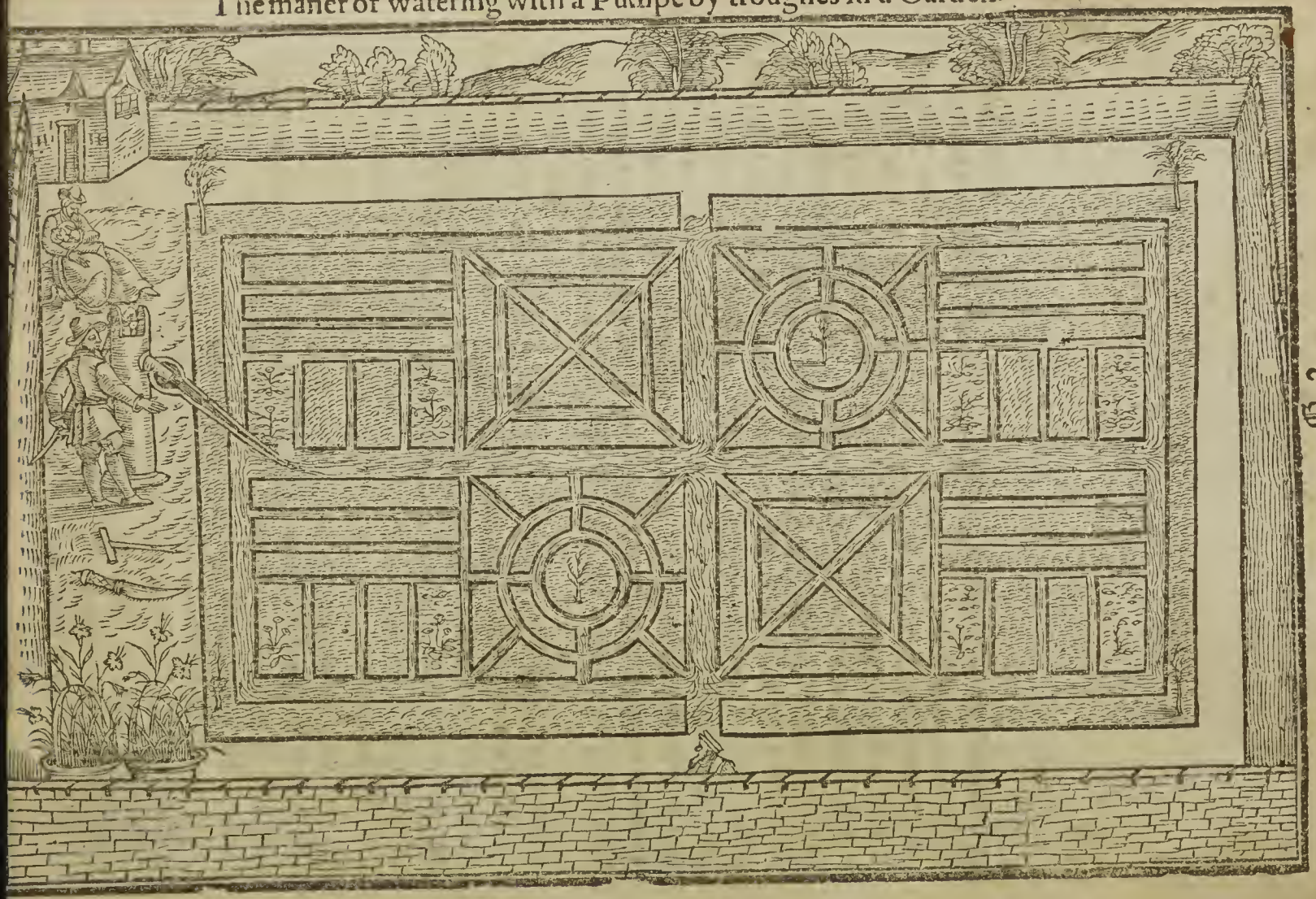
The common watering pot for the Garden beds with vs, hath a narrow neck, big belly, somewhat large bottome, and full of little holes, with a proper hole formed on the head to take in the water, which filled ful, and the thumbe laid on the hole to keepe in the aire, may on such wise be carried in handsome maner to those places by a better help aiding, in the turning and bearing vpright of the bottom of this pot. which needfully require watering.

The watering pot best to be liked, and handsomest for this turn, both for the finely sprinckling forth, and easie carriage of water in the same from place to place in the Garden, is that much vsed in the chiefest Gardens about London, and in diuers partes of England now knowen, whose forme is after this manner, the body wholly of Copper, hauing a bigge belly and narrow necke, a strong handle of the same mettal workemanly fastned to the bellie and head, to carrie the potte if neede be to places in the Garden: but for a more easinesse and quicknesse in carriage of the pot vpright and ful, is an other strong ring or handle fastened artly to the lips of the pot, much like to the Barbers water-pot carried abroad, that serueth to none other turne, sauing for the easie carriage of the pot full of water to needfull places: but this other handle especially serueth to sprinkle forth the water by the long pipe full of little holes on the head, that some name a pumpe, which reacheth from the bottom, vnto the head of the pot, for the handsomer deliuering forth of the water, the handle in the meane time guiding this long pipe of the pot, vntil al the water be spent.

The Gardener possessing a Pump in his ground, or fast by, may with long and narrow troughes wel direct the water vnto all beds of the Garden, by the pathes betweene, in watering sufficiently the rootes of all such hearbes, which require much moisture. But for a plainer vnderstanding of this, I haue heere in the Page following demonstrated the forme to the eie.

There

The maner of watering with a Pumpe by troughes in a Garden.



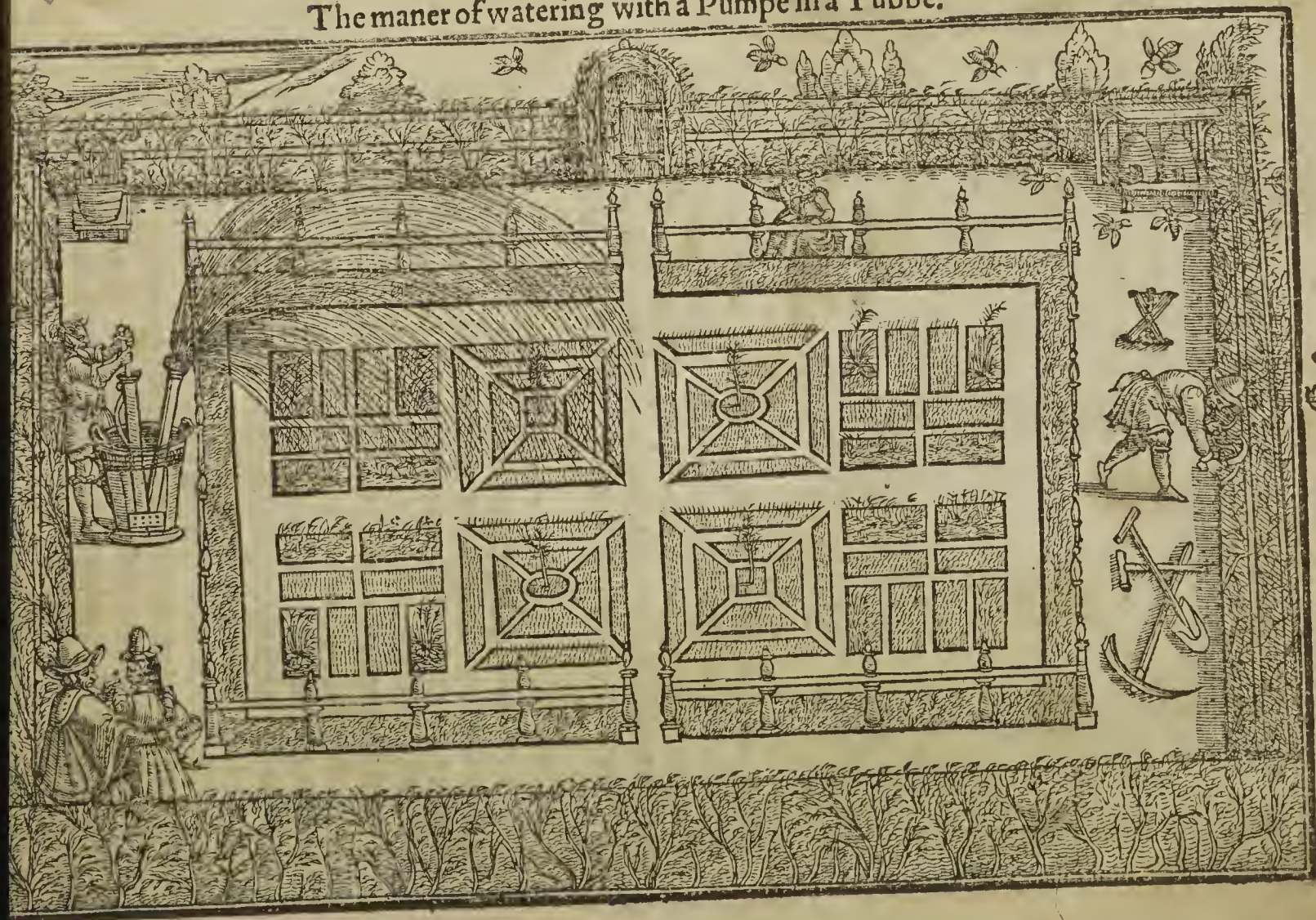
There be some which vse to water their beds with great Squirts, made of Tin, in drawing vp the water, and setting the Squirt to the breast, that by force squirted vpward, the water in the breaking may fal as droppes of raine on the plants, which sundry times like squirted on the beds, doth sufficiently fede the plants with moisture.

An other way better commended, and the same with more ease in watering of plants and hearbes, is done by a great vessell of Tin, formed some what like to a squirt, yet in the deuided parts the same differeth, for that this hath a pipe of the same mettal raised from the bottom, and reaching in a maner so high, as the great pipe, hauing many little holes at the imbossed toppe or end, this bigger pipe formed after the maner of a smal Pumpe, at whose nether end, a thicke square plate of Tin striken full of little holes, workemanly fastned, into which a Pumpe staffe put for the drawing vp, and forcible sending forth of the water, by thrusting downe with both hands a good distance off.

The vessell thus prepared in a readinesse, must be set into a deepe vessell or tubbe of water, in what place of the Garden the owner or Gardener mindeth to begin in drawing first the Pump vp, and with mightier strength thrusting it down againe, which so handled, causeth the water to ascend and flee forth of the pipe holes on such heigth, that in the falling the droppes come downe thorow the aire, breaking it in forme of raine, that one place being sufficiently watered, the Gardener may then remoue the tub & vessel into another place, which needeth the like watering, and on such wise doing in three or foure places he shall sufficiently moisten all the beddes and borders of the Garden. That the forme of this vessell, with the tub may the readier be conceiued, behold this figure following here faithfully demonstrated.

The

The maner of watering with a Pumpe in a Tubbe.



The owner or Gardner, enioying a Pond with water, in his garden ground, or a ditch of water running fast by, so that the same bee sweet, may with an instrument of wood (named of most men a skiffe) sufficiently water all the beddes of the Garden, with great ease and expedition.

Such plants which come speediest forward, through much moisture bestowed on them, as the Cucumber, Mellon, Gourd, and sundry others, the Gardener may with farre greater ease and trauell water after this maner, in taking wollen clothes or Lists, and these like tongues cut sharpe at the one end, which lay to the bottom of the pot, filled with water, the sharpe end hanging forth, well foure fingers deepe, and the pot leaning somewhat forward, that these may through the continuall dropping, hastily speede the increase of the aboueſaid plants, so that to each plant a like pot prepared be set, which maner of doing, is termed filtring.

At what times diuers plants sprung vp, ought to be remoued and set againe, as out of one bed or border into another, with the breaking or slipping of sundry sets from old bodies, which with skill require to be bestowed in the earth. Chapter 25

THe Husbandman or Gardener, which would haue plantes grow vnto a greater bignesse then customable, ought to remoue

after

after foure or fiue leaues be well come vp, and set them againe, as out of one bedde bestowed into another, and like from one border into another. Although the owner may (at all seasons) dispose plants, at his will and pleasure, yet is it better commended, that all plantes be changed into other earth prepared when showers of raine haue well moistned and softned the same.

The plants also remoued, and set againe into a fat earth well laboured and dressed, néedeth besides as Columella witnesseth, no other amendement by dung.

The skilfull Neapolitane (Palladius Rutilius) in his worthy work of husbandrie reporteth, that when the Gardener hath bestowed sundry kindes of seedes in one bedde together, which after the diligent watering be so risen, that foure or fiue leaues of diuers plants are sprung aboue the earth, such then after this Authours consent, may well be remoued and set againe (into beds workmanly prepared) a certain distance asunder, being such plants that (before the setting) require to haue the tops of the leaues, and ends of the roots cut off, whereby they may the frélier grow vp broad in touffe or bigge in rote.

Those kindes of séede, which after the committing to the earth, and diligent watering, néed not, after certaine leaues sprung vp, to be remoued, may the owner or the Gardener bestowe (as Rutilius witnesseth) in the beddes the thinner, the Mone hérein remembred.

The worthie Columella (in instructions of the Garden) willeth the owner or Gardener, hauing occasion to pull vp plantes, and sette them againe in beddes, and that the ground the same time (for the lacke of raine, bee ouer drie and hard) to moisten and soften well the earth a day before, with water sprinckled forth, by a watering potte, seruing onely to that vse.

And certaine of these, which require to bee sette a good distance asunder, the worthie Rutilius willeth to clippe off the toppes of the yong leaues, and the endes of the rootes to cut away, before the bestowing againe in beddes workmanly prepared, as like the Colewort, Cabedge, Lettuce, great Léeke, Nauew, and Rape.

Againe

Again, a good distance asunder, are ye Cucumber, Gourd, Mellon, Artochoke, Nigella Romana, and sundry other, which this placed in beds artly prepared, may the readier and handsomer be weeded, and cherished by the earth digged about, so often as néede shall require, whereby the plants, through helpe of diligent watering, and furtherance of the Moone in setting, are after procured to increase the better, and delectabler to the eie.

The yong sets for the Garden (of pleasant delight and smell) may the owner or Gardener also bestow in borders at all seasons (although better commended to be done in the spring time) in breaking off the slips or branches of one yeares growth, from the bodies of old stockes, & in wreathing the ends about, so to set them a good depth into the earth, the Moone at that time drawing neare to her change, and knowne to be vnder the earth, which much furthereth the sets in the sooner taking of roote.

But the skilful Columella rather willeth, to cleaue the end of the branch or slip beneath, in which cleft an Ote graine to be thrusted or put, & in the setting déeps into the ground, to bestow Ote graines round about the same, (the Moone then néere to her change) rather then any dung.

And these yong hearbs which the Gardener mindeth to remoue, néede not (saith this Columella) to be striked about the rootes with any dung, but rather that the ends of their rootes (before the setting againe) be cut off, as I aboue vttered.

The Marigold, Daze, Collumbine, Primrose, Couslip, swéete John, Gilly-flowres, Carnations, Pincks, and sundry other delectable flowres, are procured to increase the bigger, fairer, and doubler, if the owner or Gardener doe often change these into beddes, workemanly prepared, the Moone at those times considered, to bee increasing of light, and that a diligence bestowed in the often watering.

As touching the pulling vp of sundry dainty hearbes of pleasant sauor, and that these to be set againe in beds (orderly prepared) after the course of the moone, with a care and diligence to be bestowed particularly on most plants of the garden, that at large be vttered in the second part of this treatise, where we purpose to intreat of many laudable and weightie matters besides.

The

The plants (which after certaine leaues spring vp) neede not to be remoued into other beds, are the Spinage, Arache, Dil, Sperage, Sorrell, Cheruile, Parcely, and diuers other of like sort.

The laudable instructions of the wife, in the gathering and preserueing of the greater number of kitchin herbes and roots, with the times aptest for the like doing by all flowres, dainty hearbs, and rootes to the vse of Physicke.

Chap. 26.

THe best and worthiest rootes of hearbes, for the more part, to be gathered in apt places when the leaues are beginning to fall off, and the fruits or seedes already shed, so that the season be faire: for done in a rainie time, thy roots be caused the weaker, and filled with rude moisture.

The flowres in like maner are to be gathered, as the Borage, Buglosse, and all others of like sort when they be wholly opened, and before they fade, except the flowres of the Rose, & Jacemine, which ought to be gathered for the better and longer keeping, before they be much, or rather but little opened.

The leaues and whole hearbes are to be gathered, when these be come to their full growth and perfection.

The fruits, as the Melone, Cucumber, Cytrone, and Gourde, when these appeare yellow, and be come to their perfite growth and perfection.

The seeds in like condition are to be gathered, when they be well ripened, and before the seedes shed on the earth, but those which remaine after the hearbes thorow dried, ought to be rubbed forth with the hands, and kept vnto the time of sowing.

Here remembring that the seedes ought to be gathered in a cleare season, and in the wane of the Moone.

And this for a generall rule obserue, that all those to be gathered, as the hearbes, flowres, rootes, fruites, and seedes are to be done in a faire and drie season, and in the decrease of the Moone.

The hearbs which the owner mindeth to preserue, are afore to be cleane picked and clensed, and dried in the shaddowe, being a place

 open

open towards the South, not moist and frée from smoke and dust.

These after are to be put in Leather bagges, rather then into Canuas, the mouthes at the hanging vp fast tied, and into wodden boxes of the Box-trée, to the end the hearbs may not lose their proper vertu, as we sée those persons to do, which preserue dainty herbs for the winter time. So that the Poticaries in mine opinion are very negligent, which hang vp the Physicke hearbes in their open shops and ware-houses, through which the vertue of these not only breath away, but the hearbs charged and clagged with dust, copwebs, dung of flies, and much other filth.

The flowres ought not to be dried in the Sunne, nor in that shadow caused by the Sunne at Noone, nor in any chamber or high place aboue, forasmuch as these through their softnesse and tendernes do lightly of light occasion, breath away their proper vertue, but especially through the sharpe heat of the sunne, and heate of the aire, vnlesse it be our Rose of the garden, which to be preserued for a long time, requireth to be dried in a high place, standing open to the Sun at noone, or that the Sun beames enter vnto, and yet touch not the Rose leaues.

The better way for drying flowres, is to lay them in a temperate and darke place, frée from moisture, smoke, and dust, and to stirre them to and fro, that these in the drying corrupt not, but to bee either close kept in bagges, or continually couered ouer well, that these in the meane time lose not their colour, nor naturall sauour.

After being well dried, these ought to be close stopped in a glazed earthen vessell.

The finer séed are to be preserued in the leather bagges, or in earthen vessels, hauing very narrow mouthes, or else in glasse bottels, or gallie glasses very well stopped.

But the sedes of the Onions, Chibols, and Lékes, as also of the Poppy, are to be preserued in the huskes and heads.

For the preseruing of rootes, the owner ought to learne and exercise two meanes, the one for kéeping them fresh, and the other for the round roots, as the Nauew, Radish, Carret, and others of like sort, and for to preserue them drie.

The

The way and meanes to keepe and preserue rootes fresh, is to burie them in a Seller, in either Grauell or Sande, well turned vpon them, or in a Garden ground reasonably deepe digged, euen so deepe as the Gardener doeth for the Radish and Nauew in the Earth, to enioy the commoditie of them for the greater part of the Winter: to preserue rootes drie, the owner or Gardener (after the plucking of rootes out of the earth) ought to wash them very cleane with Conduit or Spring water, after to cutte away all the small and hairie rootes; which done, to drie them in a shodow place free from the beames of the sunne, as being somewhat darke, if so be these are slender and thinne of rinde, as bee the rootes of the Fennell, Succorie, Parcely, Endiue, Borage, Buglosse, Sperage, and sundrie others like: but if the rootes be thicke of rind, of a grosse essence and bigge, then may the owner lay them to drie in the Sunne at Noneday, as the roote of Gentiane, the Earth Apple, Brionie, Raponticke, Aristolochia, or any others like.

After that these be well dried, and like prepared, ought the owner to hang them vp in some Garret or open roome a high, being sweete and drie (through the Sunnes daily shining on the place at none) or open to the North where nothing damaged by smoke, nor dust, nor that the Sunne beames may harme in any maner, euen as that ancient & singular Physition Hippocrates instructeth, who willeth the hearbs, flowres, and roots, so well fresh as drie, not to be bestowed in any maner, in an open place, to bee dried of the wind, but rather close stopped in Glasses, Earthen pottes, and square boxes of wood, to the end that these lose not their vertue, which otherwise they might none doe by lying open to the wind.

All the field plants, flowres, and roots, are stronger in nature, but in substance inferiour to the Garden plants, &c.

Among the wilde plantes, those growing on the mountaines or high hils, do excell the other in property.

Among all plants those also are of a stronger nature, which shall be of a liuelier colour, better taste and sauour.

The force besides of plants do indure (for the more part) vnto two or three yeares.

The herbes which a man would vse for the Kitchin, ought rather to be gathered with a knife, somewhat aboue the earth, when these are shot vp vnto their perfit growth, as the Beets, Succory, Arache, Borage, Marigold, Colewort, Endiue, Clary, Rocket, Basill, Marioram, Lettuce, Parcely, Mercury, and many others.

When the owner mindeth to vse certaine hearbs, hot of quality, he ought to gather them for the more part, rather fresh then drie: but if his intent be rather to heate lesser, then seeing the moisture of the greene, doth much mittigate the heat consisting in it, for that cause is he willed rather to gather the hearbes for physicke before they begin to alter their colour.

This for a generall rule note, that al flowres, hearbes, and rootes, ought carefully to be gathered in a drie faire season, and not in cloudie, mistie, nor rainy weather. The rootes beside are not to be gathered, but after the fall of the leaues, and those especially from the middle of September, vnto the beginning of the moneth of Nouember. But flowres are chiefly to be gathered from the middle of the moneth of May, vnto the beginning of July, and after.

And for the fruits of sundrie hearbes, these properly are to be gathered, according to the diuersity of the hearbes.

The worthy remedies and secrets auailing against Snailes, Canker wormes, the long bodied Mothes, Garden fleas, and Earth wormes, which vitiate and gnaw, as well the pot hearbs, as trees and fruits.

Chap. 27.

There is none so dul of eie sight (as I beléue) which not thorowly perceiueth and séeth, how that the garden riches be diuersly anoied and harmed by diuers créeping wormes and beastes, as wel aboue as vnder the earth, and that through the same occasion, often procured to féeble and waste, and vnlesse speedie remedies shall be exercised, that these in the end doe fall downe and perish.

For the pestilent company of these increase and are seene manie times to be so many or great in number, that by no deuised meanes, neither by fire nor iron engine (from the Garden grounds or fields, in which these once shalbe lodged or abiding) can either be driuen away

way or destroyed: therefore I shall doe herein a most grateful matter (as I suppose) both to husbandmen and gardeners, if against this pestiferous annoiance and destruction, I shall vtter and teach those worthie remedies, that both the ancient and latter men by great skill inuented, and noted in their learned workes.

From words to come vnto the matter I thinke it time to intreat: and first, that singuler Africanus among the Greeke writers of husbandrie reporteth, that Garden plants and rootes may well be purged and rid of the harmefull wormes, if their dennes or deepe holes be smoked, the winde aiding, with the dung of the Cowe or Oxe burned.

That worthy Pliny in his first booke of histories writeth, that if the owner or Gardener sprinkleth the pure mother of the oyle Oliue without any salt in it, doth also driue the wormes away and defend the plants and hearbes from being gnawne of them. And if they shal cleaue to the rootes of the plants, through malice or breeding of the dung, yet this weedeth them cleane away. The plants or hearbes wil not after be gnawn or harmed by garden fleas, if with the naturall remedie, as with the hearbe Rocket, the Gardener shall bestow his beds in many places.

The Coleworts and all pot hearbs are greatly defended from the gnawing of the garden fleas, by Radish growing among them. And the worthy Anatolius in his Greeke instructions of husbandry affirmeth the like, so that some bitter fitches be also bestowed with the Radish in beds. And this seed committed in bed with the Radish and Rape, doeth greatly auaile, as the ancient witnesse of experience. The eager or sharpe vineger doth also preuaile, tempered with the iuice of Henbane, and sprinkled on the garden fleas. To these, the water in which the herb Nigella Romana shalbe steeped for a night, and sprinkled on the plants, as the Greek Pamphilus reporteth, doth like preuaile against the Garden fleas.

If from creeping things the Gardener would defend the seeds committed to the earth, from being gnawne or harmed, let him steepe those seedes for a night (as I afore vttered) before the sowing in the iuice of the Sengreene or Houseleeke, which seeds also the Gardener shall preserue vngnawne, if he bestow of them in the shell of that Snaile, which I suppose to be the same, named the Tortuise, as the

former Author Anatolius writeth: in which place I may not omit the same practise of the skilfull Palladius Rutilius, who reporteth, that the noisome vermine or creeping things will not breede of the pot hearbes, if the Gardener shall before the committing to the earth, drie all the seedes in the skinne of the Tortuise, or sowe the hearbe Mint in many places of the Garden, especially among the Coleworts. The bitter Fitch and Rocket (as I before vttered) bestowed among the pot hearbes, so that the seedes be sowen in the first quarter of the Moone, doe greatly auaile vs: as vnto the Canker and Palmer wormes belongeth, which in many places work great iniury both to the gardens and vines, may the owner or Gardener driue away with the Figge tree ashes sprinckled on them and the hearbes.

There be some which sprinkle the plantes and hearbes with the Lie made of the Fig-tree ashes, but it destroies the worms, to strew (as experience reporteth) the ashes alone on them.

There be others which rather wil to plant or sow that big Onion, named in Latine Scilla or Squilla here and there in beddes, or hang them in sundry places of the Garden.

Others also will, to fire riuer Creuisses with nailes in many places of the garden, which if they shall yet withstand or contend with all these remedies, then may the Gardener apply to exercise this deuice, in taking the Dre or Cow vrine, and the mother of oyle Oliue, which after the well mixing together, and heating ouer the fire, the same be stirred about vntill it be hot, and when through colde this mixture shall be sprinkled on the pot hearbs and trees, doth marueilously preuaile, as the skilfull Anatolius of experience reporteth.

The singular Pliny in his practises vttereth, that those harmefull wormes, touched with blodie rods, are likewise driuen away.

The worthy Palladius Rutilius reporteth, that if the owner or gardener burne great bundels of the Garlike blades without heades dried, thorow all the allies of the garden, and vnto these the dung of Backes added, that the saur of the smoke (by the helpe of the wind) may be driuen to many places, especially to those where they most abound and swarme, and the Gardener shall see so speedy a destruction, as is to be wondered at.

The worthy Pliny of great knowledge reporteth, that these may

be

be driuen from the pot hearbes, if the bitter Fitch seedes be mixed and sown together with them, or to the branches of trees, Creuisses hanged vp by the hornes in many places, doth like preuaile. These also are letted from increasing, yea they in heaps presently gathered are destroied, as the Greekes report of obseruation, if the Gardener by taking certaine Palmer or Canker wormes out of the Garden next ioyning, shal seeth them in water with Oil, and the same being thorow cold, shall sprinkle on the hearbes or trees, that the mixture may wet and soke thorow the nestes, euen vnto the yong ones, cleauing together, that they may taste thereof, will speedily dispatch them. But in this doing, the Gardner must be very wary, and haue an attentiue eie, that none of the mixture fall on his face or handes. Besides these, the owner or Gardener may vse this remedy certain, and easily prepared, if about the bigge armes of trees, or stemmes of the hearbes, he kindle and burne the stronger Lime and Brimstone together: or if the owner make a smoke with Mushromes growing vnder the Nut-tree, or burne the hoofes of Goats, or the gumme Galbanum, or else make a smoke with the Harts horne, the winde aiding, by blowing towards them.

There be also some which infuse the Vine ashes in water for three daies, with which they after sprinkle abundantly, both the hearbes and trees. Many besids make soft the seeds, steeped before their committing to the earth, in the Lie made of the Figge ashes.

The husbandmen and gardeners in our time haue found out this easie practise, being now common euery where, which is on this wise: that when these, after showres of raine are cropen into the warme Sun, or into places standing against the Sunne, may early in the morning shake either their fruits and leaues of the potte hearbes, or the boughes of the trees, for these are yet stiffe through the cold of the night, are procured of the same the lightlier and sooner to fall, nor able after to recouer vp againe, so that the Palmer wormes thus lying on the ground, are then in a readinesse to bee killed of the Gardener.

If the owner minde to destroy any other creeping things noious to hearbes and trees, (which Palladius and Rutilius name, both hearbe and Leeke wasters) then let him hearken to this inuention & deuice of the Greek Diophanes, who willeth to purchase ỳ maw of a

Wether

Wether sheepe new killed, and the same as yet ful of his excremental filth, which lightly couer with the earth in the same place, where these most hant in the garden; for after two daies, shall the Gardener find there that the mothes with long bodies, and other creeping things shall be gathered in diuers companies to the place right ouer it, which the owner shall either remoue and carry further, or dig and burie very deepe in the same place, that they may not after arise or come forth; which when the Gardener shall haue exercised the same but twise or thrise, hee shall vtterly extinguish, and quite destroy all the kinds of creeping things that anoy and spoile the garden plants. The husbandmen in Flanders arme the stockes, and compasse the bigger armes of their trees with wisps of straw handsomly made, & fastned or bound about, by which the Palmer wormes are constrained to creepe vp to the tops of the trees, and there staied, so that as it were by snares and engins laid, these in the end are either driuen away, or thus in their way begun, are speedily or some after procured to turne backe again. As vnto the remedies of the Snailes particulerly belongeth, these may the Gardner likewise chase from the kitchin hearbs, if he either sprinkle the new mother of the oyle Oliue, or soote of the chimney on the hearbes, as if he bestowed the bitter fitch in beds among them, which also auaileth against other noisome wormes and creeping things, as I afore vttered, that if the Gardener would possesse a green and delectable garden, let him then sprinkle diligently al the quarters, beds, and borders of the garden, with the mixture of water, and pouder of Fenny-Greeke tempered together, or set vpright in the middle of the Garden, the whole bare head without flesh of the vnchaff Asse, as I before wrote.

That worthy man Iulius Fronto, reporteth that all Kitchin hearbes may greatly be holpen, if among them the hearbe Rocket shall either be sowen or planted. But an intollerable iniury shall be wrought to the husbandly Gardener, if the Gose dung dissolued in brine, be sprinkled on the kitchin hearbes, as these worthy writers Democritus, Fronto, and Damageron in their chosen precepts of the Greeke husbandrie left noted to our age.

The

The skilful inuentions and helps against the Garden Moles, Ants, Gnats, Flies, and Frogges, euerting, harming and wasting, as well Kitchin hearbes, as trees and fruits.

Chap. 28.

FOrasmuch as the Moles in many places of Garden groundes, through their casting vp, and hollowing of the same, the sedes afore bestowed in beds they on such wise vncouer, and the plants in like maner turne vp, & vnbare of earth, to the great griefe and paine of the carefull Gardener, in daily reuuing and repairing of their former labours, for that cause hath he iust occasion to trauell and busie himselfe in searching out, and deuising by al skilful meanes, in what maner he may surest and best preuaile against this harmeful blinde beast. And that I may do a most gratefull matter to all Gardeners in the same, I will here vtter all such singular practises, as either the worthy Grekes or Latines haue vttered and noted to be available against them.

First, the skilful Paxanus hath left in a writing, that if ý Gardner shal make hollow a big Nut, or bore a hollow hole into some sound peece of wood being narrow, in filling the one or the other with Rosin, Pitch, Chaffe, and Brimstone, of each so much as shall suffice to the filling of the Nutte, or hollow hole in the wood, which thus prepared in a readinesse, stop euery where with diligence, al the goings forth, & breathing holes of the Mole, that by those the fuming smoke in no maner may issue out, yet so handle the matter, that one mouth and hole be only left open, and the same so large, that well the Nut or vessel kindled within, may be laid within the mouth of it, wherby it may take the wind of the one side, which may so send in the fauor both of the Rosin and Brimstone into the hollow tombe, or resting place of the Mole: by the same practise so workmanly handled, in filling the holes with the smoke, shall the owner or Gardener either driue quite away all the Moles in that ground, or find them in short time dead.

There be some that take the white Pease wort, or the rind of Cynocrambes beaten and farced, and with the Barly Meale and Egs finely tempered together, they make both Cakes & Pasties wrought with Milke and Milke, and those they lay within the Moles denne or hole. Albertus of worthy memorie reporteth, that if the owner

or

or Gardener closeth or diligently stoppeth the mouthes of the Mole-holes with the Garlik, Onion, or Leeke, shal either driue the Moles away, or kill them through the strong sauour, striking or breathing into them. Many there be, which to driue away these harmefull Moles, do bring vp yong Cats in their Garden-ground, and make tame Weasels, to the end that either of these, through the hunting after them, may so driue away this pestiferous annoyance, being taught to watch at their strait passages and mouthes of the holes comming forth. Others there be also wich diligently fill and stop vp their holes with the red Okar or Ruddell, and iuice of the wilde Cucumber, or sowe the seedes of Palma Christi, being a kinde of Satyrion in beddes, through which they will not after cast vp, nor tarrie thereabout. But some exercise this easie practise in taking a liue Mole, and burning the pouder of Brimstone about him, being in a deepe earthen pot, through which he is procured to crie, all others in the meane time as they report, are moued to resort thither. There are some besides, which lay silke snares at the mouth of their holes. To the simple husbandmen may this easie practise of no cost suffice, in setting downe into the earth a stiffe rod or greene branch of the Elder tree. The worthy Pliny which hath left to memory skilfull practises, reporteth, that the mother of the Oile Oliue alone, sprinckled on the heape of Pismires or Ants, killeth them. This Author also writeth, that the Pismires are wicked annoyers to trees, which the Gardener or husbandman (saith he) may force to forsake and leaue, if he bestrike the neather partes of the trees round about with the pouder of the Ruddell, and Liquid Pitch or Tarre mixed together, and hang also by the place the fish named of the worthy Rutilius after the Greeke writers of husbandry, Coracinum, and of Ruellius, Graculum, for on such wise handled, they wil resort and gather all into one place, whereby the husbandly Gardener may the spedier destroy them. Others there be, which with the pouder of the Lupines and oile Oliue tempered together, do bestrike the lower parts of trees and plants, for the letting of them in creeping vp. Many kil them, as I afore vttered, with the onely mother of the oile Oliue. The skilfull Neapolitane Rutilius reporteth, that if the great company of Pismires or Ants haue deep holes in the garden groũd, those may the owner chase away, or kill in the ground by stopping

the

the mouthes of the holes, with the heart of the Owle. If they creape abroad, then sift all the Allies where these runne with bright ashes, or else score the ground thicke together with the red Okar or white Chalke, or make long strikes with oyle on the earth. Further he writeth, that the husbandly Gardener may driue away Pismires, if on the mouthes of their holes he sprinckle the pouder of Organy and brimstone beaten together, or burne the empty shels of snailes, and with the ashes of the same, stoppe abundantly the mouthes of their dennes and holes. In which deuice, this Rutilius omitted the Storax, that of Paxanius the Greeke, out of whom hee borrowed this conclusion, is added. The wordes of Paxanius be on this wise: If the owner, saith he, shall burne certaine Ants or Emots in the middle of the Garden, the others of the sauour will creape away. To these, if about the mouthes of the Emots holes, the careful Gardener shall smeare the grosser Turpentine, the Emots or Ants will not after come forth, and these hee may expell or driue away from their proper resting place, or dwelling together, if the shellie couerings of Snailes, burned with Storax Calamita, and beaten to pouder, or the ashes sifted, hee shall after sprinckle on the heape of the Pismires. And the owner shall thoroughly destroy the Antes, if he sprinckle on them the iuice of Cyrenaicum, dissolued and well mixed in oile. This Author further reporteth, that the Emots will not creape on the plants nor trees, if the husbandly Gardener shall diligently sprinckle the bodies and stemmes of them, with the pouder of the bitter Lupines and mother of oyle, well mixed or boiled together. The selfe same matter shall the Gardener performe, if he compasse their holes with white & cleere woll or bombast, or that he mark on the groūd long strikes, or form round circles with white Chalke or red Okar, all those waies especially that these most often hant, or compasse their holes with Organy, as I afore vttered: for by ỳ like doing, as he affirmeth, the Emots after wil not only leaue the creeping vp on ỳ plants, but refuse also to ascend ouer the rings made with white Chalk about the bodies of trees. There be others which report, ỳ the Emots wil not creep to that hony pot set on the ground, about which the like circles with chalke or red Okar shalbe formed, yea though the same were left vncouered; yet is it known to many, that the Ants are marueilous deroūs of hony, & other swet things.

The skilfull Neapolitane Rutlius willeth, that the diligent Husbandman anoint or bestrike the stemmes of Plantes, and the bodies of trees, with the redde Okar, Butter, and liquid Pitch mixed well together. There be certaine of the Greeke writers of Husbandry, which will the thicke Iuie Garlands to be bound about the bodies of Trees and Vines, that by the same skilfull deuice, the Ants lodging vnder the shadow of these, as then pledges they slay and kill.

There be many which report, that the like may be wrought and done with the Buls gaule, mother of Oyle, and liquid Pitch, smeared about the bodies of trees. The singular Pliny reporteth, that the Sea mud or Ashes, stopped diligently into the holes, is a most sure remedy against the Emots, so that the places be not moist or watery. But with the surest practise and remedy of all, are the Pismires killed with the hearbe Heliotropium. Some suppose that ẏ water in which the crude Tile shalbe infused for a time, to be enemy to them. The Gardener may driue away Gnats, if he sprinkle on the beds & plants, the decoction of Organy in vineger, as that skilful Democritus in his husbandry hath noted. To these ẏ owner may sprinkle on the Plants, the infusion of Rue in water, or vse the decoction of the hearb Fleabane, or eis make a smoke either with brimstõe, or Cummine, or the dris Ore dung, or the gumme Bdellium. The learned Pliny vttereth, ẏ the Gardener may driue these away with ẏ smoke of Galbanum burned; & that worthy Neapolitane Rutilius, of experience affirmeth, that if the owner either sprinckle the new mother of oyle, or soot of the Chimney on the plants, it likewise driueth them away. That skilful Greeke Beritius hath left in writing, how that ẏ Gardener may driue the flies farre off with this fearefull deuice, if mixing the powders of the Helleboro or Neeswort, & Orpiment with milke, the same be sprinckled on the plants and place where the flies most haunt, it either hastily driueth them away, or kils thẽ sone after. The selfe same will the common Alum beaten with Organy, and tempered with milke preuaile against the flies: for what plants and herbes shalbe sprinkled with this mixture, wil not after be resorted vnto or touched of flies: The Bayberries with the blacke Neeswort beaten together, and infusing it in milke or water and Hony mixed, doth like profit; for this mixture sprinkled on the plants and

places

places where the flies most hant, doth after as it were by a poyson hastily kill the flies, or otherwise force them to flie spédily away, neuer to returne.

As touching remedies against the frogges, which in Summer nights are wont to be disquieters to the wearied Husbandmen, through their daily labour, by chirping and loud noise making, let the Husbandman exercise this helpe or secret, borrowed of the skilful Gréeke Africanus, which is on this wise: Set on some banke (saith he) a Lanthorne lighted, or other bright light before them, or on some trée (fast by) so hang a light, that by the brightnesse of the same light, it may so shine vpon them, as if it were the sunne, which handled on this wise, will after cause them to leaue their chirping and loud noise making: a practise tried by many of latter yeares.

The skilfull Gréeke Beritius reporteth, that if the Husbandman burie in some bancke fast by, the gaule of a Goate, the Frogges will not afterward gather to that place.

The rare practises and secrets, both of the ancient and later writers of Husbandry against Serpents of the Garden, and any others, venoming as well men as the Kitchin hearbs, trees, and fruits. Chap. 29.

FLorentius (a singular and diligent interpreter of the matters of the field) wrote, that serpents in the garden ground or els where, wil not lodge or abide, if the owner sow or plant in borders about, or in apt corners of the garden, either the wormewood, Mugwort, or Southernwood, which if these shal some where happen to hant, then may the Gardener (as he writeth) driue them incontinent forth of the ground, if he make a smoke either with the Lillie rootes, Harts horne, or Goats hoofes.

The skilfull Rutilius vttereth, that all serpents be forced out of the ground by euery sowre sauour, and stinking smoke, flying abroad with the winde.

The learned Democritus affirmeth, that the serpents assuredly do die, if the Gardener straw or throw Oken leaues on them, or if any spitteth fasting into their mouth gaping or wide open.

The well practised Apuleius writeth, that these stricken but once with

with a tough réd or willow rodde, are mightily astonied, but giuing them many stroks do recouer and wax strong again. Tarentinus (a skilfull writer of the Greéke husbandrie) denieth that any can be harmed of a Serpent, if the person afore be anointed with the iuice of a Radish or that he hath eaten of the Radish, which matter Athenæus and Galen, (with many other worthy Authors) ascribe to the Orenge or Lemon, and they confirme the same with a pleasant historie.

The former Florentius vttereth another singular practise against serpents of the garden, to be wrought after this maner: Lay (saith he) the fat of the Hart in ỳ garden earth, or els buris the Centory rote, or the Geate stone, or els the Eagle, or Kytes dung, & the serpents will refuse the ground, or at least not come néere the place, and euery venemous worme wil be driuen away, if the Gardner by taking Nigella, Pellitory, Galbanum, of the Harts horne, Hyssope, Brimstone, Peucedanum, and the Goats hoofs, shal diligently bring these to pouder, and infusing the whole for a time in the strongest vineger, shal after make little bals of the mixture, with which thorow dried cause a sauour and a smoke. For through the sauour of these matters sparsed in the aire, all créeping vermine will either hastily (for the great feare) forsake the ground, or die there incontinent. The same Author Florentius reporteth, that the serpents may like be gathered on a heape into an olde déepe poudering tubbe, as fish in a wele or bow net, if the same be déep set about that place of the gardē or field where these most lurke & haunt, for after the spéedy resorting of these to the brinke of it they fall willingly in, not able after to recouer thēselues out. Pliny writing of the withie named Siler, reporteth this, that the serpents refuse both the trée and fruite, for which cause, the husbandmen made them staues of the wood to cary about with them. But this by a most certaine experience or trial, proued & confirmed, that by making a smoke with old shoes burned, the serpents incontinent spéed away, nor these onely flie out of the garden ground, field, or house, but such as are entred into men, by dead sléep in the summer, in sléeping open mouthed, or with open mouth, in the field, do like come forth with the said smoke. Which matter Marcus Gatinaria, a famos physition, confirmeth, who reporteth, ỳ the like happened to a certaine man in his time, to whom after infinit medi-

cine/

cines & most effectuous remedies were ministred, and none of them preuailed, at the last this imployed, fell out most luckily, and wonderfull of all others, in burning the leathers of old shoes, and receiuing both smoke and sauour of a tunnel into the body. For as soone as this hideous beast (which was a mighty adder) felt the sauour of this smoke, he was seene to the standers about to come out at the fundament, to the mighty astonishment and wonder of al the beholders. And this worthy secret easie to be prepared, I thought here good to place, that the same, a like case hapning, might be profitable to euery person. But in this place is not to be omitted, that serpents greatly hate the fire, not for the same cause, that this dulleth their sight, but because the nature of fire is to resist poyson. These also hate the strong sauor far flying, which the Garlik & red Onions procure. They loue the Sauintrée, the Iuy, and Fenel, as Todes do ỳ Sage, and Snakes the hearbe Rocket: but they are mightily displeased & forest hate the Ashtrée, insomuch that the serpẽts neither to the morning nor longest euening shadowes of it, wil draw neare, but rather shun the same, & flie far off. As a like matter Pliny reporteth, was on a time proued, by inclosing a serpent, within the large circle made of greene Ashtrée leaues in the middle of which a quick fire made, to the terrour of the serpent, for that end to proue whether she had rather run ouer the circle then draw neare to the fire, which neuertheless (the fire kindling more and more) at the last rather crept to the fire, where she perished, then by any means would draw neare to the circle of the Ashtrée leaues. Yet here learne, the marueilous benignitie of nature, which permitteth not the serpents to come forth of the earth, before the Ashtrée buddeth forth, nor to hide them againe, before the leaues fall off. The singular Poet Virgil saith, that the smoke made of Rosen or Galbanum, doth hastily chase and driue the serpents away.

These hitherto vttered, for the driuing away & killing of serpents. But here was almost forgotten, that the leaues of Ferne, doe chase away the serpent: for which cause many skilful thinke it profitable, either to sow or straw the Ferne in such places where the serpents hant. The Neapolitane Rutilius addeth, that if the leaues of the same be turned, they (with the sauour onely) will flie or creepe hastily away, yea and force them to change their lodgings,

far from the Garden ground or field.

Here a doubt may be made, whether the same be to purpose here to recite, that the worthy Albertus reporteth of the round Aristolochia with the field Frog, and a certaine proportion of writing Inke diligently laboured, and mixed with these, to make the serpents immediatly to quaile as dead, if any of the mixture be written withall, and throwne before them.

But I thinke it high time to come vnto the remedies, which are both readie and easie to be prepared.

If that any shalbe smitten of a Serpent, vnlesse he haue a Feuer, and drinketh a certaine quantity of the iuice of Ash leaues, with pleasant white wine, and applieth also of the fresh leaues to the place bitten, shall in short time see a worthy secret, greatly to be marueiled at, and by happie successe proued of many.

Here briefly to conclude, if the Gardner bestoweth the fresh elder flowres where the Serpents daily haunt, they will hastily depart the place, yea these by report (artly bestowed in the garden ground) doe in short time destroy the Mothes, the Tanker wormes and Palmers breeding in trees.

The other helps and remedies necessary to bee vttered in this Chapter, shall in apt places be declared in the second part, where we purpose to intreat particularly of most hearbes growing in the garden.

The laudable deuices and cunning helps against the Scorpions, Todes, Garden-mise, Weasels, and all other greater beasts, wasting and corrupting as well the Kitchin hearbes as fruits.

Chap. 30.

PLiny reporteth, that if slippes of the greene Heliotropium, be set round about the place where the Scorpions frequent, that they will not after creepe thence. But if the owner either lay or straw vpon the Scorpions, the whole hearb, they incontinent (as he affirmeth) die.

That skilful writer Diophanes (in his Greeke commentaries of husbandry) vttereth, and the like many other, that the fresh Radish, either laid or strewed on the Scorpions, killeth them incontinent.

To these, if any anoinneth the hands circumspectly with the iuice of the Radish, he may after handle Scorpions or any other venemous thing without danger.

This Authour further addeth, that a smoke made with Saudaracha and butter, or the fat of a Goat, will driue away both them and other venemous things, and by burning one Scorpion al the others flie forth of the ground.

If any boileth the Scorpion that stung him, or any other in oile, and anoinneth the sore place with the same, it shall greatly auaile.

The like commeth to passe, if he may kil and bruise the same on the stinging; but perilous wil the same stinging be, if he refraine not the eating of Basil all that day of the stinging. Florentius reporteth, that the iuice of the Figge tree leaues dropped on the stinging mightily auaileth.

The learned Pliny affirmeth, that the ashes of the Scorpion drunke in Wine (if the fit of the Feuer be not vpon the person) to bee a singular remedie, as the pouder of Wormes burned, to persons hauing Wormes, or to beasts the like ministred, and any bitten of a mad Dog, if the haires of the same be burned and drunke, doe greatly auaile.

The Todes (as the Greeke and Latine professors of husbandrie write) may be driuen forth of the Garden ground, with those remedies that the Serpents: for which cause, the remedies and helps against them to repeat, I thinke here superfluous.

The Mice (as the learned Apuleius writeth) will in no manner harme or wast those seeds committed to the earth, which before the sowing are steeped a time in the gaule of an Ore.

They will be killed in the ground, if the Gardener shall stoppe their commings forth with the fresh leaues of Rhodophanes.

There be (of the Greeke writers of husbandry) which wil, that like portions of the wilde Cucumber or Henbane, or ye bitter Almonds and blacke Nolewort be orderly bruised, and tempered with Meale, the same after wrought into bals with Dyle, to be laid at the holes of the fielde and house Mice. Pliny writeth, that the seedes (before the bestowing in the earth) infused either in the gaule of a Weasel, or the ashes of him committed to the earth with the seedes, doth like

defend them from being harmed of Mice, yet the plants springing out of these are greatly misliked, for that they then giue the sauor of such a rancke beast, so that the sedes are better commended to bee steeped afore in the gaule of an Oxe.

The skilfull Africanus vttereth, that the Gardener may either kil or driue away Weasels, if he mixe salt Armoniack with wheat paste, and lay of the same in such place where these most hant. Others there be, which wil the careful Gardener to get one aliue, and cutting off both taile and testicles, to let him passe again, for by that meanes others (perceiuing the like sight) wil depart the place, the easie experience of which matter, wil after bring a credit to thee in the same. For the driuing away of the greater beasts, conceiue these remedies following, that if the Gardener shal water the seeds bestowed with the old vrine, in which the ordure of a Dogge shalbe infused for a time, they shall after be defended in the growing vp, from the spoile of great beasts.

The selfe same doth the worthy Democritus affirme to come to passe (as I afore vttered) if that the owner take to the number of ten Riuer or Sea Creuisses, and in putting them into an earthen potte full of water, he set the same in the sun for ten daies, to be wel heated and vaporated through the hot beames, which thus handled, let him sprinckle on the beds and plants, that he would haue defended from the aire and great beasts: yet may he not water the yonger plants, but euery third day, vntil these be growen vp stronger. The skilfull Affricanus and other worthy writers of husbandrie report, that if either the Pionie or hearbe Personata be buried, or otherwise sowen about banckes or borders in the Garden or field, are after (as by a secret protection) preserued, that neither the great nor smaller beasts wil after spoile the plants there growing. But if the husbandman would haue his trees preserued from being fore eaten and wasted of the greater beasts, then let him exercise (after the mind of Pliny) this easie practise, in casting or sprinckling on the leaues, the water in which Oxe dung hath beene dissolued, so that he be sure those times that raine wil fall within a day after, to the cleane purging again of the branches and leaues of that sauour, a matter in very deede wittily deuised for the purpose.

The

The skilfull practises and remedies against haile, lightnings, and tempests, beating downe and spoiling the Kitchin hearbes, trees, and fruites.

Chap. 51.

FOr the haile, which for the more part destroieth both the labours of the Oxen and men, conceiue these few remedies following: That if the husbandman would auoid the same danger at hand or readie to fall, then let him draw about the ground (whether it bee Field, Orchard, or Gardē) the skin of a Seale, or Crocodil, or Hiena, and hang it after at the entry or comming in of the place, as the worthy Philostratus, in his Greeke commentaries of husbandrie, hath noted. Others there be, which seeing the haile at hand, by holding vp a mightie glasse, doe so take the image of a darke cloude, directly ouer the place, to the end the obiect by the same remedie (as Rutilius reporteth) may offend, whereby as doubled it may giue place to the other, and on such wise be speedily auerted and moued away.

There were some (as Philostatus writeth) which with the right hand drawing the Marish Tortoise on her backe, laboured so about the Garden ground or field, and returned to the place where they beganne, they so laid her vpright in the furrow made with her backe, and shorde cloddes of either side, that she might not fall, neither to one nor other side, but abide steddy vpright, to the end she might so behold the bigge and thicke cloudes, directly ouer the place. And the same at such times they exercised in the first houre of the day or night. Certaine others (seeming to be of greater skill) when the haile approched, did spread ouer euery space in the Garden or field, white vine, or fastened in some place right against the Tempest imminent a liue Owle, with the wings spread abroad, which two remedies also much auaile against the lightnings and haile, as saith the singular writer of husbandrie Iunius Columella, in his little treatise of the Garden.

To vtter here the popular helpe against thunder, lightnings, and the dangerous haile, when the tempest approcheth through the cloud arising, as by the loude noise of Gunnes shotte here and there, with a loude sound of Bels, & such like noises which may happen:

I thinke the same not necessary nor properly auailable to the benefit of the Garden.

The famous learned man Archibius, which wrote vnto Antiochus king of Syria, affirmeth, that tempests shall not be harmeful to plants or fruits, if the speckled Tode inclosed in a new earthen pot, be buried in the middle of the gardē or field. Others there are, which hang the feathers of the Eagle or Seales skin, in the middle of the Garden, or at the foure corners of the same.

For these three, as by a certaine secret property (and for truth) by a marueilous repugnancy do resist the lightnings, and that of these (the aboue said) in no maner to be harmed or blasted, is to memorie of the posterity committed, and by the experiences or trials of many skilful men confirmed. Wherfore Tiberius Cæsar (as reporteth Suetonius) was wont to weare a Garland of Bayes, and to couer his proper tent all ouer with Seale skinnes, at such times as thunder and lightning hapned, supposing himselfe to be defended from these, which he marueilously feared. Plinie reporteth that Bulbus (not for the smalnesse onely of his body) escapeth the force of lightning, but through a secret and naturall repugnance doeth this auaile against the stroke of lightning.

The laudable deuices and helps against frost, blasting of trees, mists, and rust, which be enemies as well to Garden hearbes as fruits.

Chap. 32.

TO most men it is manifest, that there are two kinds of celestial iniuries, the one that men name tempests, in which the haile, storme, and such like are meant.

These (when any happen) are named a mightier violence and working of heauen moued forward, as Pliny reporteth, by the fearefull starres, which be Virgiliæ, Hyades, Canicula, Arcturus, Fidicula, Hœdi, Orion, Aquila, and sundry others, carefully obserued of the writers of Husbandry and Physicke, and of men most diligently noted.

The other kind is wont to happen, the aire being calme and quiet, and in faire nights, no feeling to be discerned, but when the same is come to passe and wrought, which bewailed calamity is one while

wont

wont to be named rustie, an other whiles burning, and an other whiles blasting, that to all crescent things is a sterilitie, and at one word a destruction, so that all is caused by heauen, and wont especially to happen in the spring time. The blasting and burning of the blossoms of Apple-trees, the flowres of Vines and Corne, are caused through the iniurie of frosts happening in the night, and not as many report, to be wrought through the sunnes sharpe heate, burning hastily vp the dew, or the moisture entring in, and corrupting the heads of corne. The same also wasting the tender buddes, plants, and branches is commonly named burning, for that it burneth and consumeth in places so blacke as any cole. The blasting besides of the tender blossomes of trées and vines, is named sideration, for that this especially is caused through the blast and striking of some constellation. To these we adde the rust, as a mightie enemie to fruits. The worthy Pliny reporteth, that the rust and burning, be caused only of cold, which happeneth in the night time, and before the Sunne rising, so that the Sunne is not worker of these. And the time when the like succeedeth, is knowne to be, after the mind of sundrie skilfull writers of husbandrie, at the change or ful Moone, some starres then of the first bignesse aiding in the rising or setting. The suspected times, and daies of the rust for iudging of the good and euil successe of fruits is knowen in Aprill, according to the falling out of S. George and S. Markes day, and the ninth day of May, for the calmenesse and clearenesse of the aire. This celestiall sterility doth neither happen nor cannot euery yeare, for the proper courses of the starres, both in the descending and ascending in heauen, with the radiations or aspect one to another. In the which working, who cannot but wonder, and for the same honor and reuerence the marueilous benignitie and goodnesse of almightie God towards mankind? Yet of the constellations afore mentioned, & the others which are infinite in number, the diligent antiquity onely feared three of these greatly, and obserued them for that cause, as the diligent Pliny noted and to memory committed. First the cōstellation Virgiliæ for the fruits, the constellation Aquila for the corne, & the constellation Canicula for the gathering of fruits, so that these for the same cause were named the Iudiciall starres, to foreknow the seasons by. In whose daies of the first appearance, if the aire cleare and calme sent

down a kindly and fæding iuice to the earth, then was it a sure note to them, that such things sowen, would grow and increase prosperously. Contrariwise, if the Mone at those times sprinckled a dewie cold on the plants and crescent things, then as a bitternesse mixed contrary to the swéet nourishing and iuice, the same so slew and killed the tender things, shot forth appearing aboue the earth. But to come to the matter, there is neither frost, haile, storme, nor tempest, so harmefull to certaine fields or Garden grounds, through which they at any time cause the sterilitie and penurie of victuals, as the rust and burning heate doe, for these falling and working in open countries, procure for the more part through their harmes a publike calamity and present dearth, to the auoiding of which, shall herebe vttered these skilfull remedies, inuented of the ancient writers of husbandry. If the carefull Gardener would withstand the force of frost and rust approching, then let him burne store of chaffe, if such plenty be there or neare at hand, but for lacke of the same, may he vse the drie wéeds plucked vp out of the Garden or field, and the bigge Thistles, or other wast fruits in many places of the same, especially toward that way which the winde then bloweth, for on such wise handled, (Diophanes in his precepts of husbandrie writeth) that the euil nigh or at hand is auerted. The selfe same practise may be vsed against thicke and darke mistes. Beritius in his Gréke precepts of husbandrie giueth warning, that the husbandman or Gardener diligently marke, whether the same be gathered in the aire, which readie to fall, let him then burne incontinent the left horne of the Dre, with either Cow or Dre dung, making with them a mighty smoke round about the garden ground or field, but the smoke especially directed by the wind, in fléeing against it. The worthy Apuleius wrote, that the smoke of thrée riuer Crenisses, burned with the Dre or Goats dung, or with chaffe to be a most sure helpe and remedy against the like, that if the same be already fallen, I meane the rust, the Gardener may recouer the harme after this maner, as the skilfull Beritius reporteth, in taking the rotes or leaues of the wild Cucumber or Colocynthis, which after the bruising & infusing in water for a night, sprinkle & wet the places wel taken with the rust before the sun rising. The like may the Gardener worke & do, with the Fig or Oke trée ashes, sprinckled in the place endamaged with rust.

All

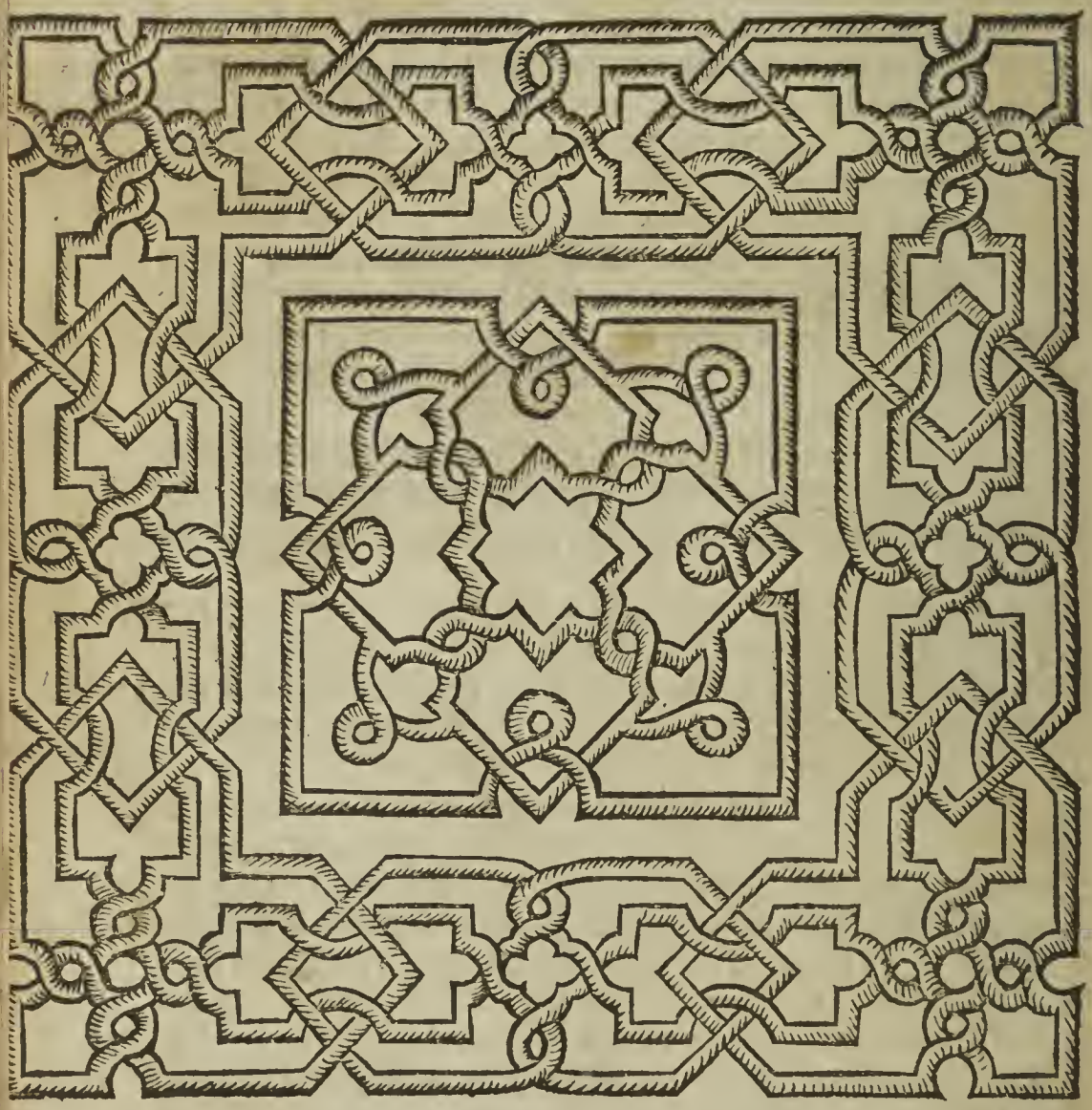
Al sæds of the Garden or field are defended, as reporteth Anatolius, from al iniuries and monsters, if the husbandman or Gardener before the committing of sædes to the earth, doth infuse them for a time in the iuice of the wilde Cucumber.

If the gardener or husbandman, as Apuleius witnesseth, shal stick and plant round about the Garden ground or field, many slippes, stockes, and branches of the Bay-trée, these wil after auaile against the rust, for into them all the harme of the rust passeth and entreth, as the like many times hath bæne obserued of the skilful, which very often is wont to happen in the dewie countrie, vallies, and in places where bigge winde of a sudden doeth many times blowe. Thus much for the rust being enemy to fruits. Against the burning heate which peculiarly is wont to happen to vines, the learned Pliny willeth the husbandmen to burne thrée liue Creuisses, or to hang them aliue on the trée or vine.

The Grékes (as certaine Latin writers haue noted) did sowe Beanes as wel within as without the garden ground or field, to auoid by that meanes the frost falling, or at least to auaile against the frost.

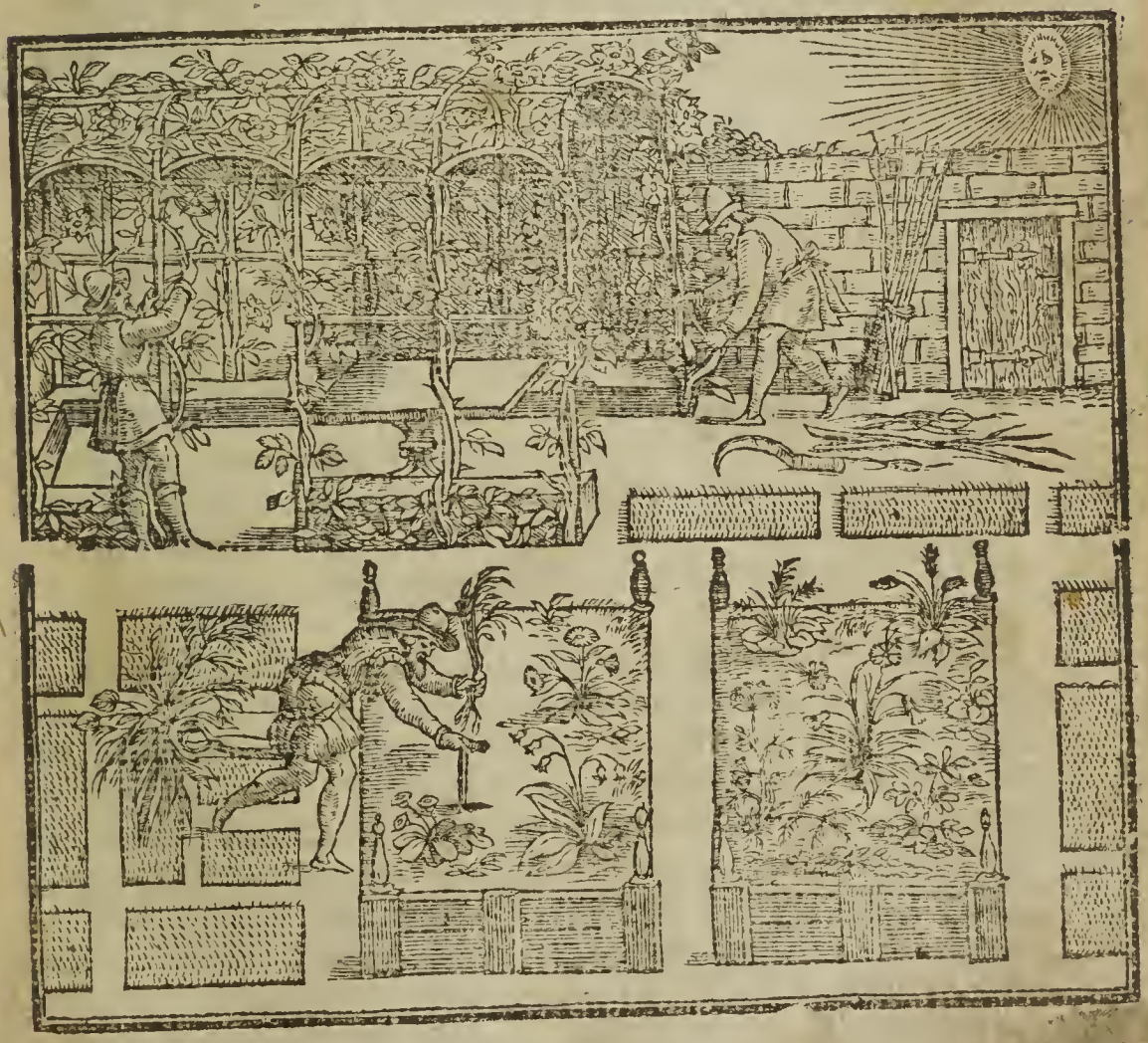
These instructions for the workmanly handling and ordering of a garden plot, shal at this present suffice, and like the remedies, against the harmes and iniuries that commonly annoy, whereby all sædes and plants bestowed in the same, may with gladsome cheare to the Gardener prosper and increase, which the gentle Reader shall conceiue to be borrowed out of the works both of the old and new writers of husbandry, as well Grékes as Latines, that by great study and painful labor searched & obserued the most of these, or els not attempted of any part, to be published and made common to al men. Besides these you shal well conceiue, that the better part were confirmed in our time, by the experience of sundry skilfull men in the matters of husbandrie, and by earnest sute purchased, which to bée briefe, being thankfully accepted, the Authour hath his due reward, and so an end of this first part of the Gardeners Labyrinth. Vale.

A proper knot to be caſt in the quarter of a Garden, or otherwiſe; as there is ſufficient roome.



THE SECOND PART OF THE GARDENERS LABYRINTH,

VTTERING SVCH SKILFVLL EXPERIence, and worthie ſecrets, about the particular ſowing and re*mouing of the moſt Kitchin Hearbes, with the wittie ordering* of other dainty Hearbs, delectable Flowres, pleaſant Fruits, and fine Rootes, as the like hath not heretofore been vttered of any. Beſides, the Phyſick benefits of each Hearb annexed, with the commoditie of waters diſtilled out of them, right neceſſary to be knowne.



Here in my first part I haue fully satisfied (as I trust) the expectation of the husbandly Gardener and owner in all such matters, which may appeare needfull or requisite to be learned and knowen, for the better aide, in possessing of a commodious and delectable Garden: in like maner I purpose to aide the careful husbandman or Gardener, after the possibility of my skil in this second part, with such skilfull helps & secrets, as are required about the artly sowing, and particular bestowing as wel of the kitchin, as other dainty hearbes, pleasant fruits, delectable flowres, and fine rootes, which at large I purpose to vtter in the same, and likewise the physick benefits to each hearbe I adde, with other matters profitable, to the end the owner or Gardener may with better good will be moued to bestow an earnest care and diligence about the often remouing, as well of daintie flowres as hearbes, with the clipping, pressing downe, breaking away, and cutting away the ends of rootes, that these may grow the thicker and bigger both in hearbe and rote. All which instructions and rare secrets, are part borrowed out of the worthie workes and treasures of the Greeke and latin professors of husbandrie, and part purchased by friendship and earnest sute, of the skilfull obseruers and wittie searchers in our time of laudable secrets in Garden matters, seruing as well for the vse and singular comfort of mans life, as to a proper gaine and delight of the mind.

The like of which already vttered, may the owner both see and know by that plant, which in Gardens euerie where, as well those in the Countrey as in the Citie, is placed none so common, none more plentifull, nor oftener vsed among kitchin hearbes, then this familiar pot-hearbe, named the Colewort, which by a diligence of the husbandly Gardener, may well serue in the coldest Winter, in the stead of other pot-hearbs, so that this hearbe by good reason, knowen to be not onely profitable for the pot, but to the vses of physicke right necessary, hath moued me the rather to beginne first with the Colewort, in vttering what care and diligence is required about the sowing, often remoouing, clipping and

dressing of the same, being before bestowed in beds workemanly prepared.

What helps and secrets are to be learned in the sowing and often remouing of the Colewort. Chap. I.

THe worthy Marcus Cato in his husbandry, preferred the Colewort before all other pot-herbs, & the learned Pliny in like maner ascribed a principality to ỳ same of al Garden hearbs, for which cause, I purpose here to intreat first of this hearbe, that many of the Latines also for the mightie stemme & armes like branches named the Colewort. Such is the nature of this plant, that the same refuseth no condition of aire, for which cause it may be committed to the earth in any time of the yeare. This plant desireth a fat earth, and well turned in with dung, but the clayie, grauelly, or sandie this refuseth, except a flood of raine water shall now and then helpe.

The Colewort prospereth the better, being placed toward the South, but this standing open to the North, not so well encreaseth, although both in tast and strength it ouercommeth in the same place, for through the cold aire and frosts, the hearb is caused the tenderer and pleasanter.

The Colewort ioyeth on a hill side, or the ground steeping downe, it delighteth in dung, and increaseth by the often weeding, as the worthie Rutilius hath noted: when fire leaues shall be sprung vp, or but fiue, the same then must be remoued, but in such manner handled, that the rote afore the setting againe, be anointed with soft Cow dung, which ought so to be ordered in a warm day, if it be winter, but if in Summer time, then at such time as the Sunne shall be going downe in the west.

The most ancient of the Greekes diuided the Colwort into three kinds only, as the crisped, which they named Selinoidea, for ỳ similitude of the leaues of Parcly, the same of thē Lean, for ỳ broad leaues issuing or growing forth of the stemme, for which cause, some named it Cauloden. And the same which properly is named Crambe, growing vp with thinner leaues, both single and very thicke. The Colewort becommeth the bigger, through the earth daily turned

light

light about the bodie. And particularly to write, the common Coleworts, which they name the long or greene, ought to be sowne from the midle of August, or from the beginning of September, that these may be growne vp into bigge leaues to serue in Winter and in the Lent time. The husbandly Gardener or owner may plant yong Coleworts in October, and set them againe in December, to possesse the leaues in the sharpe Winter, and the seedes in June and Julie, and to make them also grow as bigge touft, as in the other seasons of the yeare, and as tender or rather tenderer, although not so delectable: and haue good regard, that the seedes be not too cold, for these then bring forth plants out of kind, of which the report goeth, that seeds sowne become Rapes, or Nauewes. Such seeds as you would to endure for fire yeares, ought to be carefully preserued. Marcus Varro willeth the Colewort to be sowne in saltie places, and when thee leaues be come vp, to sift Niter or salt earth on them, so fine as the frost falling, for on such wise handled, these are caused the tenderer & delectabler, the vertue notwithstanding preserued, which like practise is confirmed in the Greeke husbandrie of Paxamus. There be some which vse ashes in stead of Niter, or for the same cause, that either may kill and destroy the Canker wormes, which greatly offend and wast the Coleworts in some gardens.

The singular Columella reporteth, that the Colewort doth come sooner soft and tender in seething, and doth keepe the greene colour without Niter, if the rote lapped with thee small blades of the sea weede, be againe set in the earth.

The worthie Pliny willeth the Keite or sea weede, to be put vnder the stalke, in setting againe, and vnto the same end, the delicate and tender setting vsed, so that the Colewort before the seething, be steeped a time in oyle and salt, but in the seething, put in a little salt, for the Nitrous and saltie substance consisting in it.

The Colewort may be caused both bigge and pleasant, if thrust into a hole, you set vnto the leaues in earth, that no part of the stems be left bare, for doubt of perishing: and as the same groweth vp in heigth, and the earth shrinking from it, so continually raise the earth high vp to the body, and cut away the outward leaues, so that no more then the toppe of the leaues may appeare aboue the earth. The Colewort often weeded about, and workemanly dunged wayeth

eth the stronger, & causeth the Colewort to be of a greater increase, and tender of leafe. All the yeare thorow may the Colewort be cut, seeing all the yeare (as afore said) the same may be sowne, yet grown to seed, it ought not to be cut. The tender toppes of the yong Colewort, is greatly commended for Sallets, so that somewhat hot, both oile and salt be bestowed vpon. When raine after a drought in summer time falleth, the owner may renue those Coleworts decaying, by plucking away from them the decayed leaues, which either shall be drie or eaten in many places thorow. The Cabedge, Cole, or white Cabedge, may be sown thick in beds, but after certain leaues come vp, remoued into well dressed beddes, halfe a yard asunder, growen especially to a bigge stemme or stock, and these will ioy vnder a cold aire, in that they are caused the tenderer and delectabler through sharpe frosts, and the heads couered with straw, are caused both rounder and whiter.

The wrinckled, crisped, and Romane Cabedges, which of nature are more tender and delicate, ought to be sowne in the moneth of March, and remoued at certaine times of the yeare, being alwaies watered when néede requireth.

When the Gardener or owner at any time séeth that the leaues of the Colewort either withereth or wareth yellow, the same then is a note of the default of water, which like happening, causeth the leaues to be yellow and full of holes, or lithie and feeble, or els drie, through which of necessity they must feeble and die.

If the husbandman or owner would haue Coleworts tender and pleasant (as afore vttered) let him breake off in the setting again the outward leaues, for the inward leaues in the growing, wil after become better of taste, and pleasanter in sauour, then the outward leaues were.

The redde Coleworts naturally grow through the abundance of hot dung, or through the watering or well moistening of them with the Lées of wine, or els by the planting of them in hot places, where the sunne daily shineth a long time together.

Neuer take the toppes of the Romane, crisped, nor the other for your turne and vse, but alwaies the thicke leaues downward, from the head or tops.

Al the sorts or kinds of Coleworts may be planted at al seasons,

so

so that the times and earth be neither too cold, nor too hot. When you mind to set them again in holes made with a Dibble, cut away the ends of the roots, lest in the setting into the earth, they fold or bend to the ground, which harms them greatly, and only those of a bigge growth are to be set again, which although they slowly take root, yet are they caused the stronger. And the roots of these, neither desire any soft dung, nor riuer mud to be anointed or laid about them, or to be set in a soft earth, in that they ioy and prosper in a ground meanly drie, although the outward leaues wither, vntil ỳ time a sweet raine falling, recouer their strength. Some water the yonger Coleworts with salt water to cause them grow tender, &c. as afore vttered.

Pliny (that incomparable searcher of the matter of nature) reporteth, that pots or other vessels, in which by water daily seething, a crust or parget, so fast cleaueth or is baked to the sides within, that the same with no scouring can be gotten off yet by seething the Colewort in this pot, the crust immediatly and with ease falleth off.

Athenæus writeth, that the Colewort ought not in any case to be planted or sowne neare to the Vine, nor the Vine in like maner nigh to it, for such is the great enmitie betweene these two plants (as Theophrastus witnesseth) that being both in one plot together, these so hinder one another, that the vine in branches growing further, rather turneth or goeth backe againe from the Colewort, then stretching toward it, and it yeeldeth lesse fruit thereth rough. And the same to be true (Pliny affirmeth) the wine in the Butte or Hoggeshead to be corrupted, both in the sauour and tast, through the Colewort put into it; but the wine againe to be restored, through the Beete steeped in it. By which argument or prowe, Androcides singular in knowledge (as the like Pliny writeth) reported, that the Coleworte greatly auaileth against drunkennesse. Of which it is now a common exercise among the Egyptians, that greatly loue wine, to boile the Colewort with their meats, that in eating of the like prepared, they may so auoid the annoiance of wine after drunke. Paxamus (a Greeke writer of husbandrie) reporteth, that if any poure a little quantity of wine by drops, into the liquor of the Colewort boiling, the same after seetheth no more, but quailed in strength, is corrupted & changed in liquor. By a like a man may cõtrary gather, ỳ the person which would drinke plenty of

wine

wine, without being ouercome with the same, ought to eate afore a quantity of the raw Colewort with meat. But for this matter, heare the sentence of the singular man (M. Cato) who willeth the person purposed to drinke much wine at a feast, and to dine or suppe frely, to eat afore supper, as great a quantitie of the raw Colewort as he will with good vineger, and being also set downe to supper, to eate fiue leaues raw, these then will cause him to be as one that had neither eaten nor drunke, whereby he may drinke as much as he will, through the marueilous repugnancie of the hearbe with wine, as afore vttered, and like noted by Agrius, in the worthie worke of M. Varro.

The Colewort in like maner, ought not to be planted nigh to the Organie, Rue, nor Sowes bread, for the drying qualitie consisting in them, so that these either sowen or planted nigh to the Colewort, and other very moist hearbs, do generally hinder, and cause them to wither. A like matter worketh the Lauender, set in beddes neare to moist hearbs, through the heat consisting in it, as the Radish doth, which through the proper tartnesse or sharpnes being in it, burneth any moist and tender plant growing nigh to the same.

This also is worthy memorie which Athenæus reporteth, that in Athens (in time past) the Colewort was wont to be prepared with meat for women with childe, in stead of a certaine defensatiue against annoiances.

There is also made of the Ashes of Colewort, infused in water, a salt, in that the same possesseth a Nitrous substance (as afore vttered) through whose benefit, if this be meanly boiled, and taken in broth (as we shall hereafter write) doth loose the belly.

The Physicke helps and worthie secrets of the Coleworte.

THe Colewort in the vse of physick hath so many properties, that peculiar Pamphiletes the ancient, as Pythagoras, M. Cato, Chrysippus, Dieuches, & sundry others, wrote of the vertues of the same. But of the monuments of these men none are extant, sauing ỳ same which M. Cato & Pliny haue left to memory written. Therfore a few vertues of this hearb (& of the worthiest) shal after be vttered.

First

First M.Cato writeth, that this hearbe coleth and moistneth in the second degree; and for the hardnes of making water, which commeth forth by droppes or very straightly, he willeth to prepare the hearbe after this manner: in taking the Colewort leaues cleane picked, & after the bestowing of them in scalding water, to let them sethe a while, which as yet halfe raw, poure the liquor almost from them: to those then adde a reasonable quantitie, both of Dyle and Salt, but of Cummine a little, which done, let the whole seeth a while, then taking it from the fire, and cooled, to sup a messe or draught of the broth, and the Colewort leaues to eat, as sone as they be thus sodden tenderer, which in like maner daily vse, vnto the time the patient be eased.

For all maner of vlcers and swellings, vse and apply the Colewort workmanly bruised, especially the smal stalks & tender leaues of the same, that the Greeks name Crambe, and with vs, ẏ common Colewort, which like ordered, purgeth the canker sores, and in short time healeth them, the like of which, no other medicine properly can do. But before the patient lay them on, he must diligētly with much warme water, supple and wash the sores, after apply or lay on twice a day the said Crambe or common Colewort bruised: with which remedie also, both lose ioints and bruises, yea canker sores and vlcers in the pappes of women, may marueilously be cured.

If the vlcer be so tender, that it cannot suffer the sharp working of the Colewort, then mixing the Barly meale with it, apply on such wise: and the report goeth, that there is one simple, which like preuaileth against the ioynt sicknes or ache of ioynts, as the raw Colewort diligētly applied doth, if the same finely shred, be eat with Rue and ẏ Coriander, or els with a corne or two of salt and barly meale, artly mixed with Oximel, the same be nointed morning & euening.

That if a person hardly beateth or but little bruise (saith M.Cato) the Colewort with wine, which after the hard wringing forth, and warmed in a saucer, drop gently into the eare, and in short time the patient shall feele the benefit of the same. These hitherto M.Cato, which accustomed to praue the crisped Colewort especially, next the thin with great leaues and big stalke.

Leaving further to write of the vertues, which Cato in his husbandrie, and the singular Pliny vtter, I here mind to declare certain

worthy practises of the Greeks, as touching the Colewort. and first they report, that the decoction of the Colewort drunk with pleasant wine, to procure the monthly course in women, to these the iuice of the same mixed diligently with fine hony to cure the eies, if the same wittily be dropped into the corners of them.

That if any hath eaten venemous Mushromes, he shall marueilously be holpen by drinking the iuice of the Colewort.

Nor they omit that the same doth yeeld a mighty nourishment to the body, in such manner, that children eating of the Colewort for a time do the speedier go alone.

The iuice (as they report) drunke with white wine for xl. daies together, cureth both the disease of the Splene and Iaundise, as the worthy Paxamus (in his husbandly instructions) confirmeth. In which he reporteth that three parts of the Colewort, with two parts of the round Alum steeped in vineger, cleanseth the foule scurffe and leprie: the same boiled and drunke amendeth the voice and griefe of the Arteries. For which cause many students vse desirously this hearbe.

To vse also the seed and leaues, with Sylphium and vineger bruised and applied on the grieued place, doth perfitly cure the bite, both of a dog mad and not mad.

And if it shall happen through a distillation or Rheume from the head, that the Vuula or roofe to be fallen into the throte, the iuice then of the raw Colewort applied to the head, will in short time recouer and stay the same in the proper place: a secret in very deede, worthy to be noted.

The raw iuice of the Colewort drunke with wine, helpeth the bit of a serpent or adder, the iuice with the meale of Fenigreke and vineger artly mixed, & either anointed or applied in plaster forme, doth effectuously cure the Gout, Joynt sicknesses, yea filthy and olde vlcers, as the worthy Dioscorides writeth. The iuice also snuffed or drawen vp into the nostrils, purgeth very well the head, and conueied into the secret place with the meale of darnell, draweth the reds or termes downe.

The iuice of the leaues anointed alone, or with Barlie meale beaten and mixed, doth in short time qualifie inflammations, and asswage great swellings, and wit Salt doth breaketh botches, and

staieth

staieth the shedding of haire.

The diseased of the Splene, this raw eaten with Vineger doeth profit, after the boiling mixed with hony, the same greatly preuaileth against eating vlcers, and canker sores.

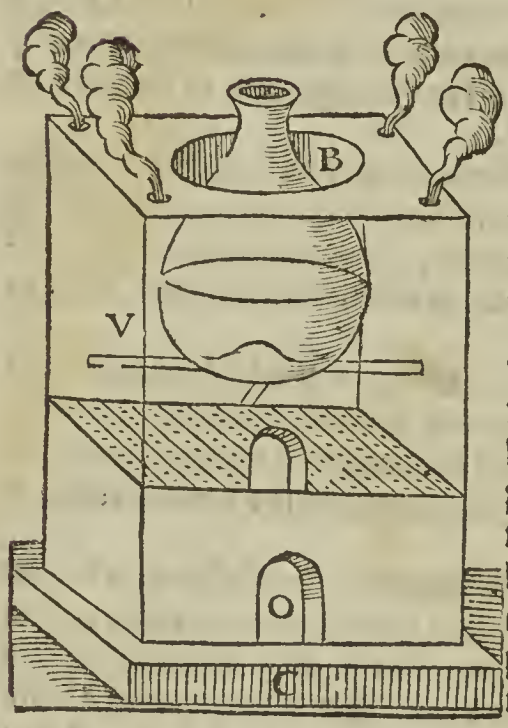
The greene stalks with the roots burned (or rather rosted vnder hot embers) which after the artly mixing with old Barrows grease, be in plaster or forme applied, to the daily griefes of flanckes or sides, doth in short time preuaile.

The iuice of the Colewort mixed with the oile of Roses, and applied to the forehead, doth remoue the headache, procured by heat of the Sunne. To this Colewort boiled, if you mixe the Oyle of Almonds and iuice of the swéte Pomegranat, the same vsed, doth in short time deliuer a drie rough.

The Colewort (after the opinion of certain skilful Physitions) is found to be hard in digestion, swelleth the bellie, harmeth the flegmaticke (in that the same increaseth humors) and harmeth women, hauing the redde course on them, forasmuch as the same increaseth such a flure.

If you would drie a moist belly, then after the Coleworts be half sodden (by pouring forth al the first in a maner) poure in other warm water spédily, which like boile againe vntill the Colewort in this séething, shalbe tender and soft, and in eating, season it with a little pepper and salt: but this may not be handled on such wise, if you would vse it for loosing of the belly, for then after the shifting of it out of the first hot liquor, into a pan standing fast by with oyle and a little salt prepared, you must boile againe vnto the time the same be readie.

The commended benefits of the distilled water of Coleworts.



THe leaues of the greene and common Colewort, are to be distilled in a faire and apt time, about the beginning of June.

This water ministred or receiued vnto the quantitie of three ounces at a time, morning and euening, staieth womens reds.

The distilled water of the Colewort, profiteth the birth of childe, when the time of deliuery is at hand, if a Napkin wet in it be applied often to the nose, to smell vnto, for by that meanes may she happily be deliuered. The like quantity drunk, helpeth the dropping of the vrine: And drunke vnto the quantity of three ounces at a time, morning and euening, staieth a lose belly.

The Physicke helps of the water of the red Colewort.

THe leaues of the red Colewort gathered, are to be distilled in the end of May.

This water drunke in the morning fasting, vnto the quantity of fire or seuen ounces at a time, softneth a hard belly, and three ounces at a time vsed (for a moneth together) putteth away the giddines of the head: this water profiteth against the Apoplexie, and convulsion or Crampe in the members, either drunke or anointed on the grieued places. The water helpeth the trembling and quiuering of members, if those be often rubbed and suppled with it, and the water suffered to drie these into parts by it selfe.

The linnen clothes wet in it applied on inflammations, putteth away the heate, and ceaseth or swageth the swelling: and orderly drunke, healeth vlcers both within and without the body, so that the vlcers without, be applied with linnen clothes, both morning and euening.

What worthy instructions to be conceiued, in the sowing and ordering of the Beete for the Pot.

Chap. 2.

THe Béete more often eaten at poore mens tables, ought to be bestowed in a most fat earth, and sowen at any season, but rather the sédes to be committed to the earth about the middle of December, and vnto March, and like in August, to possesse sédes. which may endure for thrée yeres. The séeds ought rather to be thick then thin sowen in bed, and shot vp to some growth, as that foure or fiue leaues be sprung aboue the earth; then in Summer time, the plants are to be remoued, if the beds afore were moistned or wet with showers, as the singular Columella writeth: but if the ground be drie in harueste time, then to remoue them where showers lately fell and softned the earth.

The Béete loueth or ioyeth to be often digged about, and to be fed with much dung, for which cause the yong plants to be set againe, ought after the ends of the rotes cut off, and the tops of the leaues clipped, to be stroked or anointed about with new Cow-dung, and then bestowed in beddes a good distance asunder, which after the plants be more growne vp, to be diligently weeded about, and the vnprofitable wédes throwne away, for by that meanes they grow the fairer and bigger, being, as I said, bestowed in fat earth and well dunged.

The Béete may be caused to grow bigge and broad, as Sostion in his Gréeke instructions of husbandry affirmeth, if before the Béete shalbe growne vp into a stemme, and shot forth in stalks, the owner lay vpon the head a broad Tile, Potshearde, or some other thing of weight, to presse the top gently downe, for by that practise or meanes in the weightie bearing downe, the Béete is caused to spread into a breadth with the leaues.

The Béete becommeth the whiter and far greater, if the husbandly Gardener anoint or couer the roote with new Dre or Cowe dung.

dung, and that he cut the rote and top of the yong Beete, as the Leeke handled before the setting, and after a bigger growth to presse it downe, as afore vttered. To haue the Beete grow redde, water the plant with red wine Lees, or set the same in a hot place, where the sunne daily shineth long. The Beete rosted in embers, taketh away the stinking smell and sauour of Garlike eaten, if the same bee eaten vpon or after the Garlike, as the Greeke Menander hath noted. This is marueilous to heare by the seede of the Beete, that it yeeldeth not the whole perfection or perfit seeds in the first yeare, but an increase in seedes somewhat more the second yeare, and in the third yeare a ful perfection from the first sowing: And Plinie reporteth, that the Beete spaedier commeth forward with the old seed, then with new: for which cause, the matter demanded of a skilfull Gardener, reported of experience, that the seeds of the Beet to sow, ought not to be gathered before the Beete had borne a third yeare, after the first sowing: of which seeds sowne in due time of the Moone, the best Beets come, and this not to be forgotten, that when the tast of wine, through the Colewort (as afore vttered) is corrupted in the vessel, the same againe by the sauor of the Beete, as through the leaues put into it, is recouered. These hitherto of the Beete.

The Physicke benefits of the Beete.

First all the kindes of the Beete haue a colde and moist qualitie, and the white Beet, as Diphilus the husbandly Physition reporteth, loseth the belly, and the red Beete moueth or prouoketh vrine. Galen affirmeth this Beete to be endued with a nitrous qualitie, through which it both purgeth and cleaseth filth, which vertue is more effectuous in the white, insomuch that it causeth the belly laxatiue, and purgeth the body of euill humours, yet the same passed to the stomacke biteth and plucketh it. The iuice of the common Beete drunke loseth the belly, but the same harmeth the stomacke in pinching or biting it, especially those persons which haue a tender and delicate stomacke, so that the hearbe is better commended sodden, then the raw iuice vsed.

The iuice of the Beet mixed with the oile of bitter Almonds, after the heating of it in a saucer, supped or drawne vp into the nostrils, doth greatly helpe the stopping of ye nose, & recouer smelling through the

the purging or clensing of the head. The rote of the Béete boiled in water, and three or foure drops of the liquor dropped into ỳ eares, doth remoue the rage and paine of them. And the iuice of the Béete rubbed on the gummes, doth assuage the rubbing of them: the iuice of the raw Béete anointed on any bald place of the head, procureth the haire to grow, and killeth lice. The decoction of the leaues and rotes, doe also clense the head of Nittes and Dandrie. The Béete after the tender boiling, applied on wheiks, & blisters of scalding or burning, doth in short time heale them. The iuice of the Béet drunk with Cummine or Dill seedes, remoueth the gripings of the belly. The blacke or redde Béete boiled with the pulse Lentiles, and the same receiued, staieth a lose belly, which (as I aboue said) the white Béete loseth. This white Beete also sodden and eaten with raw Garlike, doth driue away the wormes of the belly. The Béete boiled, helpeth the obstructions or stoppings of the Liuer, more then the great Mallowes or holy Oke doth, especially when the same is eaten with Mustard or Vineger, and eaten in like manner as with Mustard or Vineger, doth marueilously assuage and helpe the corrupted Splene. This hearb is rather eaten after this manner for Physicke causes, then for nourishment, in that there is but a small nourishment of this, as of all other Pot-hearbes, which to the full eaten of at a time, or often eaten doth not onely gripe and bite the stomacke, but increaseth euill humours, as well in the healthfull as sicke persons.

The speciall effects of the distilled water of the white Beetes.

THe time of the distilling of this hearb, is in the end of June, and that both the leaues and stalks together. The new water of the white Béet, drunk morning and euening vnto the quantity of foure ounces at a time, doeth marueilously preuaile against the stone, in that the same consumeth it. This quantity like drunk, preuaileth against the griefe of the stone, in that it purgeth the loines and kidneis. This ceaseth the vexing paine of ioynt aches, by applying wet clothes on the places dipped in it.

What rare helps and secrets to be learned, in the sowing and setting of the Blete.

Chap. 3.

THere are two kindes of this Blete, as the white and the red or blacke, both at this day very wel knowne, through their growing as common in the field as garden. The stalks and leaues of the redde ware so redde in the growing, that they appeare as died with a scarlet colour, but after a further growth, in time these from that colour are changed into a purple, and at length ware blacke to the eie, of which the same also is named of some the blacke Blete. The rote besides of this hearbe in the breaking appeareth so red as any blood.

The white Blete possesseth or rather sendeth forth branches and leaues like to the Bete, and the same without sharpnes or biting, being vnsauorie, and each is of the same condition, that it speedily springeth in the garden, as Pliny reporteth.

And the white or red Blete may be sowen in any earth, but rather in a wel dressed ground, in the moneth of March, as the skilful Neapolitane Rutilius willeth, which strongly growne in the earth, or fully come vp, continueth and yearely renueth of it selfe, without any proper sowing, so that in time this so taketh rote by the seedes yearely falling, that the Gardener after can hardly weed the same out of his ground if he would: wherfore this once sowne in a fertile earth, prosperetb many yeares by the yearly yeld and falling of the Seedes, and requireth neither raking nor weeding about it, as the worthy Palladius reporteth.

The Physicke helps and commodities of the Blete.

THe worthy Galen in his booke De faculta. simpl. writeth that the Blete is a Pot hearbe, much and often eaten of the simple sort, and in a qualitie cold and moist.

This as Pliny writeth, is thought to be vnprofitable to the stomack, & so much molesting the belly, that in some this moueth & causeth the choler to increase, and the flire of the belly. Yea this moueth also vomitings with griping of the belly, through choler moued and

stirred

stirred vp, which by the daily or too much eating of it at a time procéedeth, yet the Blete of practise knowne, doth harme lesse the stomacke and belly, if the first water poured forth, and the left hearbe put in a panne be fried with Oyle and Butter, and a little Salte added, or Vineger, and so eaten. But this notwithstanding may not be often eaten, nor to be full at a time, forsomuch as this (of experience knowen) procureth vomiting, and engenderetb paine in the stomacke, griping in the bowels, and to bee laxatiue, through the mouing of choler. And in the eating of this is to be remembred, that the hearbe be not eaten with Oile alone, and a little Salt, but rather with vineger added for the more part, in that the same otherwise is knowen to be enemy to the stomacke. This hearb (as aboue vttered) hath a property in softning the belly, especially when the force of it is increased, by some other slippery and clammy matter. These hitherto Galen. This notwithstanding drunke in Wine (as Pliny reporteth) preuaileth against the bite of a Scorpion, & laid in a plaster forme on the thicke skin of the féete, and in like maner for the beating paine of the temples, and with Oile on the Pilt, doeth greatly profit. And the worthy Hippocrates writeth, that the same eaten in the manner (as afore taught) doeth restraine and stay the tearmes. These hitherto Plinie.

What diligence and skill is required in the sowing and setting of the Garden Arage.

Chap. 4.

THe Garden Drage for the potte, ought by the agréement of the skilfull, to be sowen in the moneth of March and Apzil, & in the other moneths following vnto Harueſt, the apt seasons and times herein considered. But in some places are séedes bestowed in the moneth of December, in a well dressed and dunged earth, and the plants better prosper being thin sowen. These also may be sowen by themselues in beds, and together with other hearbs, and they alwaies desire to be cut or brokē off with an iron instrument, that they cease not yéelding forth of yong. The Drage ioyeth in the often watering, if the season and ground be very drie. The séeds of the Arage ought diligently to be couered, incōtinent after they are bestowed in the earth, and the rootes of the hearbs to be often digged vnder, and left

left hollow of earth, that the rootes may grow within the stronger.

This hearbe is supposed to grow the greater, being not remoued at al, and for that cause the plants thin bestowed in beddes, do euermore ioy and increase the better. The plant in like maner increaseth and becommeth the sooner great, through the often and diligent weeding exercised about the same. To be briefe, this plant after the mind of Rutilius requireth to be watered all the hot and drie seasons, vnto the time of Harueſt, in that the same delighteth and increaseth the faster, through the daily moisture bestowed on it.

The Physicke benefits of the Orache.

The seedes of this hearbe may bee kept to vse for foure yeares, and these through their clensing quality, helpe greatly the stopping of the Liuer, causing the shedding of the Gaull, or yellow Iandise. Two drammes of the seedes bruised, ministred with two ounces of hony, and a draught of warme water, and drunke fasting, doth on such wise by vomiting cast vp choler. The hearbe in quality is knowen to be cold in the first degree, and moist in the second, through which reason it softneth the belly. The hearbe small nourisheth, in that the liquor or iuice of it is watery & slippery, through which it lightly loseth the belly. & the leaues after the bruising laid in plaster form on hot impostumes & swellings, & like on the shingles, doth both speedily cole & heal them. The seeds after the bruising, take with a quantity of hony, and the same sundry times, helpeth such as fetch the wind hardly. The seeds like vsed, do expel the worms in the belly, and prouoke vomiting. Pythagoras greatly misliked the Orach, in that the same (as he affirmed) caused by the often eating both a paleneſſe of face, & the kings euil. But the worthy Dioscorides far otherwise iudged, in that he affirmed the Arach seedes to helpe the Iandise. The Arach also helpeth such as haue a hot liuer. If the hearbe Mercury with the Orach be diligently boiled, and the broth sundry times vsed, it doth both loſe the belly, and deliuereth ẏ paine of the bladder. The person daily vsing the decoction or broth of the Orach, with the herbe Mercury and Beets, for a time together doth speedily deliuer and rid the Ague. The Orach eaten, is thought profitable

fitable for the person spitting blood. The herb bruised and applied to the belly, not onely cleanseth the defaults or corrupt matter within the priuy place, but ceaseth in short time the painefull griefe of the matrice. The Drach bruised and laid in plaster forme on any member, hurt either with thorne or naile, doth with expedition draw the same forth and healeth it. The hearbe boiled with hony, and applied on rough nailes of the fingers, doth within short time lose them off. The Drache bruised, and after the mixing with hony, applied in plaster forme, doeth in short time remoue the aching paine of the hotte gout in the feete. The hearb so tender and soft boiled as any other Pot hearbe, and eaten of the patient, doth not onely soften the belly, hard ned or costiue by heat, but remoueth diuers swellings.

What singular skill and secrets is to be knowne in the sowing, remouing, and setting againe of the worthy hearbe named Sperage. Chap. 5.

The field or garden Sperage, ioyeth in a fat, moist, and wel dressed earth, and the hearbe growen vp to heigth, hath by euerie leafe growing forth, a redde berie hanging downe, in which a seede is, that the hearbe in the sowing commeth of.

The seeds to be committed to the earth, as the worthy Didimus in his Greek instructions of husbandry reporteth, ought to be bestowed in the spring time, into little holes of three fingers deepe in which the owner or Gardener may put two or three seedes together, well halfe a foote distant one from the other, which thus bestowed, require after no more trauell nor care for the first yeare, sauing the digging about, and plucking vp of weedes growing among them.

But for the sowing and increase of the Sperages, it shall be to great purpose and commoditie, to heare the wittie precepts and instructions of Marcus Cato, Columella, Pliny, and Palladius like agreeing.

The seedes (say they) as much as three fingers can take vppe at one time, may the owner or Gardener workemanly put, and lightly couer, in earth both fatted and well dunged, and in verie little furrowes, so straight made as a line, which on this wise handled, will by the fortieth day after grow so inward in the earth, that the roots shot forth, wil clasp & fold one in another, as if they ioyned

together in one, and for the same named of the ancient Gardeners earth Spunges. If the places in which you purpose to committe the sedes shall be drie, then these laid on soft dung, lying alow in the furrowes, shall on such wise bee ordered and couered, as if they lay or were bestowed in little Hiues. But in a contrary manner shall the owner or Gardener worke and do, in continuall moist places, for the sedes in like places shall bee bestowed on high ridges, workemanly raised with dung, that the moisture may lesse annoy the plants in the growing, which onely ought to be fedde or watered with the moisture passing by, and not still to abide in that moisture, to be cloyed with it. The sedes on such wise bestowed, will yelde a Sperage in the first yeare, which the owner or Gardener shall then breake or cutte off beneath. But if the owner assay to pull at it neare the ground, the small rootes (as yet tender) and weake in the earth, may happen to rise and follow with the whole Spunge, which therefore workmanly broken off, ought thus to be fedde and nourished in one proper place, growing still for two yeeres with dung and diligent weeding. In the other yeares following, the Sperage shal not be broke off by the stalk, but plucked vp by the roote, that the same may so open the eies of his branching, for except the plant be handled on such wise, the stemmes broken off, will not increase the eies of the spunges, but rather grow as blind, so that these will not suffer the Sperage to yelde or send forth the proper increase. The same shal the Gardner preserue, of which he gathered the seed, & burne after the crops & knobbed ends or ioints of the same herb. After this, about the winter time, shal the owner lay or bestow on the spunges, both ashes & dung, which ye learned M. Cato rather willeth to be sheeps dung. There is another maner and way of sowing by spunges onely, which after two yeares ought to be remoued into a sunny & wel dunged place. The like furrows ought to be made well a foot distant one from the other, and not aboue twelue fingers deep, in which the tender and yong spunges are to be set, that lightly couered with earth, they may easily spring and shoot vp. But in the spring time, before they shal come vp or appeare aboue ye ground, the Gardner or owner with a forked iron, cõmonly named a dibbel shal so lose the earth, ye the end of it may appeare out, & the root of ye hearb loosed from the ground, may by ye meanes increase to a more bigues.

The

The same M. Cato willeth the plant to be raked and diligently wæded about, but so handled in the digging about or wæding, that the rootes of the plant be not loosed, or in the wæding by it be otherwise fæbled in the treading downe.

In the winter time the litle grove of Sperages shall be couered ouer with thin and light mattresses of straw, lest it should be bitten and greatly endamaged with the frosts and cold aire, which in the spring time shall be opened and vncouered againe, and fedde with dung about the roots that the plants may the spædier come forward and increase, through the comfortable fæding of the dung and moisture, orderly done.

The worthy Didimus (in his Græke instructions of husbandrie) reporteth, and after him the learned Pliny, that many Sperages do spring vp thorow the hornes of wild Rams broken into grosse pouder, and these strewed along in litle furrowes, and after the light couering with earth, often watered, which although it sæmed not credible to the worthy Dioscorides, and that he much misliked the reason of the same, yet if the Gardener or owner shall make a proofe or triall, hæ will after confesse (I dare affirme) this experiment to bæ most true.

There be which farre maruellouser reporte, euen that the whole hornes of Rammes, not broken asunder, nor cut into small pieces, but onely bored thorow in many places, and then bestowed in the earth, to bring forth or yælde in short time Sperages, which if the owner would possesse of them for all the yeare to fæde on, when he gatheretb the fruit, must then in the digging about (as the said Didimus writeth) open those rootes, which scatter and spread in the toppe of the Tirke, for the yong plant thus ordered, will spædilie send forth new tender stemmes, and yæld Sperages, which lightly boiled in water and fresh broth, and to the same both salt and oile or swæte butter orderly mixed, and a little quantitie of Vineger poured vpon, will after yælde a singular delight to the eaters thereof.

But in this place I thinke it necessary to be remembred, that the Sperages require a small boiling, for too much or long boiled, they become corrupt or without delight in the eating.

Of which the worthy Emperour Drusus, willing to demonstrate the

the spædie successe of a matter, was wont to say, the same should be sooner done then the Sperage boiled.

As touching the making of the sauce or pickle, the tender stalkes sprinkled with salt, and wrought vp in round heapes, ought so to be let alone to sweate in the shadow, after to be diligently washed with the owne liquor, vntil they be sufficiently abated, and cleared of the moisture in them, at the least cleansed from the pickle, and in the laying on of a weight (after such maner) pressed forth. Then poure into an apt vessell two parts of Vineger, and one of the pickle, which workemanly thicken with drie Fenell sædes, in such maner as the tender stalkes and leaues may well be pressed downe and couered in the same, and that the liquor reach vp vnto the top or brimme of the earthen pot.

The Physicke commodities and helps of the Sperage.

The fruit and sæde are vsed in medicine, and indure for a yeare in perfit vertue, the hearbe by nature heateth and moisteneth, and so the same reformeth and helpeth the palsie, the Kings euill, and strangurie. The Garden Sperage prepared with meat and eaten, doth not onely helpe a herd milt, but stopping of the Liuer. The rote of the Sperage boiled in wine, and ministred in apt time of the Moone, recouereth the shedding of the Gaule, and the same is by experience knowne. The meate of the Sperage is reported to be most profitable for the stomacke, which with Cummine mixed, doth remoueth the swelling of the bellie, and cholicke.

The meate of the Sperage orderly prepared and eaten, doth not onely procure vrine easily to passe, but dissolueth and sendeth forth the small stones in the bladder, through the iuice of a Lemmon added to, which experience will well confirme. There be some which minister the rote (artly boiled with swæte or white Wine) for griefes of the womans priuie place. There be which affirme, that the person shall not be stinged with Bees, if hee anoint the naked parts with Sperage and oile bruised together. The decoction of the rot not only profiteth the persons hardly making water, but asswageth all maner of griefe and paine of the gummes, tæth, and mouth, by holding the same for a time and washing the mouth therewith.

The

The worthy Pliny writeth, that the Sperages workemanly boiled, doe marueilously profit and helpe the griefes both of the breft and chine of the backe. To these the Sperage to procure and moue forward the veneriall act, and to lose gently the belly.

Dioscorides reporteth, that the Sperages either rosted or sodden, do mitigate the dropping paine of the vrine, the difficultnesse of the same, and the perilous flix, Dysenteria. Galen affirmeth, the sperage to cleare the kidneis and stopping of the liuer, especially with the rote and sedes.

What skill and obseruation to be followed in the sowing, and ordering of the Spinage. Chap. 6.

THis plant aptest for the lent time (for that the same is oftner or more common vsed in that season) may in any good ground be bestowed, for it commeth vp very wel in euery place. And the sedes are to be committed to the earth in the moneths of September & October, to serue for the Lent ensuing, for that it is the first pot-hearbe which is found in Gardens about the Lent time. But in the months of December, Januarie, February, & March, for al the Summer following. And this plant very wel indureth the extremity of times & seasons, as the cold, frosts, & snow. And although Spinage commeth wel vp in any ground, yet the earth ought to be diligētly labored before, & the same to be somwhat moist. The plants after the comming vp, which appeare by the vii. day after the sowing, need no weeding to be done about them, but onely to clip off the tops of tender leaues, wherby they may grow vp the comlier & fairer to the eie. If the gardener would haue the bed of Spinage indure a long time, & to profit, he ought to cut halfe the bed along at one time, & the other halfe at an other time. This pot hearbe (after the tops cut off & throwne away) ought to be sodden without water, in that the same (in the seething) yeldeth much moisture, for contented with the liquor, it refuseth any other broth added, so that this otherwise sodden, loseth the kindly and naturall iuice of the same, and besides too hastily drowned or ouercome with the same. This being very tender after the seething, ought to be finely chopped with a woddē knife, or otherwise stamped and turned often in the beating of it, which wrought vp into round heaps, & fried in the sweetest oile or butter, must so be prepared with a quantity of veriuice & pepper bruised, that it may the more delight the tast.

The

The Physicke benefits and helps of the Spinedge.

THis hearb for the pot, named Spinedge, moistneth and coleth (after the mind of the skilfull) in the end of the first degree. The Spinedge both softneth the belly, and moistneth the body, and remoueth the griefe of the breast and Lungs. This gathereth winde in the body vnlesse the excrementall humour be sent forth by purge: but applied in hot causes this greatly profiteth.

And if we may credit the Physition Serapion, this more nourisheth then the Arage, loseth the bellie, and leaueth after it a bitter nourishment, yea cleanseth, mundifieth, asswageth choler, and profiteth both the breast and Lungs. The hearbe boiled and applied, helpeth the sorenesse and griefe of the throte, proceeding of blood, and the redde choler. The daily eating of this hearbe, doth marueilously profite such hauing a horse voice, and that hardly fetch breath, and much molested with the cough, if the hearb after the proper seething and ordering, (as aboue taught) be either fried with sweete butter, or the oyle of sweete Almonds, and that to it Meriuice and Pepper bruised, be wittily added: for on such wise handled, the same (daily eaten) do expell humours, where in a contrarry maner, the decoction and hearbe simply being daily eaten, doeth (by agreement of the skilfull) ingender in condition melancholy, as the daily eating of Lettuce doth, the hearbe prepared (as afore taught) and eaten with the decoction of the same drunke, doth not helpe without doubt the grieuous reines, and ache of the backe, but loseth a costiue belly.

What skill and diligence is required in the sowing and ordering of the Garden Sorrell.

Chap. 7.

THe Sorrell of the Garden, although it will well enough come vp in ground not dressed, yet the seeds euermore bestowed in laboured earth, not dunged at all, in the moneth of Aprill, and to bee much and often watered, vntill they be well come, in that the same especially ioyeth being placed neare the water.

And the Gardener minding to possesse the seedes of the Sorrell, ought

ought after certaine leaues come vp, to remoue the plants, in letting them grow vnto the full ripenes of the sæds, which after the thorow drying, to be kept vnto the sowing time. The Sorrell come vp, neither well abideth frosts, colde, nor ouermuch moisture: and to haue the bedds of Sorrell continue sæmely to the eie all the Summer thorow, let the owner or Gardener cut the tops of the Sorrell thrée or foure times in the yeare.

The like diligence may be imploied in the sowing and ordering of the Garden Pimpernell.

The Physicke commodities and helps of the Sorrell and Pimpernell.

The hearb Sorrell coleth and drieth in the third degrée, and the hearbe eaten remoueth lothsomenesse, and procureth an appetite to meat. The Sorrell sauced with Vineger, and eaten fasting in the morning, is a preseruattue for the plague. The leaues wrapped in paper, and rosted vnder hot embers, which after the bruising and mixing with a little oyle of Roses, applied on swellings, doeth bring them in short time to mattering.

The sædes of the Sorrell bruised, and drunke either with water or wine, allwageth the dangerous Flixe Dysenteria, and the paine of the belly of a continuall Flixe, and the abortment of the stomacke.

The rotes of Sorrell boiled with Vineger, or raw imployed and anointed, do heale the Lepry and Ringwormes, and rough nailes, but it behoueth to rubbe ouer the places afore, with salt, Niter, and vineger in the hot Summer. A decoction of the rots cealeth the itch of the body, if with the same the body in a bath be gently rubbed and suppled: the rot besides boiled in wine, allwageth both the griefe or paine of the eares and tæth. Many in remouing of the Kings euill, weare the rote about their necke. The iuice of the Sorrell tempered with oile Oliue, & rubbed on the head, remoueth the grieuous paine of the head procæding of an vntemperate hotnesse. The rots boiled with wine & drunke or eaten, remoue any sicknes comming of heat, as the Iaundise, procæding of the Liuer or Milt, in the like manner

drunke, and the rotes after the bruising applied in plaster forme to the priuie place, doe stay the reds of women long continuing. The sedes boiled in wine, doe stay all manner of fluxes of the belly, and remoue the swelling of the milt. The leaues of Sorrell well bruised, and applied on the brest, doe assuage the burning of the Feuer.

The Pimpernell of the Garden, heateth and drieth in the second degree. The hearbe is especially applied for poison, in that the same clenseth all the outward filth of the body. The rot boiled in wine & drunke, remoueth the euill and venemous blod from the heart, of which the plague is easily caused to proceed, & ceasseth the headache. If a man be wounded vnto the skul, the iuice of this hearbe dropped into the wound, and applied vpon, doth in short time recouer & heale the same without griefe. This dropped into vlcers & other wounds, cureth them. As for prose, take a Cocke, and strike him into the skul with a knife, but not piercing it, after take the iuice of this hearbe, and instil two or three drops into the wound, and it wil immediatly bring the same vnto a scar. The hearbe mixed with Rocket sed and vineger, and drunke, moueth sweate, expelleth poison and euill humours: boiled with wine and drunke, remoueth the disease of the hips, & especially helpeth an euill cough, and purgeth the brest. The hearb boiled in wine and receiued, breaketh the stone of the kidnies and bladder, and remoueth the strangury. In the same maner imploied, profiteth against the gripings of the bowels. But this especially auaileth against the stopping of the liuer and milt. The Pimpernell, to be briefe, helpeth the stone, moueth vrine, assageth the strangury, purgeth the brest, and expelleth the poison of the plague from the heart. The iuice of it boiled, and drunke before the fit of the Ague, putteth away any Feuer. The rote may also be candied, as the Ginger, with Suger or Hony, and to preuaile the like against the abouesaid diseases.

The hearbe boiled, remoueth a continuall Ague: the iuice of the hearbe, a tertian Ague, so that the same be drunke before the fit.

A worthy experiment against the Physicke of the Lungs. Take of the Pimpernel brought into very fine pouder two ounces, of new Pimpernell water, and of Suger, as much as shall suffice, making therof an Electure, of which take daily two drammes.

The

The commended helps of the distilled waters, both of the Sorrell and Pimpernell.

The Sorrell is to be distilled with the whole substance, in the spring time. The water tempered with Treacle, preuaileth against the plague. The water drunke, remoueth all manner of inward heates, ceaseth thirst, helpeth the Liuer and Milt, by the drinking and imploying of the same with linnen clothes wet in it. It remoueth the shingles being applied and drunke, it helpeth scalding or burning, and putteth away the kings euill. It auaileth in Agues, to cole the burning heat, &c.

The rot and hearbe with the whole substance, shred and bruised together, ought to be distilled in the end of May. The water of the Pimpernel drunk morning and euening, vnto the quantity of three or foure ounces at a time, doth helpe the stone of the kidneis & bladder, and purgeth the reines. This helpeth the plague, drunk within fiue daies once. It profiteth women whose matrice is euer cold, and sendeth downe the reddes. This drunke with a litle quantity of Castory in fine pouder, putteth away the shaking of the members. This drunke vnto the quantity of foure ounces fasting, preserueth the person that day from any naturall sickenesse, in that it remoueth all maner of griefe from the heart, expelleth euill humours, and procureth vrine. This drunke, like profiteth against poison, it causeth also a cleare skinne and faire both in face and hands, if the party for a time wash daily those parts with it.

What skill and diligence is required in the workmanly sowing and ordering of the Borage and Buglosse. Chap. 8.

The Borage and Buglosse, or Longdebeefe seruing for the pot, when the leaues are yet tender, and the flowres for Sallets, require to be sowen in the moneth of August, and in September, to serue the Winter time, and in the moneth of Apzill (the Moone increasing) for the Summer time, in that the seedes (especially of the Buglosse) prosper not so well to be sowen at any other

time, for so much as it ioyeth to be placed in a warme and Sunnie place, the earth afore diligently laboured and dressed. These may the owner or Gardener remoue (after certaine leaues sprung vp) at any time of the yeare, and to be placed in beds, either alone, or in Borders, round about the new beds of other hearbs. The sedes both of the Borage and Buglosse, require to be gathered in a maner halfe ripe, to the end they fall not out of their huske. And the whole hearbe with the sedes of either ought to be laid in some high place, open to the warme Sunne, that they may ripen the spedier, which ful ripe, rub tenderly betweene the hands the seds forth on a linnen cloth or sheete, and these may you keepe for two yeares.

The Physicke benefits and singular helps both of the Borage and Buglosse, or Longdebeefe.

THe Borage, which otherwise of Galen and Dioscorides, is named the Buglosse or Longdebeef, is (by the agremēt of the skilfull) affirmed to be moist and hot in the first degree, which the selfe same Galen witnesseth, saying, that the Buglosse is of a moist and temperate hotnesse, for which cause steeped in wine, it is thought to procure a gladsomenesse and ioy to the drinker of it.

The Borage boiled in Wine, and the same drunke, procureth good blood in the creature. The iuice of this hearbe mixed Artely with Sugar, and drunke fasting, marueilously helpeth the giddinesse or swimming of the head. The Sirupe made of the iuice of Borage, to which a like weight of Suger, and a little quantity of the pouder of the bones of the Hart, these after the workemanly boiling, drunke fasting for a time together, marueilously recouereth the trembling and beating of the heart. If the iuice with the simple Sirupe of Borage & Sene equally mixed, shalbe drunke morning and euening, doth not onely increase memory, but remoue Melancholy. The flowres raw eaten with distilled Vineger and Suger, doe not onely procure good blood, but stay the trembling of the heart, which like they in Wine, and drunke preuaile. The flowres dried and preserued for a yeare, do like profit in all the aboueseid griefes, as the

hearbe

hearb doth. The strupe of the Borage vsed for a time, preuaileth against the kings euill.

The flowres steeped for a time in the oile of sweete Almonds, and after the wringing forth of this tenderly applied to the stomack, and region of the heart, doe marueilously comfort the weake patient. Sirups both of the Borage and Buglosse, are applied in Physicke, for the onely purpose of comforting.

To such hauing weake Lungs and a drie cough, the Buglosse steeped in Wine and drunke, greatly preuaileth: for the roughnes of the throte and cough, onely apply or drinke (as Galen instructeth) the Buglosse boiled in Pulse, or water and hony. The Buglosse steeped in wine, and tempered with Melicrate, procureth after the drinking gladsomenesse to the creature. It purgeth the red choler, proceeding of the ouermuch heate, being often drunke with sweete wine. This drunke in the like maner, recouereth the Cardiacke passion, yea it expelleth the noisome humour of the Lungs.

The iuice of the Buglosse, remoueth the swelling of the feete, being drunke with warme water.

The wine for a time drunke in which the Buglosse shall be steeped, doth preserue a good memorie.

The same wine of the flowres steeped and drunke for a time, not onely comforteth greatly the heart, but engendreth good blood in the creature.

The singular helps and physicke benefits of the distilled waters, both of the Borage and Buglosse.

The cõmended time for distilling of the Borage, is for the more part, about the end of the moneth of May, when as it beareth

flowre, which wholly with the rot shred and bruised, ought then to be distilled in such a like furnace and vessel, as here before is placed, named of the worthy Physitions Balneum Mariæ, for that the same more naturally distilleth all maner of delectable flowres, and comfortable hearbs, then any other drie fornace by ashes doth.

The water distilled in this fornace, drunke vnto the quantity of two or three ounces at a time, both morning & euening, doth marueilously remoue and asswage both the griping and swelling of the bellie, yea this cureth Dysenteria, and the hardnesse of fetching breath.

This water drunk fasting, vnto the quantity of two ounces, doth not onely comfort the heart and braine, but rendreth a helpe to memory and wit, yea purgeth the euill blood, and recouereth frensinesse.

This water easeth the griefe and pain caused by the sting and venoming of a spider or Bee, by laying linnen clothes wet in it on the place. This with the red Sarcent laid on the eies, doeth not onely asswage the pain of them, but procureth a clearenes of sight, yea the water applied on the eares and necke, doth remoue the ringing and pain of the eares. The water of the Borage flowres drunk, preuaileth after a like maner in all those griefes, as the water of the proper hearbe doth, yet the water of the flowres accounted the worthier, for that the same purgeth the blood, expelleth melancholy, and marueilously comforteth the heart. This also amendeth euery maner of distillation of the head, by drinking two ounces euery euening, before the going to bed. This drinke profiteth against burning feuers, and the Jaundise, and drunk and applied with linnen clothes wet in it, doth speedily cole and amend the heate of the Liuer. The Buglosse ought rather to be distilled in the beginning of June, in the like fornace afore placed, named Balneum Mariæ. This distilled water drunke, profiteth all such, which are molested with the flire, Dysenteria, the painfull fetching of breath, and decay of minde: besides the pensiue and troubled, and those which are weake of braine, if this be drunke morning and euening with Suger, vnto the quantitie of two or three ounces at a time. This drunk preuaileth against al hot sicknesses, Agues, defaults of the Lungs, the Liuer, and Milt: it

purgeth

purgeth all the blood, and remoueth the pricking about the heart and breast.

The water of the hearbe drunke, amendeth the Iaundise, cleanseth the Leprie and scabs, and staieth the stilling of the head. This ceaseth the paine of the head and burning of the eies, applied with linnen clothes on the head or eies; this in like manner handled, remoueth the ringing or sound of the eares. The Buglosse flowres, and hearbe, of each two great handfuls, to which added of Cinamon foure ounces, a little bruised before, these together distilled in Balneo Mariæ, do yeld a most pretious water for the comforting of the hart and braine, if the same in the daily taking be drunke with the confection of Manus Christi, made in tables with pearles.

What skill and secrets to be learned in the sowing, remouing, and setting of the Marigold. Chap. 9.

The Marigold named of the Herbarians Calendula, is so properly tearmed, for that in euery Calend, and in each moneth this reuiueth of the owne accord, and is found to beare flowre, as well in Winter as Summer, for which cause, the Italians name the same the flowre of euery moneth: but some tearme it the Suns flowre, or the follower of the Sunne, and is of some named the husbandmans Diall, in that the same sheweth to them, both the Morning and Euening tide. Other name it the Sunnes Bride, and Sunnes hearb, in that the flowres of the same follow the Sunne, as from the rising by the South vnto the West, and by a notable turning obeying to the Sunne, in such maner, that what part of heauen he possesseth, they into the same turned beholde, and that in a cloudie and thicke aire like directed, as if they should be reuiued, quickened, and moued with the spirit of him. Such is the loue of it knowen to be toward that royall Starre, being in the night time, for the desire of him, as pensiue and sadde, they be shut or closed together, but at the none time of the day fully spred abroad, as if they with spred armes longed, or diligently attended, to embrace their Bridegrome. This Marigold is a singular kinde of hearbe sowen in Gardens, as well for the pot, as for the decking

of Garlands, beautifying of Nosegaies, and to be worne in the bosome.

The seeds of this flowre, are commonly bestowed in a husbandly and well dressed earth, but this rather done by the counsel of the skilfull in the increase of the Mone, wherby the flowres may grow the bigger and broader. But to procure the flowres to grow the doubler, bigger, & broader, the owner ought to remoue the plants often, and to set them in new beds, lying in Sunny places, herein considering at those times of remouing, that the Mone be increasing so nigh as you can.

Besides, some wil, that many seeds be put together into one hole, in the first quarter of the Mone, and to be sundry times watered in the first comming vp of them, vnlesse the moisture of the aire otherwise helpe.

These after certaine leaues sprung vp, if they be often remoued and clipped by due course of the Mone, yeeld a better, broader, and a fairer flowre, and they yeeld alwaies more flowres in the harueste, then in the spring time.

The Physicke benefits and helps of the Marigold.

The iuce of the hearbe and root applied vp in glyster forme, recouereth in short time the palsie members. The flowres & leaues dried, keepe vnto vse, for if a woman deliuered of childe, the after burden come not, kindle or burne this hearb and flowres dried with ware, and with the same make a smoke below, for this is a sure and laudable experiment, to bring them downe (the childe afore deliuered) as the learned Brumfelsius reporteth. For the paps of women swelled, through the stopping and stay of the reddes, minister the flowres with Spikenard and Wine, in that the same ceaseth or asswageth, and prouoketh the monthly course.

The flowres of the Marigold boiled and drunke, stayeth the flure of pissing blood.

The iuice of the leaues wringed forth and dropped into the eares, killeth the wormes.

The rinds of the roots dried, brought into pouder, and applied on foule

foule pushes, doe heale them in short time.

The rinde of the Marigold pierceth and digesteth euil humours, which boiled in Wine and drunke, helpeth the stopping and other griefes of the Liuer.

The flowres of the Marigold steeped in vineger and salt, and reserued, retaine these proper vertue for two yeares.

These comfort the stomacke and procure an appetite to meat, yea they consume the humours of the stomacke, and heat a cold brest.

The said iuice of the flowres mixed with a litle pure vineger warmed, and rubbed well on the teeth and gummes, is a soueraigne remedy for the asswaging of the grieuous paine of the teeth.

The iuice of the flowres drunke vnto the quantity of two ounces at a time in the fit of the plague, shall speedily be holpen, if the patient (after the drinking of the iuice) lying on bed, be wel couered with clothes to sweate thorowly. The conserue of the flowres is a preparatiue against the plague; if seuen graines weight of the iuice of the flowres be drunke with three ounces of white wine, and repeated sundrie mornings, it helpeth the quartaine.

The pouder of the rinds of the roots of the Marigold, mixed with the iuice of Fenell, Wine, and a little Oile, and boiled vnto a thicknesse, to which a litle ware added for the apter making of it an ointment, and so applied on the milt or cold stomacke, doth greatly profit.

The commended helps of the distilled water.

THe worthie Hyeronimus a most expert Herbarian reporteth, that the distilled water of the Marigold flowres, drawn in Balneo Mariæ, do recouer al defaults of the eyes, whether these proceed of heat, or through cold caused, and to procure cleare eies, besides the putting away of all griefes of the head.

What skill, industrie, and secrets is to be learned in the sowing and ordering of the Parcely.

Chap. 10.

THe Parcely in the bestowing in the earth, requireth small labour and diligence, and loueth a stony and sandie Earth, so

that the same néedeth small fatning, whereby it may well agrée to be sowen in shadowie places, neare to the hedge or harbour in the Garden, and this especially requireth much watering, for the spédier shooting vp. The olde sédes, if we may credite Theophrastus, do sooner come vp, yea and the elder sédes are better for the turne: the plantes shotte vp, doe endure a long time without sowing any more, in such condition, that the owner or Gardener shall not néede to sow or set of the plants againe for fiue yeares after. The Parcely when it hath growne a yeare, it sendeth vp or beareth stalkes and sédes, and a yellowish flowre. The new sédes of the Parcely committed to the earth, do most slowly come vp in beddes, in that these not before the fortith, yea fiftith and sixtith day after the sowing, doe for the more part appeare, as the learned Plinie reporteth; yet this ease and commodity ensueth, that once sown and come vp (as aboue vttered) it yearly increaseth of the owne accord, without renuing for many yeares. The sédes, as the worthy Neapolitane Rutilius witnesseth, ioy in any earth, and as well in the colde as warme places, sauing the sédes in the first comming vp require much moisture, through which watering they come so spédily strong, that after no aire nor ground hindereth them. Both the sédes and plants (as Columella instructeth) may prosperously be bestowed to increase the spédier, neare to springs and litle running waters. If the owner or Gardener would haue the leaues grow very broad, then let him attend to the words of the worthy Grécke Florentius, who willeth to take vp of Parcely sédes at one time, as much as can handsomly be holden betwéene thrée of the fingers, and these after the tying vp in a thin or well worne linnen cloth, to bee set into a shallow hole with dung handsomely mixed in the earth, which on such wise handled, will after come vp & grow with so large a leafe, for the increase of all the séds wil then be ioyned, and shot vp together in one blade, as the worthy Rutilius hath noted, and before him the singular Columella. But the Parcely shal grow biggest, (as the worthy Florentius reporteth) if the owner by digging about the rootes, bestow chaffe about them, and after the couering with light earth, do water them wel and often. The Parcely may the Gardener cause to grow crisped in leafe, if he thrust and bestow the sédes a little before the sowing in a ball stuffed with them, which broken somewhat with a staffe,

ſtaffe, and as they were ſpoiled, commit them (as Columella willeth) to the earth.

Or the Gardner otherwiſe with leſſer paine may procure them to grow criſped in what maner ſoeuer they be ſowen, if he turne on the bed and plants a round ſtone, or big roller, as ſoone as the plants be ſomewhat growen vp aboue the earth: and the like may the owner doe with the plants come vp, if he tread them often downe.

The beſt commended time for the committing of ſeedes to the earth, is from the midſt of May, vnto the Summer ſolſtice in June, in beds thick together and to be often watered, for that theſe ſpeedier increaſe and come forward, through the heat in the ſame ſeaſon. If the owner or Gardener would haue the ſeedes ſoner breake and ſhoote vp, let him infuſe the ſeeds for a certain time in vineger, which beſtowing in a well laboured earth, fill halfe the beds with aſhes of the Beane coddes. After the ſeedes are thus ſowen, water them often and lightly with a ſmall quantity of the beſt Aqua vitæ, and ſoone after the ſprinckling and moiſtning of the beds, couer the beds ouer with ſome piece of woollen cloth, to the end the proper heat miniſtred breath not away, for by that meanes the plants within one houre wil begin to appeare, ſo that the owner muſt then take off the cloth, & ſprinckle or moiſten the plants appeared oftentimes, whereby they may the ſoner ſhoote vp in a high ſtem or blade, to the wonder of the beholders. To Florentius, Iunius, Columella, Pliny, and Rutilius agree, that there are two kinds of the Parcely, as the male and female, the male (as they deſcribe it) hath blacker leaues, & ſhorter roote: but the female poſſeſſeth criſpeder leaues, and hard, a big ſtem, in taſt ſowre & hot: but neither of theſe two doth Dionyſius and Chriſippus ỳ phyſitiõ, allow to be eatẽ with meat, as Pliny writeth: Although the ſame much vſed in Plinies time, as at this day, both in broths & ſauces, for a better delight & appetite. They report ỳ by the often eating of the female blades, wormes engender in the body, and ỳ the female eatẽ, doth procure the woman baren, as ỳ male ỳ man. And further, ỳ parſly eaten of a womã with child, doth cauſe ỳ births to haue the falling ſicknes, yet they affirm the male to harm leſſe, ſo ỳ for the ſame it was not altogether miſliked nor cõdemned of ỳ anciẽt, among the wicked fruits. Therfore it is not to be maruelled at, if ỳ late phyſitiõs do aduiſe & warn perſons, hauing ỳ falling ſicknes,

and women with child, not to eate the Parcely: so these, the Greeks forbad Nourses, and women with child the eating of Parcely with meat, although an other occasion may also ensue of the same, that it may hinder womens milke springs, and extinguish the comming of milk, besides that, this procureth the eaters of it vnto ẏ venerial act.

Certaine report, that the sicke fishes in ponds, are mightily recouered and made luckie through the Parcely laid in them.

There is nothing that doth like sweeten the mouth, as the fresh & green Parcely eaten, so that the herb often eaten of them which haue an vnsauery and stinking breath, and sendeth forth an odious smell to be abhorred, doth in short time marueilously recouer and amend the same: A matter very commendable and necessary, both for maidens & widows to deceiue their wooers, by the chewing and bearing about of the greene and fresh blades, wherby they may so remoue for the present, the strong smel of the breath yawning or otherwise issuing forth, and by the customable eating, send forth a sweeter breath.

Sundry in times past, preserued the blades of Parcely in a pickle vnto vse, which receiued or conteined two parts of Vineger, and a third part of Wine.

The Physicke benefits and helps of the Parcely.

The garden Parcely is hot in the beginning of the third degree, & drie in the second, or it heateth & drieth by nature in the second and third degree. The iuice of Parcely, Turpentine, Wheaten meale, and the oyle of Roses artly mixed and boiled together with a litle quantity of Sarcocolla, of which by art, an abstersine or clenser made, doth most perfitly clense and incarnate the vlcers of Carbuncles, and other impostums. The parcely boiled with leaues of Colewort and Melilot, of which a plaster made with Otemeale, oile of Camamile, Dill, and oile of Roses, and applied, doeth marueilously resolue the impostumes of the pappes, caused through the ranckling of milke staied backe, part by drying vp the milke, and part by purging the same.

The Parcely eaten either raw or sodden, doth amend the stopping of the Liuer, prouoke Vrine, staieth loseneſſe of the belly, and hath a property in strengthning of lose parts.

The Parcely also hath the nature of piercing, for which cause it

moueth

moueth vrine, and very much preuaileth against the stone, as well the seede as rote.

The Greek Florentius writeth in his husbandry, that the Parcely with crums of bread, applied in the stead of plaster, doeth heale the shingles, but the decoction of the same drunke, to breake the stone, and the like to performe by applying outwardly.

To these, for such hardly making water, and diseased in the kidnies to helpe aswell by the leafe as by the rote.

The blacke spots to reflore to the proper colour, if the decoction of the seedes be applied vpon, and to soften the hardnes of the paps, by applying the leaues bruised on them.

Plinie writeth, that the bruised seedes anointed with the white of an egge, or the seede boiled in water and drunke, to amend and helpe the kidneis, and bruised in colde water, to profit and remoue the vlcers of the mouth, this also with olde Wine ministred, to breake the stone in the bladder, which like doeth the rote performe.

This profiteth giuen for the Iaundise in white Wine, and to such women whose monethly courses doe not onely procéede, or be staied.

This is worthy to be noted, that the raw Parcely yeldeth swéeter waters in the drinking, as the worthy Plinie hath noted, and to the mouth (as Galen writeth) the same pleasant and very delectable to the stomacke.

The seede taken in meate, doth expel winde in the body, the same bruised and applied on a foule scabbe, doth very well clense, and procureth a faire skinne.

The seeds eaten, doth remoue the swelling of the stomacke, and profiteth the dropsie men, in that the seedes are drie and pierce euill humours, and consume them.

The Parcely profiteth those persons which haue gotten the Lepre of Flegmaticke humours. It clenseth the Liuer, and remoueth the paines of the Loines and bladder.

A sauce prepared of the Parcely, with Sorrell and Vineger mixed together and eaten, preuaileth against the burning of a Feuer.

If after the drying of the Parcely rootes, and beaten finely to

ponder the same, be mixed and drunke with the purest wine, doeth not onely procure a sound braine, and perfite memorie, but purgeth the blood.

The sedes (after the agreement of the best writers) are principall in the causes of physicke, the rootes next to them, and the leaues as third in working.

The roots, hearbe, and sedes of the Parcely, applied in meat and drinke, doe procure vrine, remoue the stone of the Loines, drawe downe the reds, dissolue winde in the body, take away the griping of the belly, asswage the strangurie, paine of the backe, griefe of the kidneis and bladder, and swelling of the stomacke.

The person bitten of a mad dogge, by boyling and drinking the decoction of Parcely, and applying a plaster made of the sedes and hearbe shall be speedily holpen.

The physicke heps of the distilled water of Parcely.

The commended time of the distilling of Parcely, is in the beginning of September, and that the fresh roots and hearbe, with the whole substance be distilled together in Balneo Mariæ.

The water of the Parcely drunke vnto the quantity of three or foure ounces at a time, morning and euening, for thirtie or fortie daies together, profiteth against the stone of the kidnies and loines, purgeth the kidnies and bladder, and greatly moueth forward the vrine.

The water drunke in the same maner, helpeth digestion, procureth an appetite to meate, purgeth the liuer, easeth the strangurie, and whersoeuer this water is anointed on the head and body, hairs doe sone after shed.

What

What skil and diligence required, in the sowing and ordering both of the Garden and wilde running Tyme.

Chap. 11.

THe garden Tyme, although it seeme better to agree, to be placed nie to Bee-hiues (for the commodity of hony) then in gardens, yet our purpose is heere somewhat to write of the same, in that this is so carefully bestowed in Gardens, as well for the commoditie of meates, as for the decking of Garlands. There are found to be two kinds of it, the one white with a woodie or hard rote, growing on little hils, which is accounted the worthiest.

The other as well in kinde as flowre blacke, which Ætius (in meats) disalloweth, for the same inwardly receiued, lightly putrifieth, and increaseth cholericke humours.

The Tyme of the garden growing bushie and full of slips, is seene to shoote vp two handfuls high, being most sweete and delectable of sauour, and decked with a number of small leaues, bearing also purple flowres, tending to a whitenes, and the tops after the forme of Ants bending in body. The garden Tyme better commeth forward, being bestowed in a leane and stony ground: for which cause it neither desireth a fat nor dunged earth, but ioyeth to be placed in a sunnie and open place. This well enough prospereth, being bestowed in beds, either in seede or plant, but this speedier commeth forward being only set, yea this increaseth, being set again with ẏ flowres bearing, as the singular Theophrastus witnesseth. The owners of hiues haue a perfit foresight and knowledge, what the increase or yeelde of hony will be euery yeare, by the plentifull or small number of flowres growing and appearing on the time about the summer solstice: for this increaseth and yeeldeth most friendly flowres for the Bees, which render a colour and sauour to the hony.

The said Theophrastus writeth, that the flowre of Tyme spread abroad, is destroied and dieth, if a bigge shoure of raine happen to fall.

The worthy Neapolitane Rutilius in his husbandry instructeth, that the whole plant is to be rather set then sowen, about the middle of Aprill in a well laboured earth, lying open to the Sunne, and that the same may prosper and come the speedier forward.

He willeth the owner to water the plants of Tyme, or to moisten them all a day with water finely sprinkled on the beds, in that the tyme so fast drinketh in. If the owner or gardner would possesse the sedes, he must diligently gather the flowres, (in which the seds are contained) and not labour to separate the one from the other.

The running Tyme ioyeth to be set or sowen neare to springs of water, as by a Well or Pond, for on such wise bestowed in the earth, the same yeldeth the fairer leaues: this neither requireth a fat nor dunged earth, but onely to be bestowed in a sunnie place, and ioyeth in the often remouing. The running Tyme doth many times procede or come of the Basill, rudely or without care bestowed in the earth.

The Physicke helps of the Garden and running Tyme.

THe Garden Tyme hoateth and drieth in the third degree.

The Tyme after the weldrying, brought to fine pouder, and giuen vnto the quantity of foure drams at a time, with a draught of Oximel (or vineger and hony boiled together) not only remoueth the ioynt sicknesse and ach of parts, but purgeth the Choler, and all other humours. The like quantity giuen, helpeth the passions of the bladder.

The fine pouder of Tyme, ministred vnto the quantity of one dramme at a time, with a spoonefull of water and honie well mixed together, preuaileth in short time against the swelling of the belly.

The pouder taken vnto the quantitie of three drammes at a time, with a draught of Mellicrate, remoueth the grief of the hips, asswageth the paine of the loines and sides, amendeth the brest, and the inflammations of Hypochondria or the flanckes.

The pouder giuen vnto the quaintity of three drammes at a time, with a draught of Oximel fasting, doth marueilously helpe the Melancholike, the troubled in minde, and fearefull.

The pouder ministred vnto the quantity of three drammes at a time, with the best white wine both morning and euening, doeth marueilously cure the bleardnesse of the eies, and the vehement paine of them.

This

This pouder in like quantity vsed with good wine, allwageth the griefe of the cold Gout and the deadnesse of mouing, and helpeth the stifnesse of limmes, drunke morning and euening.

The pouder drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantitie of three drammes at a time, with a draught of Oximel, doeth in short time allwage the swelling of the Testicles. These hitherto Actius.

The pouder drunk with white wine, morning and euening, vnto the quantity of halfe an ounce at a time, not only moueth vrine, and purgeth the bowels, but sendeth down the after burden, and termes in women.

The forme of a Sirupe made of the Tyme with pure Hony, artly boiled, and drunk fasting, doth in short time amend the hard fetching of breath, and remoueth all other griefes of the breast, through the spilling forth of the corrupt matter.

The pouder is thought to helpe greatly the clearenes of sight, being sundry times taken with meat: but the Tyme ought moderatly to be vsed, in that (through the often eating) it mightily heateth.

The Tyme giuen in such hauing the falling sicknes, greatly auaileth, in that through the smelling to it (in the time of the fit) they are much reuiued, but such ought to slæpe for a while on the soft bedde of Tyme.

The leaues finely beaten and strewed on woll, and with oyle applied on lose partes of the body, mightily preuaileth, and on burnt or scalded places, to great purpose anointed with Barrows grease.

Here conceiue, that the Tyme which is blacke (as afore vttered) is altogether to be refused, and onely to vse the same bearing a purple flowre, and tending to a whitenes, is best commended for al purposes.

The running Tyme sowen in Gardens, is by nature hotte and dry, and this so much heateth, that it both moueth vrine and the reds, yet the same is sower in taste, as the worthie Physition Galen witnesseth.

If any drink the fine pouder of the running Tyme with pleasant wine, morning and euening for a certaine time together, doth break the stone of the kidneis and bladder. The hearb laid on the sting of a

Bee spædily helpeth it.

The hearb boiled in pleasant wine and drunke, healeth the bite of an Adder or Snake: the smoke of the same, driueth away venemous wormes. This hearb boiled with vineger and hony, and drunk vnto the quantity of a draught at a time, profiteth the spitting of blood: the iuice of the hearbe drunke, performeth the same, being mixed with Vineger, and drunke vnto the quantitie of foure ounces at a time.

The herb staieth the Rheume and stillings of the head, comming of a cold cause, it likewise amendeth the cough and cold stomacke, if the same be taken morning and euening with good white wine.

The hearb steeped in Rose vineger, and bruised being with the oile of Roses diligently fried and anointed, doeth spædily remoue the headache. The same ointment applied on the head, amendeth Frensinesse and the Letharge or often slumbering.

The hearbe boiled in wine and drunke, openeth the stoppings of the Liuer and Milt, and moueth vrine: this drunke in wine, sendeth downe the termes, and causeth vrine, and recouereth the bite of venemous beasts. The same boiled in wine and oyle, asswageth the swelling in the throte, if the throte be daily applied with it.

The hearbe boiled in wine, with the iuice of Licoras, recouereth the cough, and purgeth the breast: the iuice of the same drunke with vineger, vnto the quantitie of two drammes at a time, staieth the bloody vomitings.

The hearbe boiled with Annis seedes in wine, not onely heateth the stomack, but remoueth wind in the bowels, and easeth the strangurie. The seede in wine, doeth greatly moue vrine, and expelleth mightily the stone.

The

The worthy helps of the distilled water of the running Tyme.

THe hearbe, stalke, and rote, with the whole substance shredde, ought to be distilled in Balneo Mariæ, about the end of the moneth of June.

The water of the running Tyme drunk morning & euening, vnto the quantity of three ounces at a time, doeth not onely strengthen and amend the head, brain, and stomack, but procureth an appetite to meate, remoueth the noise or rumbling of the belly, softneneth the hardnesse of the stomacke, and moueth forward the vrine.

In the like maner it drunke, not onely comforteth the sight, and consumeth humours, and the distillations of the head, but mixed with the water of wormewood and drunke, helpeth a Quotidian Ague. The same drunke to the quantity of three ounces at a time, amendeth a cold liuer & milt, and recouereth or healeth the bowels exulcerated.

This in like order drunke, openeth the stopping of the Nostrils and eares, restoreth hearing, helpeth giddinesse, stayeth the desire to vomit, and expelleth the griping of the bellie and bowels.

This drunke sundry times, both morning and euening breaketh the stone, and moueth vrine. This water applied with a linnen cloth on bruised members, doth in short time cure them.

What skill and diligence is required in the sowing and ordering, both the Mints and Holihoke. Chap. 12.

THe Garden Mint desireth to be bestowed, neither in a dunged nor fat earth, but rather in an open and Sunnie place: yet this best ioyeth in a moist place, or by some well. And where the like is not, the Mint in that ground ought to be often watered in the first bestowing in the earth, or this otherwise in short time withereth and dieth.

The Minte ought to be set in the rote or whole stemme, in Harvest, or in the spring time. The owner or Gardener lacking or not hauing the Minte sedes to sow, may in stede of them, vse or bestow in his ground, the sedes of the field or wild Mintes, in setting the sharper ends of the sedes downeward, thereby to tame and put away the wildnes of them. This plant wel growen vp, needeth not after to be renued or sowen euery yeare, in that once sowen or planted, it after commeth vp yearely of the own accord, and for the delectable sauor which it enioyeth, much desired and vsed both in brothes and Sallets.

But this plant after comming vp, may in no case bee touched with any iron instrument, in that the same sone after dieth. This plant flourishing in the Summer, becommeth yellowish in the winter time.

The Holihocke or greater Mallowes of the Garden, as Ruellius out of the learned Theophrastus affirmeth, doth often shote vp into the forme of a tree, and waxeth so great, that the stemmes or bodie of it may serue to the vse of a staffe, which sendeth forth big stalks and leaues both large and round.

The flowre of this plant for the proper time flourishing, is named the winter Rose, in that this plant yeldeth flowres like to the Rose, from the beginning of Harvest vnto the winter time, which flowres both of the red and white, lesser then the fading or vanishing Rose, longer endure and enioy force.

This Rose of the ancient Greekes was named Moloke, in that the leaues (Columella reporteth) turne about with the Sun, which at none time of the day are fully opened. The ancient Romanes did also name it the sown or garden Mallows. The common people in time past greatly pleased with ỳ beauty of the same, named it the beyond sea Rose. For in comlines, neither of them giueth place to the Rose, which if the same ioyned a sauour, it were not inferiour to the Rose, seeing in colour they be equal in bearing of the red carnation and white, so that in sauour the Rose onely excelleth.

This for the worthy comlinesse and beautie, to bee set in windowes, is at this day diligently sowen and set in Gardens.

The worthy Rutilius (in his treatise of the garden) instructeth, that

the

the sædes to be committed to the earth, ought rather to be bestowed about the middle of Apzill, in a well dunged and fat ground, and to be often watered, vntill the plants be well spzung vp.

The skilfull Columella in his husbandzy vttereth, that this rather ioyeth to be bestowed in a fat earth, well turned in with dung, and that moist dung be laid about the rootes of the yong Plants, in the setting againe, which the said Authoz willeth to remoue, after foure leaues are well shot vp aboue the earth.

This learned Columella writing of the Holyhoke, repozteth that the flowze (as the Marigold) openeth at the rising of the Sunne, ful spzed at the Noone time, and closeth againe at the going downe of the Sunne.

The Physick benefits and helps both of the Mint, and Garden Mallowes or Holyhoke.

THe Garden Mint is repozted to be hot and dzy in the second degræ, and this in medicine oftner vsed dzie then græne.

The wozthy Florentius a singular pzofessoz of the Græke instruction of Husbandzy, wziteth, that the Mint, foz the same might well be accounted an vnpzofitable hearbe, sæing the hearbe applied on a wound, defendeth the same from waxing whole, and to come to a scarre.

If the Mint bee put into milke, it neither suffereth the same to curd, noz to become thicke, insomuch that laid into curded milke, this wonld bzing the same thinne againe, so that by the same vertue and pzoperty, he saith to resist and abate the generation, as well in man as woman: but others in a contrary mind defending the hearb, accounted it very holesome and beneficiall to man.

If the hearbe boiled in wine and oile, be applied on the paps of the new milch woman, it doth not after suffer the milke to curd, oz to be thicke, and the milke curded, to become thin againe, whereby it amendeth the hard and ranckled bzests, in danger to bzeake thzough ỳ milke curded. Foz which cause this hearbe is wittily added in the pozcions of milke, that in the curding of the milke within the stomacke, no peril of strangling thzough the benefit of this hearb might ensue.

The iuice or water of the hearbe, drunke with the iuice of the Pomegranat, stayeth the rekking or belching of the stomack, and vomiting, as the worthy Democritus in his husbandry hath noted.

The Mint brought to fine pouder, and ministred in milke, profiteth against long wormes in the bodie.

If the swollen priuities be often soupled with the decoction of the same, it doth in short time remoue the swelling of them.

This drunke in water with Amilum, asswageth the force of the painefull flure of the belly, and scouring with blood: besides, it staieth the ouer great course and shew of the reddes in women, and the same healeth vlcers on the infants heads.

The sauour of this quickeneth the spirits and mind, and the taste worketh an appetite, and earnest desire to meate.

The iuice of the fresh hearbe drawne vp, amendeth the default in the Nostrils, which also in the paine in the head, and beating of the temples, is profitably anointed.

The iuice of the hearbe applied with vineger, retaineth and staieth the inward courses of flures of blood.

The Mint after the bruising with the oyle of Roses, applied in plaster forme on hard pappes, which be swollen through the milke, doth not only soften, but defendeth them from mattering.

The hearbe eaten with vineger, loseth the belly, but daily eaten for a time together, doeth marueilously procure a fæmely colour to that creature, and this hearbe at any time vsed, is very profitable and holesome.

The iuice drunke with vineger, profiteth the spitting forth of blood, the same anointed on the forehead, doeth asswage the griefes of the head: the iuice with hony and water applied, remoueth the paine and noise of ringing of the eares. The iuice tempered with hony and anointed on the eies, remoueth the moistnesse and dimnesse of sight.

The Mint after the boiling in wine receiued, amendeth a stinking or strong sauour of the mouth: the mouth after the adding of vineger to it washed diligently, not onely helpeth the teeth, but purgeth the mattered gums: If the teeth in like manner be washed fasting with decoction of Mints, it letteth the mattering of the gums. The decoction in wine, with a litle vinegar added, remoueth (through the sun-

drie

dry time taking) the blistring of the tongue proceeding of heate. The hearbe also tempered with vineger, and anointed neare and about the eies, doth in short time remoue the spots in them.

The Mint in cold sicknesses, yeldeth a mighty comforting, reioyceth the mind, and stayeth the wil to vomit. The iuice after the mixing with vineger and brimstone, anointed with a feather on the Shingles doth with expedition cease the paine.

The hearb boiled in wine, asswageth the paine of the bowels and kidneis, and boiled in Wine with Oile, being applied in plaster forme, doth both dissolue and cure impostumes.

The Physicke benefits of the Holyhoke, do here ensue.

THe Mallows of the garden or holyhoke, is the like moist by nature, as the other kindes of Mallowes, and serueth as well to outward as inward griefes.

The hearbe, rote, or seedes boiled either in milke or wine, and orderly drunke, do remoue a hot cough, recouer the Lungs blistered, and is a singular remedy against the consumption of the Lunges.

The holyhoke boiled either in water or wine, and tempered with hony and Alum, if the same decoction be gargelled and holden for a time in the mouth, doth speedily cure the blisters and putrified sores of the mouth and throte.

The leaues of the holyhoke, after the boiling with meate, eaten with sallet oile and a little salt, loseth the bellie and amendeth the horesenesse of voice: the rot and hearbe boiled vnto the consumption in a maner of the water, will leaue a clamminesse aboue, which applied on any impostume, ripeneth and softneth the hardnes of the same.

The commended helps of the distilled water of the Holyhoke.

THe distilled water of the Holyhoke Roses (in Balneo Mariæ) gargelled or applied without with linnen clothes, is greatly commended for the breakings out of the mouth, and profiteth as wel against the outward as inward heats: besides, cureth the shingles and vlcers of the throte, and all other swellings.

The said water often drunke, is a precious water vnto al inward heats of Feuers, in ỳ the same coleth & softneth al impostumes of the Lunges.

Lungs and sides. It healeth and mitigateth the perilous flixe Dysenteria, the hot swellings of womens places, the kidneis and bladder.

This asswageth the paine of the bladder, expelleth the stone, purgeth the kidneis and bladder, being drunke for a time morning and euening.

The water applied on the temples in a hot Feuer, procureth sleepe if the feete of the patient in a hot Feuer be bathed with it, procureth rest, and ceaseth thirst.

The commended benefits of the distilled water of Mints.

THe hearb with the stalks finely shred, ought diligently be distilled in Balneo Mariæ about the middle of May.

The water drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantity of three ounces at at ime, strengthneth the stomacke, and digesteth the meat receiued. The water drunke in the same manner, profiteth against the stopping of the Liuer and Milt. It openeth also the waies of vrine, as the kidneis and bladder.

The water in like maner drunke, procureth an appetite to meat, stayeth belching and vomiting, the like doth this applied without on the stomacke. The mouth often washed with the same, recouereth a stinking breath, and putred gummes.

The water drunke, stayeth sounding and giddinesse of the head. If any taking a slice of Barley bread, and steeping it in this water, tempered with wine or vineger, shal apply the same warme to the Nostrils, the sauor incontinent yeldeth a marueilous refreshing and strengthning of the feeble person.

The water in like quantite drunke, purgeth the Matrice, and a linnen cloth wet in it warm, and applied to the priuy place, like preuaileth. The water applied on hard pappes, dissolueth the Milke curded in them, the same for a time drunke, healeth the ruptures within, both of olde and yong persons. The water after the mixing with Rue and the Coliander, gargelled in the mouth, restoreth the Vuula fallen. If of the hearbe steeped in Lie, be washed on the scabs of children, it helpeth them speedily.

This

This drunke, profiteth against wormes, drunk with Wine comforteth and heateth a cold stomacke.

What care and skill is required in the sowing and workemanly ordering of the Artochoke. Chap. 13.

THe Herbarians write the Artochoke to be a kind of Thistle, of them named, the Thistle of the Garden.

The Artochoke which before grew wilde in the fieldes, came by diligence (for the benefit of sale) to be carefully bestowed in the Garden, where through trauell, brought from his wildenesse, to serue vnto the vse of the mouth and belly. The Artochoke growing with thicke scaly eares, in forme to the pine apple, and sufficiently knowen to most persons, ioyeth in a lose and dunged earth, yet the same better commeth forward, being bestowed in a fatte ground, and by that meanes defended from Moles, as the worthie Rutilius reporteth, but sowne in a fast earth after their growth, be not so lightly digged vp of an enemy. The said Rutilius willeth the sædes of the Artochoke, to bee commited to the Earth in the moneth of March, the Mone then encreasing of light, and that in beddes well dunged, and workmanly prepared, which bestow in the earth halfe a foote asunder, yet these not dæpe put, and in such maner deale with the sædes, that taking so many vp, as you may handsomely with thræ fingers thrust or set those vnto the middle ioynts in the earth, couering them lightly with lose Earth, which if hot weater happen to ensue, the Gardener with diligence must water the plants for a time, for the plants on such wise handled, will yælde a tenderer fruite and fuller head, as the worthy Varro reporteth, yet may not the owner hope or looke for fruites or heads, to come to their full growth and perfitnesse for the eating in the first yeare. If the Gardener would bestow sædes to profit, hæ ought to make little furrowes on the bedde, well a foote distant one from the other, beeing in bredth and dæpenesse of halfe a foote, which after fill with olde dung finely broken, and blacke earth in like manner small, in which so handled, bestow the sædes to the depth of the middle ioynts, and after couer them lightly with fine Earth, not pressing or treading it downe. And as sone as the plants

haue yelded forth leaues sufficient great, the owner ought to water them often, and to continue the like watering in a ground very drie, vntill the hearbs yeld or send forth heads both tender and sufficient big, when the plants shall be well growne vp, the Gardener must cense and purge daily the beds of weeds, and dung al about the roots of the plants (if hee will credit Columella) store of ashes, for this kind of dung the said Author reporteth to be most apt and agreeable to that pot-hearbe, of which by the kinde of the dung, this hearbe taketh the Latine name.

The owner or Gardener must haue a speciall care, that he bestow not the seedes in the earth with the contrary ends downeward, for these will bring forth Artochokes crooked, weake and very small, if we may credit the Neapolitane Rutilius. If the owner would haue the hearb yeld heads or Artochokes without prickles, he must (after the instructions of the Greeke writers of husbandry) either breake the sharpe ends of the seedes, or make blunt the prickes (before the bestowing in the earth) on some stone rubbed: which also many affirme to come to passe, if the Gardener paring off the rind of the Lettuce roote, & threading or cutting ỳ same into many smal pieces, doeth after the bestowing of the seedes into each piece, diligently set these a foote distance asunder, will after yeld heads the like.

The Gardener shall possesse Artochokes of pleasant sauour, if he lay the seedes to steepe for three daies before the sowing, in the iuice of the Rose, or Lilly, or oile of Bales, made with the sweet Almonds, or in any other pleasant iuice or liquor, which after ỳ drying in the aire from the Sun beames, he cõmitteth them to ỳ earth, for on such wise handled, the fruits yeld the same sauour as the liquor in which the seeds were soked and receiued. For by a like example, the heads shal sauour of the Bay, if the owner steepe them with the leaues of the Bay tree, or he otherwise making holes bestow the seedes within the Bayberries, before the committing to the earth: and a like practise may he exercise in all seedes that be great.

The fruits of the hearb named the Artochoke, wil become sweet & delectable in ỳ eating, if ỳ owner (before the committing of the seeds to the earth) do steepe them two or three daies, either in new milke, hony, sugred water, or wine aromatized, & after the drying in ỳ aire, doth then bestow them in beds a foot distance one from the other: the

Artochokes

Artochokes be set in harueſt, which is about the moneth of October, that theſe may yeld plenty of fruits or heads, ought to be thoſe bearing big leaues and ſtalks, with big ſtems growne or ſhot vp in the middeſt: which big leaues after ſerue to none other purpoſe, but to be broken from the bodies, and the plants to be beſtowed againe in beds, with ſtems in like maner cut off and caſt away, as ſeruing to no vſe, well turned in with dung: theſe ſet in ſuch maner, that ye tenderer leaues grow vpright, and the ſtemmed in the midle being low broken off, to be diligently couered with light earth. And heerein the Gardener muſt haue a care to the watering of them, at times needefull, if the ſeaſons ſufficiently moiſt not, either in the winter, or in any other time of the yeare, to ſet forward or procure ſpedily the Artochokes to come: and ſet againe the tender plants in well dunged beds, couering them well about with Aſhes and black earth, the better to beare and ſuffer the cold winter time, which in the yeare following will yeld new fruits.

Many ſkilfull Authors write, that if the leaues of ye Artochoke be well couered in the ground, about the beginning of winter, they wil after become not onely white, but pleaſanter in the eating, whereby to ſerue among the winter meates.

Here I thinke it profitable to the owner to know, that ye big leaues or branches ought yearely to be broken off, from the old ſtemmes or bodies, leſt the elder in their yeld might be hindred, and the yonger plants in farther diſtances ſet, that theſe may proſper and ſend forth their fruits the better, for ſuch is the fruitfull and plentifull yelde of this plant, that ye branches or great leaues broken off from the tender ſtems, and ſet againe in the earth, wil after cleaue & ioyne together, as certaine report, and oftentimes to yelde in the ſame yeare, both the ſtem and outward roughnes with prickes on it. The ſkilful writers of the Greke husbandry will, that the owner or Gardener in the opening & digging away of the earth, to cut them vp with a ſharpe hoke, leauing ſome part of the root in the earth, which ſo pulled vp, and anointing the rote with ſoft dung, ſet againe in a well laboured ground, turned in with olde dung wel three foote aſunder, and often water them when the drie ſeaſon commeth, vntill the plants ſhall be ſufficiently ſtrengthned in the earth.

Thoſe which the Gardener mindeth to let run or grow vnto ſeed,

such shall be seperate from the yong plants, as Palladius willeth, and couer the heads either with a thinne Pot-shard, or Barke of a tree, in that the seedes are commonly wont to be corrupted through the Sunne or showres of raine, and by that meanes these to perish and come to no vse, which if the seedes be either burnt with the Sunne, or putrified with the moisture of showres, will after yeld to the Gardener no commoditie in the bestowing in the earth.

The owner or Gardener may not gather the fruits of the Artochokes all at one time, forasmuch as the heads ripen not together, but one after the other, so that the owner ought then to gather the fruits, when as these onely haue flowres below in forme of a garland, not before that time, wherefore if the Gardener do stay vntill all the flowres be shedde, the fruits will be the worser, and lesser delectable in the eating.

The Gardener must carefully loke vnto, that the Mice hant not to the rootes of the Artochokes, for once allured through the pleasant taste of them, they after resort in great number from farre places, to the marueilous spoile of the rootes, as the Greeke Varro in his worthy instructions of husbandry hath diligently noted, yet not leauing the same without a helpe and remedy: for he reporteth, that the sharpe assault and enterprise of them is withstanded and driuen away, if the Gardener either lappe Wool about the rootes, or Swines dunge, or bestow the Figge-tree ashes in the like maner about them.

The Moles in like maner doe marueilously harme, and be iniurious to the rootes, insomuch that through their often casting, and hollowing of the ground, the hollow plants are procured to fall or leane through feblenesse in the earth, for remedy of which annoyance, the Gardener may either bring vp and learne a yong Cat, or tame a Weasill, to hant daily in those places.

There be which set the plants of the Artochoke in a fast and dry ground, to the end the Moles should not so lightly in their working ouerthrow them.

The owner which would vnderstand and know other helps, let him resort vnto those experiments, which we haue vttered in the first part.

The

The Physicke benefits and helps of the Artochoke.

THe Artochoke eaten gréene or raw with vineger, reformeth the sauour of the mouth, the Eares and scaly kernels, cleuing or sticking round about the head, being tenderly boiled (after the manner of the Sperage) from which after the liquor poured, the Eares againe boyled with Butter, and seasoned with Vineger, and Salt, doe yélde a delectable sauce with meate right profitable.

There be some, which rather eate the Eares raw then sodden, being afore prepared with Salt, and the fine pouder of pepper or Coliander séeds strawed vpon, for by that meanes (as they affirme) is the naturall swéetnesse of them more kindly and delectably represented and felt.

Certaine report, that the Eares stéeped onely in wine, to cause vrine and moue the veneriall act, as the worthie Hesiodus reporteth, which (as Ruellius hath noted) at the bearing of the flowre, the Grashoppers then doe loudest sing, and women grédiest to the veneriall act, but men at the same time slowest.

The rote (after cleane scraping and kéeping forth of the Pith) boiled in Wine, and drunke, not onely amendeth the hardnesse of making water, but the rancke sauour and stinking smel of the armeholes, which Xenocrates affirmeth of experience, to send forth on such wise the stinke of the vrine, caused by the heat of the smal pocks, or any other occasion.

The Artochoke tenderly boiled and eaten, is said to strengthen the stomacke, and helpe somewhat the priuie places, that men children may be cõceiued, as the Athenian Cherias, & Glaucias affirm.

The worthy Galen reporteth, the meate of the Artochoke to be of an euill nourishment, and incommodious to the stomacke, especially when the same shalbe hard at the first yélding of the flowre, for then the Eares possesse a great quantitie of cholericke iuice in them, which for the same, ought rather to be eaten boiled then raw: yet some be of this minde that the yonger heades, tender and full of iuice, being prepared (as afore taught) may with the more delight and lesser harme be eaten.

What skill and diligence is to be learned in sowing, and workemanly ordering, both of Endiue and Succorie.

Chap. 14.

THe Endiue, otherwise named the Succorie or sowre Lettuce, seruetb rather for the vse of Medicine, then for other purposes, so that by a trauell caused to grow acceptable in the Garden, forasmuch as this of it selfe by nature is euermore sowre, although it be a kinde of the Lettuce, which ought often to bee remoued and changed into sundrie places, that the nature of it may on such wise be altered, with lesser trauell to the Gardener.

The Endiue thus bestowed in Beddes, may well abide the colde season of winter, wherefore in colde countries, this better agreeth to be sowen neare the end of Harueſt, and well growen vp, to be remoued and laid againe in the earth, that these in the lying, may on such wise become white, if so be (before the couering) the hearbes be strewed ouer with riuer sand, and often watered (if not holpen by showers of raine) which then couer with light earth, letting these so rest vntill by a diligence in the watering, they become sufficiently white for Sallets, or other purposes: the yong plants of the Endiue are not to be remoued, before that foure leaues be sufficiently sprung vp, and these cut at the endes of the rootes, as well as the toppes of the leaues, with soft Cow-dung anointed about the rootes, before the bestowing in the earth, which lightly couered, water so long, vntill the plants be sufficiently strong in the earth.

The Succory is of the nature of the Endiue, which in like maner retaineth the proper bitternesse, being not like remoued and ordered as the Endiue: this desireth moist ground, and the earth to be well laboured, when foure leaues be come vp: the plants after the remouing, ought againe to be set in a well dunged earth, and that these may yeld faire, large, and long leaues, let the owner after the leaues be somewhat more shot vp, or on the middle of them lay a piece of a Tilestone, for by the waight of the same will the leaues spread out, and enioy more tufts or grow thicker. By this workemanly ordering, will the bitternesse of the leaues be remoued, and they aptly serue in the winter time for the vse of the Sallets, if so be

be the plants be set againe in the end of August, or rather in the beginning of September, when the leaues are shot vp big, & in pulling vp, the earth not knocked off the roots, but with soft Cow-dung the roots gently annointe about, and bestowed after in beds well turned in with dung.

The leaues laid along in well dunged beddes (to be white) couer so ouer with lose earth that the roots may lie vpward; and ouer them, lying a long in the earth, make some couerture in the forme of a harboring place, or rather strew vpon them the chaffe of corne, for the better defence of the cold and bitter windes.

Certaine report that the like may be purchased, if the owner after certaine leaues of the Succory shotte vp, bindeth together with a browne thred, and coureth them after with a pot of earth, to the end that those may daily drawe by the rootes a nourishment from the earth, which by the same meanes shall purchase both a whiteneſſe and tenderneſſe, and lose a great part of the proper sowreneſſe.

The Physicke helps both of the Endiue and Succorie.

THe Endiue which by another name is termed the wilde Lettuce, is reported to be cold and drie in the second degree, and of this only the leaues and seede serue to the vse of Physick, yet are the leaues brought apt to be eaten in Sallets.

The rote by the consent of all writers, is to little vse, therefore in our time seldome applied in medicine.

The greene leaues exercised in medicine, are to great purpose, but the drie preuaile little or nothing at all.

The greene serue to comfort, for which cause they preuaile against the stopping of the Liuer and Milt, through the occasion of choler, and these like preuaile against a simple and double Tertian, and against the heat of the Liuer, and against hotte or burning impostumes eaten either sodden, or raw with Vineger: the Sirupe made of the decoction of the hearbe with Suger, auaileth in all the aboueſaid.

The iuice or Sirupe giuen with Ruberb, about the fourth or first day

day after digestion of the matter, greatly preuaileth for the heate of the Liuer, and a burning impostume, the said hearbe or iuice applied in plaster forme, greatly auaileth. If the leaues can not be had, then vse the seedes bruised and boiled, applying it to the same hotte places, which greatly profiteth.

The iuice of leaues applied on hot pushes, qualifieth and drawetb forth the heate of them, the hearbe bruised and laid on hot impostumes greatly helpeth. The hearbe applied on the left pap with vineger, mightily profiteth the Cardiacke passion, the same on the bellie staieth the flixe.

The Sirupe made of the Endiue and Harts tongue, preuaileth against the kings euil, the hearb applied in plaster forme, with Ceruse and Vineger, healeth the shingles, hot impostumes, and swellings: the iuice applied with vineger and Rose water on the temples, asswageth the headache: the drinking of the iuice euerie second day, recouereth the spitting of blood, and asswageth the excesse of Sperme: the iuice is effectuously anointed with Cherule and vineger on all parts, which are healed by cooling.

The Succory is of a drie and cold qualitie, yet somewhat more then the Endiue, this hearbe (as Ægeneta reporteth, is both of cooling and drying in the first degree, and hath also the vertue of binding.

The hearbe bruised with the roote, and round Trochises or flatte Bals made of the same, which after dissolued in Rosewater, and annointed on scabbed places, doth both cure them, and causeth a fairer skin. If any vse this potion, made with the iuice of Cichorie, Endiue, and Harts tongue, to which a quantity of Suger added, in the boiling with water and a little vineger, doeth in short time recouer the stopping of the Liuer and Milt, so that pils of Ruberb be after ministred, & the comforting Electuary of the three Sanders taken.

If any prepareth this plaster made of Serapium, and Myrre, of each a like weight, to which the oyle of Camamill and Hony in like proportion added, and the same applied warme to the womans priuy place, doth on such wise purge the Matrice, that she may after conceiue with childe. And in proper purgings of the women (as Pliny reporteth) the decoction of the hearb in water so much preuaileth, that it draweth forth the dead yongling.

The

The iuice of the hearbe boyled, and ministred, looseth the bellie, helpeth the Liuer, kidneis, and stomacke: boyled in vinegar remoueth the bering paine of the vrine, yea the kinges euill, applyed with Oilse or water and honny, if it be without a Feuer.

The Cychory taken with vinegar (as Dioscorides reporteth) is profitable to the stomacke, for that the same in meate assuageth the heate and infirmities of the same. And by it selfe applyed, and with barly meale layed plaister-wise on the region of the heart, greatly helpeth, in the plague: and in burning Agues the same is to be vsed to great purpose. It also qualifieth pestilent pushes, if the water of the decoction of the same be applyed on the places, with linnen cloths. The floure throwne into a pismires hill, soone after becommeth as red as bloud.

The hearbe boyled in wine, and taken with meate, is very profitable to the stomacke, in that the same helpeth digestion: the floures bruised with the rootes, and applyed in plaister forme to the Coute, do incontinent assuage the paine of the same proceeding of heate. This plaister applyed to the shingles, doth marueloussy remoue the nughtie heate.

The commended vertues of the distilled water both of the Endiue and Cychorie.

THe time aptest for the distilling of Endiue, is in the end of May, the leaues (before the distilling) plucked from the stemmes, and finely shred.

The Endiue water drunke vnto the quantitie of two ounces at a time both morning and euening, profiteth the straightnes and stopping of the breast: in the same maner drunke, is auaileable to women with childe in that this doth strengtheneth them, & amendeth senses.

The Endiue water mixed with the water of Plantein, Rose water, and the white Sief without Opium, of which an ointment made after arte, doth in short time recouer vlcers distempered of a hotte matter, and especially those happning on the priuities.

The said water with the iuice of March Mallow rootes, oyle of Roses and Camomil, Saffron, barly meale, and the yolkes of egges

mired altogither ouer the fier, and applied in plaister forme, is a present remedie, both for the goute of the hands and feete.

The Endiue water drunk vnto the quantitie of foure or fiue ounces at a time, both morning and euening, recouereth the plague, expelleth or putteth away the kinges euill, ceaseth thirst, and in good quantitie drunke asswageth the heat of the Liuer.

This helpeth the stitch in the side, and a pricking felt about the heart, drunke vnto the quantitie of three or foure ounces at a time, both morning and euening, a linnen cloth or bolster of hempe applied on a hot Liuer, qualifieth the heate, or in what part of the body the like hapneth: but as the linnen clothes war dry, euermore to wette them in this water.

The best time for distilling the Cichorie, is in the middle of May, the hearbe and the roote to be finely shred, before the distilling in a tin Limbecke.

The water of Cychorie drunke vnto the quantity of two ounces at a time, both morning and euen, and at Noone, or taken with drink in this maner, remoueth the heate of the stomacke, This drunk in the like maner or applied with linnen cloathes on the region of the heart, both comforteth and strengthneth the heart and stomacke.

And as this applyed with linnen clothes on the Liuer, asswageth the heat of it, so it openeth the stopping of the same. This drunk in the said maner, preserueth the creature from the plague. This like auaileth for Carbuncles, either drunke, or applied with linnen clothes on the places: this also often drunke, stayeth the rysing of the lunges vnto the throate: and stoppeth the perillous flixe Disenteria.

The water in like quantitie drunke, openeth the stopping of Liuer and Milt: this gargelled in the mouth and drunke, helpeth the swelling of the Vuula and throte, it helpeth also wasted members if those be often bathed with the same and drunke in like condition or applied with linnen clothes, helpeth the bite of a venemous beast.

The flowres after the gathering in the morning, distilled in Balneo Mariæ and orderly applied, seruetb vnto diuers impediments of the eyes, as vnto the vlcers of them, the mistinesse or dimnesse of sight, the Pinne, web, and spots in the eyes, and vnto many other like griefes.

What

What care, skill, and secrets to be learned in the sowing, and workmanly ordering of the Lettuce. Chap. 15

THe Garden Lettuce desireth a well laboured ground, fat, moyst and dunged, appearing for the more parte by the fourth day aboue the Earth, so that the seede in the earth be not burned of the sunne, or the ground vnfruitfull: the seede may be committed to the Earth, all the yeare through if the place for the growing shall be battle, dunged and moyst. The Seedes may be sowen in beddes thicke togither, and in the month of March or beginning of Aprill, in that the tender plantes cannot indure the nipping frostes nor cold ayre. The seedes which the owner bestoweth in beddes in the moneth of September, will be so hardned for the winter time, that the plantes may well endure to be remoued and set at any time, and watered for two or three daies togither, vnlesse these be otherwise moistened with the dayly and sweete showres of the ayre. And in committing of the seedes to the Earth, the owner ought to haue a care for watering of the beds least the heat consisting in the dung, breatheth or casteth the seedes forth of the Earth.

The plantes risen or sprung vp well foure or fiue leaues aboue the Earth, ought then to be remooued and sette againe into a fatte ground, a good distance one from the other, and to water them well at the Rootes, so that it freese not, nor the season be verye hotte.

The owner or Gardener may not remooue (to set againe) the small or common Lettuces, but the greater which will become crisped and thicke (named of diuers, the Romane Lettuce) that yeeldeth white and farre bigger seedes: these if the Gardener bestoweth againe in beddes, will shoote vp farre layzer, and greater in Tuffe, and taste pleasanter, if he especially breake away the first leaues before the setting of them in beddes, forasmuch as the first outward stalkes haue much milke in them, which will lightly become bitter through the heate of the sunne.

If the owner would possesse faire and white Lettuces, he ought to

binde the leaues vp togither with a threede, well two daies before the plucking vp and setting againe in other beddes: which so done, he must straw thicke ouer, with riuer or sea sand, which the worthy Plinie seemeth onely to ascribe to those which yeeld the white sedes, whose nature is such, that they best indure the colde winter. But if these through the default of the place, season, or seedes, ware hard, the Gardener may procure the plantes to grow tender, by plucking them vp, and setting them in well wrought beddes.

The Lettuce spread into a breadth, if so be the owner either setteth it asunder, or when it is growne into bigge leaues, the toppes gently cut off, it be pressed downe with a turffe of earth, Tile, or Potshard, whereby it may the lesse shoot vp into a stemme. For thorough the waight thus laid vppon, the plant kept vnder, is forced to creepe, and shed forth into a breadth, as the singular Florentinus in the Greeke husbandry, and after him Columella, to these Plinie and the worthy Neapolitan Rutilius vtter.

The Lettuces are caused to grow broad, round, thicke of leaues, crisped, and low by the earth, if the plantes remooued when they bee shot vp a hand-breadth, be after the cutting away of the hairy rootes annointed well about with new Cow dung, and in heaping the earth well about them, be often watered: and assoone as these are growne to a more strength, to clip the tops of the leaues off with a sharp paire of sheeres, and to couer them with pots of earth new filled, in such manner that the tops beaten or pressed downe, may growe tufted round vp, and white, as the said Florentinus (in his greeke instructions of husbandry) reporteth that he did.

If the owner mindeth to inioy Lettuces sweet in taste and smell, let him (two dayes before the pulling vp) binde vp the toppes of the leaues hard togither, for by that meanes in the farther growing, will the plantes be the fayrer, sweeter, and whiter. Heerein remembring that at the tying (on such wise) of the plantes, and they stronger growne, to be then pressed downe, as afore taught, with either Tile or potshard or Turffe of earth.

The skilfull Florentinus (doth also affirme) that the plantes may be caused to grow sweete & pleasant in smell, if ỳ owner bestoweth of the lettuce seeds, into the citron sedes, before the cõmitting to ỳ earth,

which

which likewise the Gardener may performe, by infusing the seeds in either damaske or muske water, for certaine daies.

Here I thinke it not impertinent to the matter, to recite in this place the maruelous deuise of Aristoxenus Cyreneus: this man as Plinie writeth, leauing his proper countrey, for the ernest desire he had to Philosophie, & seeing a felicitie in banqueting dishes, watred at euening diuers Lettuces (as they grew on the earth) with Wine and honny mixed together, & with the same licour so long filled thē, vntill the hearbs had sufficiently drunke: which after hee had left them vnto the next morow, boasted that he had purchased delicates from the earth: this no doubt a worthy inuention for a proper banquet, but no philosophie consisting in it, therefore leauing further to report of this, we will return to our former matter.

The Lettuce obtaineth a tenderer leafe, or the leaues become the tenderer, if the root (as a foresaid) be diligently ānointed about with the best Cow-dung, and watred at needfull times with riuer or running water, or ỳ tops of ỳ leaues, as I afore wrot, tied close togither with a thread, well two dayes before the pulling vp & setting againe.

If the Gardener desire to haue a plant to grow of a marueilous forme, and diuers in taste, he shall with an easie cost and light trauaile (as the skilfull Greek Didimus reporteth) performe the same; if he will properly make a hole into a round pellet made of Goates dung, and into the same put of the Lettuce, Cresses, Basill, Rocket, and Radish seedes (as the like Rutilius writeth) and that ball wrapped in dung, be bestowed in a well laboured earth: the furrowe not being deepe, and soft dung laid ouer, with the light earth: and this often and gently (or by little and little) sprinkled with water: for the radish shooting downe performeth the roote, but the other seedes into a heigth, the Lettuce rysing withall, and eache yeelding the plant in their propper taste.

There be some which in two or three terdiles of the Goate or sheepe bruised, and made vp into a ball, bestowe the foresaid seedes, and tying this in a linnen cloth, do set it into the earth, with the like care and dilligence, as aboue is vttered.

Many of the Latin writers of husbandrie taught the same in an other maner, by gathering whole leaues of the Lettuce, growing next to the roote, in the hollow pittes and places of which leaues, ỳ owner

to bestowe, except the Radish (as Rutilius writeth) or the Parsley (as Ruellius instructeth) all the aforenamed seeds, which leaues annointed about with soft dung to be set into a wel dunged ground, and the seedes diligently couered ouer with earth.

If any would possesse Lettuces for the Winter turne, he ought to conserue thē (as Columella instructeth) after this maner, in plucking first away the outward leaues round about, that the tender leaues left apparant and vncouered, might well be salted in an earthen pot or other vessell, and left couered for a day and a night, after such maner, vntill these with the helpe of the salte, yeelded forth a Brine.

The Brine throughly purged away with fresh water, & the licour pressed forth of the leaues, to let them lye abroad on a Lettuce, vntill the leaues be sufficient drie, then to strew the dry Dill, and Fennell on them: after this to lay the heapes or handfuls of the Lettuces into the vessell againe, on which to powre the licour made of two parts of vinegar and one of the Brine: after this, so to thrust downe the whole substance with a drie thickening, that the licour may flote and appeare well aboue all, which on such wise ordered, must dilligently be tended vppon, that as often as the substance aboue seemeth to lye bare & vncouered, to fill alwaies vp with the said licour, but with a Spunge keepe cleane the lips and outside of the pot, washed diligently about with fresh Conduit water, and this so often vse, as neede shall require.

The phisicke benefits and helpes of the Lettuce.

THe Lettuce coleth and moisteneth in the second degree: Aegineta affirmeth that the Lettuce both manifestly cooleth and moisteneth through which it procureth sleepe, and as the same among other pot hearbes greatly nourisheth, euen so is it a worker and causer of good bloud.

Certain report that Augustus Cæsar by vsing of the lettuce in that time of his sickenes recouered health: and no maruell, in that the same helpeth digestion, and ingendreth better bloud then any of the pot-hearbes: the Lettuce found by experience to be cōmodious to the stomacke, procureth also sleepe, looseth the belly, & causeth plentifulnesse of milke in the breasts: the Lettuce seede giueth to Nurses the

the plentifulnes of milke, & sharpneth the sight being taken in drinke: the same drunke in wine procureth sleepe: a plaster only made of the Lettuce, and aplied on hot impostumes & the Shingles, doth mightily coole: the Lettuces sodden and mixed with the Oliue, receiued inward by potion, doth helpe in short time the dropsie.

The iuce of the Lettuce annointed on the fore-head of him that hath the feuer, and cannot sleepe, procureth rest and sleepe to the patient (as the skilfull Florentinus writeth) which also affirmeth, that a man shall not be ouercome with drinke, if he afore eate with a fasting stomacke, greene Lettuce.

To these he addeth the seedes of the Lettuce bruised and drunke, to stay ý shedding of Sperm, for which cause this is profitably taken or drunk against ý night pollutions, hapning to many yong persons.

The author besides vttereth, that the Lettuce laid vnder the couerlet, the sicke person not knowing thereof, and gathered after this maner, as with the left hand pulled vp by the roote before the sunne rising, doth soone after cause sleepe. A like to this he reporteth, if fiue, three, or one leafe be laid priuily vnder the bolster of the sicke, but in such maner, that the bigger end of the stalke and leafe lye to the feet-ward, and the top and smaller end to the head.

Here learne, that the plentifull and dayly eating of the Lettuce of married persons, is verry inconmmodious and noysome to them, as the Greeke writers of husbandry haue noted, in that the same (as they write) not onely doth diminish the fruitfulnes of children, but ý children after borne, do become idle, foolish, & peuish persons: but ý phisitions in our time write contrary: for they say ý lettuce neither do th increase euill bloud, nor the same throughly perfit, yet is ý lettuce (by their agreement) worthier then the other potheards, for the lettuce is preferred (as Galen writeth) & not without good reasō to other herbs in that there is none knowne or found to be of better nourishment.

This also in the Sommer time (as the same Author writeth) is a gratefull and profitable meat, forasmuch as by nature it cooleth: this ministred to hot and cholericke stomackes, is marueleusly auaileable: yet the often vse dulleth the sight of the eies, & procureth a moistnesse, yea & abateth the desire of the veneriall act: this also throughe the often eating greatly harmeth such fetching the winde short, spitting vp of bloud, and the flegmaticke: this herb besides too often & much vsed

(as wel

(aswell sodden as raw) is no lesse perillous then the eating of ẏ hemlocke: the Lettuce in the sommer time is vsed rather for phisick sake, then for the proper nourishment which it yeeldeth, as vnto the moystening and cooling: yet this seeing it may be discerned cold, who nœdeth to doubt, that it can ingender in any manner sound and pure blood in vs? for the substance of it common to vs, which is both milkie and sweet, and to these meanly digested, is for the same readily & lightly changed into blood: the Lettuce therefore eaten moderately, doth procure in vs good blood, and helpeth many times the tertian ague, and the hearbe is saide to loose the belly, in that this through the proper moisture and coldnes, both cooleth and temperetb the immoderate heat of the liuer, which notwithstanding for the speedie and vehement distribution and carrying away of the meate & drinke, is many times wont to binde the belly: the hearb eaten either rawe, or boyled with vinegar and sugar, doth dissolue the stopping of the Milt and Liuer, yet eaten raw in much quantity is sayde to trouble the sight, and both harme the eyes, and cause a miskinesse that thickneth and dulleth the visiue spirrits, and causeth the Christaline humor troubled, and offendeth the animall spirite through the proper coldnesse consisting in it.

Many vse the Lettuce before it be risen into a stalke, boyling it in water or broath, which likewise (the worthie Galen reporteth) that he did in his old age, yet not eating the same before the boyling, for the hardnesse which he found to ensue by the eating of it raw. notwithstanding the saide Galen in young age vsed the raw Lettuce to represse the heate of the choller in the stomacke: but when he came to old age, he vsed to eate the Lettuce boyled at supper, to procure the sweeter and longer sleepe in the night: so that the Lettuce boyled and eaten at supper, or at the houre of going to bed, was to him a singular remedie to cause a quiet sleepe.

The ancient vsed not to eate the Lettuce at the beginning of supper but at the latter end, ẏ reason of which was, that seeing the Lettuce, (as we haue aforesaid) is of a cold and moist nature therefore the eating of the same at the end of supper, & mixed with the other dainties in the stomack, it causeth the sonner and sounder sleepe in the night, and this the readier represseth the vaporous fumes of heady wine, and drunkennes; also it is the sooner mastred and stayed through the

mightie

mightie moistening of the braine. The Lettuce seeds bruised, and mixed with the white of an Egge and womans milke, applyed in plaster forme on the temples or forehead warme, at the going to rest, dooth maruelously procure sleepe: A like to this dooth the iuice of the Lettuce, and womans milke, of each a like quantitie, to which halfe an ounce of white Poppy seed bruised, applie warme on the forehead.

The Seede bruised and drunke, ceaseth the often imaginations of the veneriall act in sleepe, and represseth the desire of the naturall act.

The worthy Phisitions in our time haue deuised a more healthfull way for the eating of rawe Lettuce, at dinners and suppers, in the Summer time, by mixing with it vinegar, oyle Oliue and Salt. (which so prepared) ioyning with other meates on the table, that the same may stir vp the feeble appetite, caused by great heate, and both temper the burning of bloud, and mittigate the heate of the liuer and heart, notwithstanding the hearb in this maner prepared, ought warily to be vsed, seeing the immoderate vse of the hearbe (as afore vttered) doth extinguish the earnest will to the veneriall act.

The maried persons (desiring the procreation of children) ought soberly and measurably feed on the lettuce, but to the Cholericke persons this hearb is not denied, so that the coldenesse of it with Rocket, Cresses, Mintes, Maioram, and such like bee afore tempered, to the apter cooling of their stomacks.

The commended vertues of the distilled water of Lettuce.

THe Garden Lettuce gathered about the middle of Maye, ought after the finely shredding, to be distilled with a soft fier either in Balneo Mariæ, or a Tin Limbecke. This water of the crisped or Garden Lettuce drunk to the quantity of two ounces at a time, both morning and euening, profiteth the Liuer, in that by nature it coleth and comforteth the same, and coleth the bloud inflamed. The water in like maner drunke, stayeth the perrilous flure Disenteria, & other vehement Fluxes of the belly, this amendeth the trembling of members, and helpeth those which cannot quietly sleepe: this annointed on the temples of the head, and pulses of the hands, procureth sleepe.

The water drunke, helpeth women lacking milk, if they either

take it alone or in drink, for on such wise, this procureth store of milk in the breasts. The water ceaseth and amendeth a hotte and dry cough taken in drinke, mollifieth the throate, cleanseth the breast and lungs, ceaseth thirst, tempereth the heat of the stomacke, liuer, and kidneis, this besides in good quantitie taken, loseth the belly.

What care and skill is required in the sowing and ordering of the Purselane and Rocket. Chap. 16.

THe Garden Purselane, how diligently the same is bestowed, so much the larger it spreadeth on the earth, and yeelderh the thicker leafe. This desireth to be sowen in February, March, April, May, and June, and in no other times, for this hearbe cannot well indure the colde season. This plentifully yeelideth and spreadeth, being bestowed in beddes well turned in with olde dung, or in ground verry fat of it selfe, or otherwise sowen amongst Colewortes, Onions and Leekes. And after these haue ioyed a yeare in the Garden, they will yearly come vp, without paines to the Gardener, of the owne accord, yet the hearbes desire euery yeare, to be often watered, to the end that these may yeeld the bigger Tuffe, and thicker leafe.

The seedes ought to be sowen vnder the shadow of trees, and in an Harbourre where trées grow not too thicke, for these otherwise bestowed vnder a thicke shadowe, grow thinne and small of leafe. The Purselane is one of the Garden hearbes, serued first in Sallets, with Oyle, Vineger, and a little Salt, as well at the mean, as rich mens tables, yea this for a daintie dish with many serued first at the table in the winter time, preserued after this manner.

The greatest stemmes and leaues of the Purselane without roots were gathered in that the smaller steeped (lightly decayed and withered) and these with water clearely and throughly cleansed from the fine Sande, hanging on, and the filthie or corrupt leaues if any such were, cleane purged away, and these so long they dried in the shadow, vntill they were somwhat withered, for otherwise (through the plentie of moisture) they either moulded or rotted in the lying. After these were they infused in verluce made of sowre grapes, strewed thicke ouer with greene Fennel bestowed in an earthen pot glazed within,

or

or for the lacke of it, in a sweet vessell of wood: after this, the whole sprinkled well ouer with Salt, laying greene Fennel againe ouer the Salt, and sundry courses of Purselane, with Salt and Fennell bestowed to the filling vp of the pot, & ouer the vpper bed of Purselane again, a thick course of green Fennel strewed, which setled the whole mixture downe into the pot.

These being done, the licoure which was tempered or mixed with two parts of vineger, and one of veriuice made of grapes was poured vpon, in such order and so full, that the same reached vp to the brimme or lip of the vessell. The same prickle or sauce at the end, close couered with a lidde, was set vp in a place to be preserued far from the beames of the Sunne comming, least the substance through the standing of the place, might gather a vinew or mouldines ouer the same: which also as they affirme may be auoyded, if the Purselane be not suffered to ly floting aboue, but alwaies couered well ouer with the licoure: when they vsed and serued it at the table, they afore clensed it with warme water or wine, and pouring sweet Oile on the Purselane, they set it as a first dish on the table, to procure an appetite to the guests set downe to meat. The Rocket is added to the Lettuce in Sallets, to the end it may temper the contrary vertue of the same, so that the Lettuce is seldom eaten with meat without the Rocket, and the Sallet on such wise prepared is caused the delectabler, and yeldeth the more health to man. And the worthy Galen in his booke de aliment. & facultat. willeth no man to eat the Lettuce or Purselane without the Rocket, nor the Rocket contrarywise in any Sallet, without Lettuce or Purselane, that in asmuch as the one coleth and harmeth the veneriall act, the other through the heating in the either matter profiteth man. The seedes may be committed to the earth and the hearb planted as wel in the winter time, as in sumer, for it neyther feareth the colde, nor any other distemperancy of the ayre, nor this requireth great labour about the bestowing of the seedes in the earth, and after the comming vp, it especially ioyeth to be often weeded, but the seedes to be sowen in a sandy or grauelly ground, ought afore to be well turned in with dung.

The Phisicke helpes and remedies both of the Purselane and Rocket.

THe Purselane cooleth in the third degree, and moisteneth in the second, the hearb vsed fresh and greene, is better allowed (for this dried, hath small vse and vertue) in that it mittigateth & mosteneth.

The Purselane through the proper coldnesse, aswageth hotte and Cholericke flures, through the often applying and cooling, and helpeth the persons afflicted with a burning Feuer, and the teeth astonished or on edge, by eating of sowre thinges, is amended by the only eating of the fresh herbe. The iuice of this applied, helpeth the shingles, and both bridleth the veneriall act, and abateth sleep. The herbe expelleth the wormes of the belly, and drunke with wine, stayeth the perilous flure Disenteria. The decoction of the Purselane, holden for a while in the mouth, ceaseth the toothache, if the iuice be ãnointed, helpeth outward inflamations. The person which hath a hot stomack, or the mouth of the stomacke swollen, shall throughly be holpen by eating of the fresh Purselane. The iuice drunke, mightily cooleth inward heates, the hearb eaten amendeth the vlcers of the priuities, yet hurtfull to the eyes, and somewhat cooleth the body. A plaister made of the Purselane, and applyed with barly meale, on the hot vlcers (where a feare is, that the matter in them putrifieth) much profiteth, or if it shall be a hotte impostume, which fleeth within from one member to another, this greatly amendeth. The Purselane also reproueth the vlcers of the head, if bruised, it be tempered with wine, and the head washed with the same.

This applyed helpeth swollen eyes, and preuaileth against the spitting of bloud, yet eaten rawe, filleth the stomacke with a clammy humour: the dayly eating of it, abateth the desire of the venerial act, yet eaten with vineger, it remoueth the burning Feuer: the hearbe bruised with barly meale, and heated on the fire, and then applied to the stomack, qualifieth the heat of the same: the Purselane vsed of women molested with the monthly course, stayeth it without greefe in short time.

The purselane chawed in the mouth, profiteth against the bleeding of the nose, the same doth the iuice performe annointed on the Forehead. The Purselane mixed with barly meale, and applied in plaister forme,

forme, ceaseth the head-ache, extinguisheth the heat of the eyes, stayeth the perilous flure Disenteria, and strengthneth both the Kidneyes and bladder. The iuice giuen in drinke, helpeth burning Feuers, killeth the wormes in the belly, and stayeth the spitting forth of bloud.

The iuice bestowed in glisser wise, helpeth the excoriations in the bowels of women, and the rawnesse of the priuy places within procured by distillations from the head.

The iuce of the hearbe is profitably annointed on the head, with the oyle of Roses, or oyle Oliue, against the head-ache, caused by the heate of the sun and woundes dangered by blasting or in a furious heate, this mightily mittigateth, with barly meale annointed.

The hearbe (to great purpose) is applyed on the Nauill of Infants falling forth by crying, and the hearb chewed or rather the iuice boyled, stayeth the greefe and loose teeth of the head, yea the iuice eaten rawe, aswageth the kernels and vlcers in the mouth and swelling of the gummes.

Leontinus a Greeke writer of husbandrie writeth, that the leafe of the Purselane holden vnder the tongue of the person molested with thirst, mittigateth the desire of often drinking, & Plinie writeth, that the iuice remoueth wartes, by annointing the places many dayes togither, and he also writeth, that the inflamations of the pappes and Goute may be aswaged and healed by the iuice of Purselane with honny.

The saide Plinie reporteth, that the roote of the hearbe hanged with a thread about the necke, remooueth the greefe of the fall of the Vuula, which like happened to a Iudge in Italie, as he writeth.

The hearbe Rocket heateth and moistneth in the second degree, the seeds and leaues are onely vsed in medicine.

The hearb boyled and eaten, increaseth the Sperme in a man, which Aegineta (lib. 1.) like witnesseth, saying, that the Rocket obtaineth a great vertue in heating, and supposed to increase sperme, and for the same, to stirre vp a desire to the veneriall acte, besides to cause (through the often eating alone) a giddinesse and paine of the head.

The Rocket increaseth a strong heat, for which cause the same is

hurtfull

hurtfull to the head, but the Garden Rocket boyled with the Lettuce and Beetes, worketh or causeth no harme, and in such maner eaten, the same increaseth the milke in women giuing sucke, and Nurses.

The Rocket eaten, and applied in plaister wise on the pecten causeth bane, softneth the bellie, comforteth the stomacke, and helpeth disgestion: the iuice of Rocket mixed with an Oxe gall, recouereth blacke scars vnto a whitnesse: the pymples or pushes on the face, the iuice with honny annointed amendeth in short time.

The iuice or seed mixed with honny, and annointed on the head, and often vsed with meate, doth kill the nittes and wormes of the head, but the often vse of the Rocket procureth gripings of the bellie. The rot after the tender boyling bruised, and applyed in plaister forme on broken and bruised bones, doth put away the paine: the seede bruised and drunk in wine recouereth the bite of venemous beastes. A skilfull practitioner reporteth, that if three leaues of the Rocket, bee gathered with the left hand, and after the boyling in water and hony mixed togither, taken in drinke, the same (saith he) maruelously auaileth against the Iaundise, and hard swelling of the milt.

The commended vertues of the distilled waters of Purselane.

THe hearbe, stemme, and leaues of the Purselane shred together ought to bee stilled in Balneo Mariæ, about the ende of May.

The water of Purselane drunke vnto the quantitie of three ounces at a time both morning and euening for three or foure dayes togither, amendeth the spitting vp of blood, and the perrilous flure Disenteria.

The water drunke in like quantity at a time, stayeth any flure of the bellie, yea putteth away a hotte and dry cough: this like profiteth against the heat of the Liuer, ceaseth thirst, helpeth the plague, and remoueth the shortnesse of fetching breath.

This water also is profitable to infants against heat & the wormes, giuen in drinke both morning and euening, vnto the quantitie of two ounces at a time.

If in two ounces of water of Purselane, ten barly cornes weight

of

of the seede of Psilium or fleawort be steeped for a night, and with a sponge dipped in this, the tongue bee washed three or foure times a day, which through great heat in a Feuer or other sicknesse is adusted, and drawetb to a blacknesse, this in short time recouereth.

It helpeth vnto a cooling of the inflamed blood, either drunke alone or taken in drinke, and repelleth the griefes of the Bladder.

What skill and dilligence is required in the sowing and ordering of the Cheruill, Smallage, Taragon, and Cresses. Chap. 7.

The hearb Cheruill ioyeth to be sowen in a well dunged earth, in the moneths of Februarie, Marche, and Apprill: sometimes in August and September, to possesse the hearbe in the winter time, and this the better prospereth through the often watering, vntill it bee well come vp.

The smallage seedes ought to be sowen in a well laboured earth, and neare to a stone wall, or thicke hedge, this hearb well ioyeth in the shadow, & commeth well vp in any ground. And after this hearbe be once bestowed in the Garden, a man shall hardly weede it forth quite, and the Gardener may leaue a stemme or two, to shoot vp into seede, from yeare to yeare, for this hearb will indure for euer, without any weeding at all. The owner may commit the seedes to the earth, after the middle or end of Februarie, vnto the beginning of september: this hearbe hath the like vertue and properties, which the Parsley possesseth.

The Taragon of the Garden, bearing seede like to the Flaxe, ought to be bestowed in a well dunged earth, and after the plantes be shot vp neare a foote high, the Gardener ought then to take vp the whole bodies, and set them againe in the selfe same earth, which often water vntill they haue taken strong roote in the earth. The Taragon enioyeth the like properties, as the Rocket, and may not be eaten apart or alone, but rather with the Lettuce, Purselane, and such like hearbes.

The

The Garden Cresses is a soure hearbe in taste like vnto the Onyon, which the Germaines (in many places) do often vse in Sallets, but it seemeth that the hearbe is not eaten, without other coling hearbs matched with it, as the Lettuce, Sorrell, Purselane, and such like, which temper the fier or burning force of the hearb, euen as the worthie Phisition Galen hath willed it, who forbad the Rocket to be eaten with the Lettuce, that the contrary vertue might be tempered. This hearbe ioyeth to be sowen in moist places, as by small riuers or running courses of water, welles, and springs. for no other labour (after the seedes bestowed) do they require, sauing a dayly watering, for the plantes comming vp, desire oftentimes a day to be watered by litle and litle.

The seedes of the Cresses (after the minde of Rutilius) bestowed in beddes with the Lettuce, increaseth verry well, for they ioy in moisture, and hate the dung: and sowne in a shadowey place, in Februarie and March, the plantes reasonably prosper and come forwarde.

The Phisicke remedies and helps both of the Cheruil, and Garden Cresses.

The Cheruil heateth in the third degree, and dryeth in the second, this hearbe of all persons is eaten raw with vinegar, and in brothes boyled.

This hearbe taken in drinke, procureth vrine, and sendeth downe the termes in women, brused with wine and drunke, mittigateth the griefes and stitches in the side.

This drunke with water and honny, resolueth or looseth flewme, it putteth away the gripings of the bellie, and ingendreth winde.

The iuice of Cheruil taken with vineger, killeth the wormes in the bellie, the Cheruil brought into pouder, and mixed with Honye, healeth a Canker, being annointed vppon. The hearbe boyled in wine, and drunke, ceaseth the ache and griefe of the hippes.

The hearbe with the whole substance boyled, if the same be after mixed with vineger, and the head washed with the same, doth remoue the

the dandrie of the head. In like manner ordered and applied, healeth running sores and Cankers.

It healeth the bite of a madde dog, if the person shall drinke of the Seede bruised, and shall wash the wound with the same. The rote of Cheruill boyled with the hearbe Saxifrage, and drunke, breaketh the stone of the Bladder, and prouoketh vrine. The Cheruill boyled in wine, and drunk, dissolueth the gathered bloud into knobs, or otherwise clotted in the bodie.

The hearb after the bruising, and tempering with ware and Barrowes grease, applied on impostumes behinde the eares, doth in short time dissolue and heale them.

The Garden Cresses heateth and drieth in the third degree, but the learned Platearius affirmeth, the Cresses to be hotte and drie, in the fourth degree.

The seed especially serueth to the vse of Medicine, and is preserued in great efficacie, for flue yeares. The hearb greene is of great efficacie, being somwhat dried.

The seed possesseth the vertue of heating and drying of superfluous humours, and in a maner enioyeth the like vertues of Mustard seed: the seed after the bruising drunke in wine, expelleth the dead yongling: drunke with wine, remooueth the swelling of the Milt: eaten with Hony, is a remedie for the cough, and looseth the breast, it auaileth against the palsie of the tongue, if the seed chawed bee retained a time in the mouth.

It profiteth not if the Cresses be eaten alone, for that the same diminisheth mans strength, and engendreth euill humors, for this herb ioyeth to be bestowed in a moyst Earth, and vnder a shadowe from the Sunne.

The seed whole taken, restraineth the distillings of the head without danger or harme, the seede brought to pouder, and drawne vp by the Nosethrilles, cleanseth the braine and helpeth the paines of the head.

The seede of the Cresses helpeth against the palsie, being boyled in wine, and applied hotte in a bagge to the palsie member, the pouder of the seede blowne vp dooth cause the patient sneese, amendeth the Lethargie or sleeping out of measure.

The seede boyled with drie figs, and a Gargill made of the same, dooth send vp and drie the Vuula loose hanging.

Against infections of the head, knobs and dandrie, mixe the seedes of the Cresses with Goose grease, and dilligently brused, annoint all about sundry times, the pouder of the seede annointed with Oyle of Roses, doth stay the going forth of the sundament.

The seede drunke in wine, doth expel the noisome creeping things, as the round and flat wormes in the body, but forcibler by mints added thereto: this profiteth against the hardnesse of fetching winde and the cough, with Organy mixed and sweet wine, and the same diuers times drunk: the decoction of the hearbe in Gotes milke helpeth the griefes of the breast: this amendeth the ache of the hippes, and griefe of the Loynes, by annointing with Barly meale and vinegar mixed with it, on the grieued places.

Certain report, that the dayly eating of the Cresses for a time, purchaseth a readier vnderstanding and quicker wit. The seedes after the bestowing in a bagge, boyled in wine, and applyed on the flancke, dooth remoone the paine grieuously vexing, and likewise the Choliicke, applyed on the belly, proceeding of a colde cause.

For the selfe same, and for the Stranguric, dooth the simple hearbe boyled in wine and oyle preuaile, being applied vppon. For weaknesse of the kidneis, proceeding of a fleumaticke matter discending from the head, the raines of the backe annointed with heny, strew the fine pouder of the seedes, with Cumminie and Colofonie.

A certaine practitioner reporteth, that the iuice of Cresses distilled or dropped into the eare, doth remoue and deliuer the grieuous paine of the teeth. The seed boyled in wine and drunke, and a plaister with figges applied without, dooth in short time aswage the swelling and griefe of the Milt.

The

The commended vertues of the distilled waters, both of the Cheruill and Garden Cresses.

THe chosen time for the distilling of Cheruill, is when the hearbe and roote, with the whole substance may be finely shred and distilled, which time best answereth in the middle of May.

The water of Cheruill drunke, vnto the quantity of foure ounces at a time, both morning and euening, helpeth men bursten, and harmed by a grieuous fall, and resolueth the blood clotted in lumps. The same drunke profiteth against the stone of the kidneis: a great quantitie of this drunke at one time, looseth the bellie.

The water drunke (as aboue said) procureth a good stomack, confirmeth and comforteth the heart, putteth away the shaking of the Feuer, the same healthfull or profitable to the head, and comforteth the senses.

This like drunke remoueth grieuous paines and prickings: helpeth the Lungs, and the diseases of the same.

The conuenient time for the distilling of the Garden Cresses, is in the end of May, in the Tin Limbeck.

The water of Cresses auaileth against the Measelles, and impostumes behinde the eares, if the same mixed with hony, be applied on the places, with linnen clothes dipped in it, which long dried, againe moisten them, for this remoueth the red spots.

If the Measels be on the legs, then let blood on the Anckle of the foote, and drinke the same morning and euening mixed with strawberry water, and refraine after from all hotte meats.

The water of Cresses drunk morning and euening vnto the quantitie of foure ounces at a time, aswageth a swelling, and expelleth woormes of the belly, mittigateth vlcers, and swellinges of the gummes, if they be often rubbed with it.

What care and skill is required in the sowing and ordering of the Bucks horne, Strawberrie, and Mustard seede Chapter. 18.

THe Buckes or Hartes horne, whose leaues be sweete in taste, and somewhat saultie, is at this day sowne in Gardens, and yearely vsed in Sallets, and requireth a small labour, before the bestowing in the Earth, forasmuch as this hearbe so well ioyeth in the earth, not laboured and dressed, as afore prepared.

But if the owner minde to haue the hearbe thick tuft, and fayre to the eye, he must often clippe the toppes of the leaues, and presse the head downe by some waight, or propperly tread with the foote on it: for on such wise handled will the hearbe be procured to grow downward and into a breadth.

This especially in Sallets in the sommer time, although the same haue no apt succour nor taste.

The Strawberries require smal labour and dilligence in the bestowing in the Earth, sauing that these ioy to be set in some shadowie place of the Garden, in that these rather desire to grow vnder the shadow of other hearbes, then to be planted in beddes alone: and planted vnder the shadow of high trees, these prosper without any trimming of the Earth.

Here note a marueilous innocency in ẏ strawberries, that although these creepe low by the earth, and that diuers venemous things creep ouer the hearbes, yet are these in no maner infected with any venemous contagion, which is a note, that the hearb (of propertie) hath no affinitie with poyson. This hearb by dilligence of the Gardener, becommeth so great, that the same yeeldeth faire and big Beries, as the Beries of the Bramble in the hedge, and hereof it seemeth, that Virgilianus Seruius named the Strawberie, the Mulberie of the earth. Certaine skilfull men, by a dilligence and care, procure the Beries to alter from the proper red colour, into a faire white, delectable to the eye.

The Mustard seedes desire to be sowne in a fatte grounde, and to be committed to the Earth with fine pouder dust, both before & after the winter, these after the cõming vp, require to be often weeded

and

and watered. But the seedes may not be sowen too thicke, in that the plantes multiply and spread into breadth. After the plants haue enioyed strong roote in the earth, they are hardly plucked vp by the rootes, and the seedes may well be kept for fiue yeares, which the newer they be, so much the better to sowe, and to be eaten. The goodnesse of the seed is knowne in the breaking or cracking of it betweene the teeth, whether the same be found greene or white within: for if this be white, the seed is olde and nothing worth, neither to sow, nor to eate. The seedes which the owner would keepe for to eate, those plants must he remoue, after certain leaues sprung vp, and set them a good distance asunder, whereby the tops may bush and spread the broader, but such plants which the owner would haue runne vp to seede, those may hee not chaunge, nor remoeue out of the propper places.

The Phisicke remedies and helpes of the Buckes horne, Strawberie and Mustard seede.

The Hartes horne hath the propertie of heating and drying, for which cause taken in drinke, it ceaseth the griping of the bellie: yea this vsed helpeth the grieses of the ioyntes, strengthneth and expelleth the euill matter in them.

This hearbe after the minde of Dioscorides, hath the propertie of binding, so that the same be profitably giuen in red wine, for the perilous Flures.

Certaine report that if foure rootes of the Buckes or hartes horne be either diligently hanged about the necke, or bound to the pulses of both the hands, that these in short time do put away the Feuer, or at the least, moisture the heat or burning of the feet.

The Berries aswell as the hearde of the Strawberry haue the vertue of cooling and moistening in the third degree, and the hearbe it selfe indureth not aboue a yeare.

Vigonius writing of the Strawberrie leafe, affirmeth the same to be of a colde qualitie, especially, the iuice of which hearbe mixed with the wine of Pomgranats, & a little quantitie of Rose water, applyed on hot impostumes (both in the beginning and increase of them (doth maruellously helpe. The Berries eaten with white wine, and a litle

Suger, doth marueloully amend the hardnesse and swelling of the spleen: the selfe same doth the iuice of the Berrie, taken with hony: the leaues sundry times vsed in a bath, is said to be most profitable against the stone. The leaues and roote orderly applyed, do heale as well woundes as vlcers. These also procure the termes, stay the bloudie flire Dysenteria, and cause vrine: the decoction of the hearbe and roote drunke, helpeth the inflamations of the Liuer, and cleanseth both the kidneis and bladder.

If any shall be mightily molested with grieuous ache and paines of the hips, let him take three or foure handfulls of the Strawberry leaues, and boyling them tender, sit in the bath, and rub the legges well (with the licoure and leaues) from the nether parte vpwarde: which done and throughly dryed with a warme cloth, apply this ointment following, prepared after this manner: take of the ointment of March Mallowes one ounce, vnto which mixe halfe an ounce of stone honny, and a dramme waight of ware, making thereof an ointment by a soft fire: this on such wise handled, not onely amendeth the griefes of the hippes, and softneth the matter hardned in them, but prouoketh vrine, applyed on the propper place.

The decoction of the hearbe and roote, holden in the mouth, and washing or rubbing the teeth and gummes with it, doth not onely strengthen the gummes and fasten the teeth, but staieth the distillings from the head.

The Berries in sommer time, eaten with creame and suger, is accounted a great refreshing to men, but more commended, being eaten with wine and suger: for on such wise, these marueloully coole and moisten chollericke stomackes, or such being of a chollericke complexion.

The iuice of the Berries pressed forth, and the water of Plantain added, of each eight ounces, to these mixe two ounces of Rosed hony, one ounce of the iuice of the Mulberries, of white Greeke pitch, and the flowres of the Pomgranat, of each a dramme waight, these after a diligent beating and mixing together, wash and gargell the same in the mouth sundry times, for this in short time remoueth and putteth away the impostumes of the throat. Among other commodities which the Berries yeeld, the iuice or wine pressed forth of them,

is

is a soueraigne remedie for the remouing of the great rednesse, spots, and red pimples, which happen on the face through the heat of the Liuer: the selfe same aswageth & putteth away the rednesse of the eyes, the spots and hotte distillings from the head, by dropping it sundry times into the eyes. The decoction of the rootes & leaues of the Strawberrie in wine is marueilous profitable for the Jaundise: being taken diuers mornings fasting. The decoction only of the roote taken, doth mittigate the heat of the liuer, so that the same be drunke in the morning, and at noone: the heathe eaten with vineger & a little white pepper, doth greatly helpe such fetching the winde short: the Berries also eaten, do cease & coole thirst, for which cause, profitable to the stomack, but these especially commodious to the colericke. The Mustard seede heateth and drieth in the fourth degree, and it is like to the rape seed, sauing that the Rape seede is bitter, and the Mustard seed soure. The goodnesse of the Mustard seed is known in the breaking of it, which if the same be moist & white within (although new gathered) yet profitable to vses. This hath the vertue of heating & ripening. The force & nature of the Mustard seeds is to heat, extenuate, and draw forth, as the worthy Dioscorides reporteth. The Mustard seeds bruised with the fresh root of Enula Campana, and applied on impostumes, breaketh them without paine: the seeds bruised and tempered with vineger aplied on the bit of a venemous beast, doth speedily cure the same. The seedes chawed and retained vnder the tongue, preuaile against the palsey of the tongue: the seedes do like profit against all the kindes of palseys, happning in any parte of the body: if a linnen bag filled with the seedes and boyled in wine, be applyed on the grieued place, being especially vsed in the beginning of the infirmitie. The seeds after the bruising with cumin and figs eaten sundry mornings, doth deliuer and helpe the dropsie, the seeds after the mixing with water and hony sundry times gargeiled, amendeth the blistering or sores of the mouth, and aswageth the swelling of the throate. The iuice of the Mustard seed, take diuers mornings fasting, doth procure a good memorie: the oyle drawne out of the seedes, is a soueraigne ointment for the colde Gout, Sciatica, and feeblenes of sinewes. The iuice of the Mustard seed dropped into the eyes, doth remoue the dimnes of sight, and put away the spots and web in them: yea this in the eating causeth thirst, and procureth the venerial act.

The person which every morning fasting, shall swallow downe two seedes at a time, shall be free that day from the falling sicknesse: the seede boyled in wine, and drunke, amendeth the hardnesse of fetching breath: the pouder of seeds drawne vp by the nosthrills, not onely procureth the creature to sneese, but marueloufly purgeth and amendeth the braine.

If a like waight of the Mustard seede, Pellitorie and Ginger be bruised, and after the well mixing with rosed honny, the mouth bee washed with the same, and this for a good whiles holden in the mouth, doth maruellouslly clense the braine of humors, of which the grieuous paine of the head most commonly succeedeth. The same also amendeth the falling of the Vuula, and vlcers of the throat.

The Mustard seed (as Dioscorides writeth) eaten, draweth down and purgeth by the mouth, the flemme gathered in the head: the iuice of the hearbe mixed with water and honny, gargelled and holden a whiles in the mouth, doth remoue the hard knobs and swellinges of long continuance of the Iawes, the pouder blowne or drawne vp by the nose, to procure the creature sundry times to sneese, not onely profiteth such a one hauing the falling sicknesse, but amendeth the suffocation of the Matrice, and falling out of place. And against the dulnesse of the head, and often sleeping (the head afore shauen) is the ointment or plaister of the seedes profitably applyed: the decoction of the Mustard seed in wine, holden in the mouth for a whiles, dooth cease the ache and paine of the teeth comming of cold: and drunk, breaketh the stone of the bladder, and procureth the Termes.

The person which coueteth to prepare a cleare voice to sing, ought to take the meale of Mustard seede, and after the working of it with hony, to make litle balles of the same, and of these to take one euerie day, which on such wise vsed, will procure in short time a cleare voice.

The cōmended vertues of the distilled waters both of the Strawberie, and plant of the Mustard seede

The best time for distilling of the Berrie is, when they are neare ripe, yet that they be not ouer ripe and soft, which after the gathering

ring and sprinckled ouer with Suger, ought to stand close couered in a glasse, vntill they appeare mouldie, before the distilling in Balneo Mariæ. The berries which grow in woodes standing on hilles are better commended to the vse.

The water of the berries drunk, and mixed with the same, amendeth an euill or an vnnaturall heate, and ceaseth thirst, proceeding of the Liuer, or of Choller: the water drunke vnto ỹ quantity foure ounces at a time, both morning and euening, not only cooleth the liuer, looseth the breast, refresheth the heart, purgeth the blood, and helpeth the kinges euill, but preuaileth against the stone of the Loynes, Kidneies and Bladder.

The like quantitie drunke profiteth against blisters and sores in the mouth, the vlcers and swellings in the throat, and strong sauour of the mouth, proceeding of the gummes and teeth, if this water also be gargelled in the mouth and throat.

The water in like order drunke of women, purgeth them & procureth the Termes. The water drunke vnto the quantitie of foure ounces at a time, both morning and euening, (or at the least in the morning) and linnen clothes dipped in it, being applyed twice a day to the leg broken, doth in short time recouer and helpe the same.

The water healeth al foule legges, if after the dayly washing both morning and euening, linnen clothes wet in it, be applyed vppon: this in like manner cureth filthy woundes, if they shall bee washed with the same, or if any shall vse of the water in his drinke, this water also swageth the swelling of the face, by the often washing with it.

The water drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantitie of foure ounces at a time, with an ounce of pure Aqua vitæ, helpeth (no doubt the Leapry, in that this drunke purgeth blood, by the sundrie times vsing, or otherwise a white toste of bread, after the wetting with this be eaten fasting, which on such wise vsed doth remoue the foule scurfe and scabs on the body.

The water after the well tempering with Suger, distilled ouer againe in Balneo Mariæ, is very soueraigne for diuers purposes, in that the same not onely cooleth, cleareth and remoueth spots of the eies, but comforteth nature, expelleth poisons, prouoketh the terms, asswageth burning humours, and comforteth conception: yea this

is a most effectuous ointment for the eies, in that the same stayeth teares or watering of the eies, cooleth the great heate in them, and reckoreth a dimme sight.

This water also applied sundry times with a linnen cloth wet in it, doth marueliously coole and put away the red pimples and rednesse of the face, yea and cleareth the same contrary to hope.

The vertues commendable of the distilled water of the Strawberie leaues.

THe apt time for the distilling of the heard in either Balneo Mariæ or a Tin Limbecke is in the middle of May. This water drunke vnto the quantity of foure ounces at a time, both morning and euening, doth remoue and helpe the kings euill.

The water in like order drunke, looseth the breast, purgeth the Lungs, helpeth the cough, and cleanseth the Leaper: The water dropped into the eies both morning and euening, doth remoue the rednes of the eyes and mittigateth the heate in them.

The water like drunk, ceaseth the ouer much sweating, and for the heate and stopping of the Liuer, there is nothing more healthfull and profitabler.

The whole hearbe bearing flowre of the Mustard seede, after the finely shredding, ought to be distilled in a Tinne Limbecke, in the beginning of June. The water amendeth the vlcers of the gummes, if the same be holden a while in the mouth, and the gummes often washed therewith. This water helpeth vnto the consumption of members, if they be bathed and rubbed with the same: for the members through the same, doe recouer in short time strength and flesh. This water heateth the marrow in the bones, if they be often rubbed with the same, and the water to drie in along. This water profiteth against the cold disease and ache of the ioynts, if they be often rubbed with the same, and the water suffered to drie in by it selfe.

What

What skill and care is required in the sowing and workmanly ordering of the Leekes and Ciues. Chap. 19.

THe Leeke for that it is a root of the Garden to be eaten and often vsed in the potte, therefore I will first intreat of the same, which (as the moste skilfull report) desireth to be sown in a fruitfull and battle place, and lying especially open, whether the same bee in a low place, as the worthy Rutilius writeth: and to these, that the beddes be leuelled, deepe digged, dilligently turned, and verry well dunged. The husbandmen in times past, noted two kindes of this hearbe, as the one which grew into a head, like the Onion, and the other into many deuided blades, both long and straight, whose bush sprung vp, is wont to be cut neere to the ground, and this with vs is named the vnset Leeke. The owner or Gardener which would possesse vnset Leekes, ought to cut the greene blades come vp in the beddes, after two moneths of the sowing. For these (after the minde of the learned Collumella) will endure the longer, and encrease farre bigger, if after this cutting they be remooued and set againe, and how often the greene blades shall be cut, so often the hearbe is holpen with water and new Cow-dung. And vse instructeth euerie carefull owner as the saide Authour reporteth, that in the remouing, such skill must be vsed for the newe setting, as when they be growne into a bignesse in the head, to be remoued certaine distances asunder, as foure fingers breadth between either set. and when they shall be growne to a further strength, and bignesse, to be againe cut. The Leekes so often ought to be watered, dunged, and weeded, as need requireth the same, and the place is to be often raked ouer, whereby the plantes may encrease the better, through the helpe of the often killing and casting forth of the vnprofitable hearbs or weedes. As touching the Ciues and vnset Leeks, they may like be bestowed in the earth, as the Leeke bearing the head: And the seeds of these may be committed to the earth at any time, if so be the owner enforceth not for the yeeld of the seedes: but they otherwise ought to be sowne in the monethes of December, Januarie and Februarie, for the gathering and occupying after the meneth of Marche, vnto the midst of August. And the plantes after the sowing, when the blades be well shotte vp, ought lightly to be troden downe

with the foote, and not to be watered for foure daies after. When the yong and tender blades be shot out of the seedes, and that the owner mindeth to haue the heads growe bigger, he ought not after ẏ pulling vp to set them againe, before all the small rootes bee cut away, and the greene blades nigh halfe cut off, which done, ẏ small potshards, or oyster shelles, be laide (as it were) right vnder each head, and then dilligently couered with earth, wherby the heads may so increase the bigger: in the which doing, the worthy Greek Sotion forbiddeth the watering of them till foure dayes after (if a drouth ensue) otherwise water them not at all. The skilfull Neapolitan Rutilius instructeth, that when the Leekes be growen to a finger bignesse, by cutting the blades halfe away, and the hayrie rootes quite (least these seede and draw away of the substance) then in the setting in earth mixed with sand and annointed fresh with cowdung, let the plantes be distant in beddes well foure or fiue fingers one from the other, and when these haue sent forth roots sufficient long, let the owner (gently putting vnder his dibble) raise softly the heads, that these remaining (as hanging on the earth) may on such wise fill the roomes or emptie spaces by the greatnesse of the heads growing. And that in fewer words I vtter this instruction, if so be the owner would enioy vnset lèekes, he may bestowe the Seedes in beddes the thicker togither. If these do growe into a head, then the thinner in the earth, which shall cause them to prosper the better through a daily weeding, and feeding with fresh cow-dung.

The seedes ought to be committed to the earth, in the months of Aprill, May, and Inne throughout to possesse the hearbes in the Sommer time, in the harvest, September, and October, for to enioy the plantes in the Winter time, but these especially require, to be often weeded and dunged, which grow into heads: the Lèke shal yeeld a far bigger head and stem, as after Columella Rutilius wrote: yea before them both the worthy Greeke Sotion, if in thinne linnen cloutes, or clothes much worne: the owner shal bestow & tye vp many Seedes togither, which so hardled, to couer dilligently with soft dung and earth, and immediatly to water them so lying in the earth, for these thus knit vp (through the running of the Seedes into one) will send forth Leekes of a wonderfull bignesse, which practise also may the husbandly Gardener trie in the other seedes of plantes.

A like experience will come to passe, if the owner bestowe a Rape seede into the head of a Leeke, without making a hole, with any Iron instrument, which so handled, set into the earth, for on such will it growe verry big, as both Rutilius and diuers Greeke instructers of husbandry report. There be some, which making holes in the heade with a wodden pricke, or piece of elder Cane, or else a Reede sharpened, bestow (in place of the Rape) the Gourd seedes. Others there are, which taking vp so many seedes as they can handsomely retaine with three of the fingers, and poured into a thinne reede, doe commit those to the earth, with soft dung couered and laid about, which practise doth euen like agree to the former vttered.

The saide Greeke Sotion commendeth and affirmeth, that immediatly after the seedes shall be sowne, the soft earth of the Bedde s be trodden with the feete into small and shallow furrowes, and the Beds for three dayes (as if they were neglected) not watered at all but in the fourth day, to be holpen through the sprinckling of water on the beds, for such wise handled, the blades comming vp, wil grow (as he reporteth) the more bushie and fairer to the eye, yet if the owner, betweene sowing and planting, shall mixe sand with the earth, the blades will shoote vp the fuller and bigger.

The said worthy Greeke Sotion addeth and affirmeth, that if the owner shall eat a little Cummine seede before, he shall breath forth no stinking sauour at all of the Leeke, although he shall eate a great handfull at a time of the Leekes, for by eating of the Cummine seed is the strong sauour extinguished or put away.

Heere out of Petrus Crescentius I haue added, as a matter worthy of the noting, that the Leeke seed throwne into a vessell of wine, causeth that the wine sowreth not, but rather that vineger returneth into wine, that is, putteth away all the egernesse.

This to conclude, conceiue that the Leeke in the eighteene day after the sowing, to shoote and appeare (for the more parte) aboue earth, and to endure for ten yeares, after which time to yeld seeds, and die.

The Phisicke helpes of Garden Leekes.

THe Lēke, after the minde of the auntient, heateth in the third degree, and drieth in the second, especially, the Garden Leeke whose sēdes may well endure to purpose, for two yeares.

The worthy Greeke Sotion (of whom we haue afore mentioned) vttereth, in his singuler precepts and instructions of husbandry, that the Lēke, bruised and applyed, do cure the bit of a venemous beast, sooner than any other medicine, and the seedes of it drunke with the licour of raisons, to recouer and helpe the difficulties of making water.

To these, to help and stay the long and old spitting vp of bloud, if at conuenient times, in two drams of the iuice, with the like waight of the pouder of Myrtill berries or Gaules, and the meale of Frankinsence, the same be drunke.

But the singular Hippocrates willeth the iuice to be ministred without any mixture at all, and forbiddeth the dayly, or too much eating of Lēkes, in that this not onely harmeth and dulleth the sight of the eies, but offendeth the stomacke which shalbe procured the lesser harmefull, if so be the Leeke shall so long be boyled, vntill it become as soft (in a manner as a pap, for on such wise handled, the same is supposed no lesse to nourish then flesh.

The iuice of the rawe Lēke is recited and accompted (with Pliny) among the venemous matters: for the report is that Mela (a man of worthy birth) accused and sharply blamed of Tiberius for misusing of the office giuen to him of the Prince, who after falling into mightie desperation, and drinking vnto the waight of three siluer pence of the iuice of the Leeke, dyed immediatly without griefe of bodie, But such like are rather with silence to be ouerpassed, then opened for instruction sake.

But to returne to the Phisicke helps: the Leeke twice sodden before the eating, draweth downe the Termes, procureth vrine, and obtaineth a superfluous heate: the iuice of the Leeke mixed with vineger, applied on the forehead, stayeth the bleeding of the nose: the Leeke eaten rawe causeth vomitting and is venemous, this also putteth away drunkennesse, being eaten rawe.

The iuice of the Leeke taken with womans milke, amendeth an olde

old cough, and the vlcers of the Lungs: the Leeke bruſed and mixed with Salt, applyed on euill puſhes healeth them: the Leek brought into pouder, and tempered with the oyle of Roſes and vineger, and dropped in the the eares, remoueth the griefes of them: the ſame alſo profiteth in like maner againſt the tooth-ach.

The Leeke bruſed with honny, and applied, purgeth vlcers: a plaſter made of the ſame, and applyed on bruſed members, doth not only aſſwage the ſwelling, but remoueth the blood clotted.

The iuice of it drunke with womans milke, ſtayeth the flure of bloud after birth, the ſame alſo applied with vineger, ceaſeth the bleeding of the noſe, if the fine pouder of Frankinſence be added to it, and drawne vp by the Noſethrills.

The iuice of the Leeke drunke with hony, profiteth againſt paines or aches of the hippes, the iuice of the Leeke taken with honny, recouereth all defaults of the breaſt and ſtomacke, the ſame ceaſeth an old cough, and griefes of the breaſt and Lungs: and it helpeth the dropſie, through the ſundry times taking faſting.

Heere I will not omit the practiſe out of Galen, that the Leekes tartneſſe may be abated, and to engender the leſſe winde, if the ſame boyled in two waters, the cold licour in the end may be poured forth, & the herb eaten, by which means it is ſaid, that this ſtaieth the flire of the belly, and to amend a hoarſe voice: yea, through the ſoftnes of it, to make ſmooth the roughneſſe of the iawes and mouth.

For to purchaſe a cleere and ſounding voice, Nero accuſtomed to eate the Leeke with Oyle, in certaine daies of euery month, when he contended for the ſeignioritie of loud pronouncing and vttering of wordes. At which times, he onely tooke or eate nothing, ſauing bread, as Plinie writeth of him, which reporteth this to be meant of the vnſet Leeke, to which the Prince Nero attributed a ſinguler commendation.

If two partes of the iuice, with a third parte of honny bee mixed, applyed into the Noſethrilles or eares, it doth marueilouſly helpe the grieuous paynes of the head, the iuice applyed vp, doth marueilouſly preuaile againſt the eruiceratiens of womens priuy places.

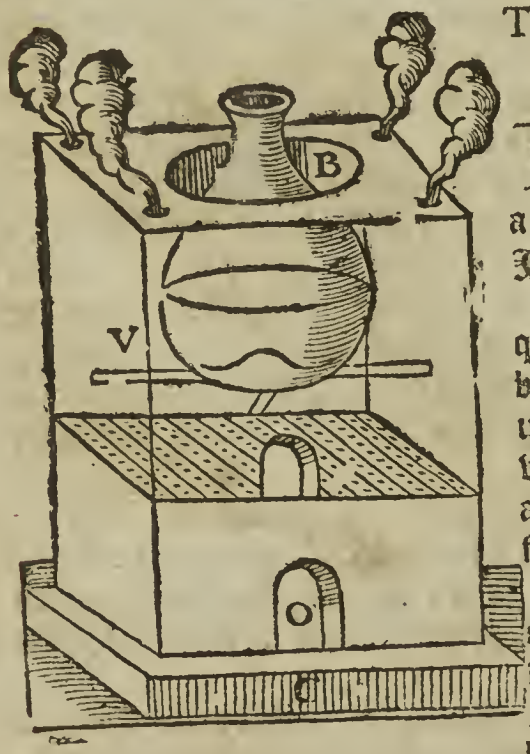
The ſeedes of the Leeke bruſed, and drunke either with Tuite or pleaſant white wine, doth loſe the difficulties of making water,

and

and openeth the vrinall passages: the iuice of the Leeke drunk with wine, doth aid forward the deliuery of childe, the Leeke seedes after the brusing with Myrre in the iuice of Plantain, is verry soueragne for the spitting of bloud, and staying the bleeding of the nose.

The iuice of the Leeke powred on such woundes, which are become colde and putrified, doth both clense away the rotten flesh, and cureth the wounds: if the iuice be mixed with the rootes of white Lilies and annointed warme on the hips, it dooth speedily remoue the ache of them: the fresh iuice applyed with salte on the new cuttes or woundes, doth incontinent close them.

The learned Dioscorides reporteth, that the Leeke moueth & prouoketh the veneriall act, the same with honny, in forme of an Eclegma, sucked or suffered to melt downe, cleanseth and amendeth all defaults of the breast: the same like vsed, recouereth the wasting of the Lungs: yet the Leeke often and much at a time vsed, doth burden the stomacke, procureth thirst, and inflameth the blood.



The commended helpes of the distilled water of the Leeke.

The roote onely of the Leeke being shred, is to be distilled in a Tin Limbecke, in the moneth of June.

The water drunke vnto the quantitie of two ounces at a time, both morning and euening, is a soueraigne remedie for the spitting vp of cold bloud: this also is auailable, being sundrie times drunke, for a barraine woman.

The water of the Leeke, stayeth bleeding of the nose, if cotten dipped in it be often applied: the same drunke amendeth a costiue bellie, and ache of the hippes, purgeth the kidneis and bladder, procureth daine, & expelleth the stone.

The

The water speedily healeth woundes, if they be washed morning and euening with the same, this also profiteth vnto the vlceration and fracture of womens places, which is woont to happen after the deliuery of childe, if so be the places be washed with the water, both morning and euening.

What skill and diligence is required in the workmanly sowing and ordering of the Onyon.

Chap. 20.

THat the Onyons haue a body compassed & compact with manie cartilages, there is none (I beleeue) which knoweth not.

The auntient husbandmen (as withnesseth Columella) named these Onyons, because they grew in one round head togither, yet not ioyned togither with so many heades round about, as the Garlike, which vnto this day is familiarly named the Onyon of the husbandmen with vs.

The Onyons for the more part ought to be sowen in the moneths of January, February, and March, in a fatte earth, well dunged, moist, and diligently trimmed, which shot vp to some heigth, ought to be remoued in the moneth of April, a good distance the one from the other, and these further growen, ought carefully to be weeded about, and often laboured to cause them growe the bigger, and to defend them (in time of a blustering winde) by helps set against. The worthy Neapolitan Rutilius writeth that the seedes desire to be bestowed in a fat earth, often turned and raked, moyst and dunged, and red also, as the Greeke Sotion in his husbandrie willeth: which afore ought to be cast vp, that it may putrifie through the colde and frostes in the Winter time, (as the skilfull Columella vttereth:) after these the earth to be dunged, and within two dayes after, the ground leauelled forth, and cast or troden into beds, all the rootes and vnprofitable herbes afore cleansed out. These workmanly handled in the moneth of March, being a pleasant and a calme day, the South or East wind (at that time blowing) the seedes shall workmanly bee committed to the earth, with Sauerie intermedled betweene them (as Plinie willeth) for so the plantes prosper the better. The wor-

thy Greeke Sotion admonisheth the Gardener which would set Onions, to cut away all the hairie rootes and tops of the greene blades (before the bestowing) whereby they may growe to big heades. Others there are, which onely plucke away the blades nigh to the roote, for on such wise they send the iuice to the nether partes, to cause the head grow bigge: But these (after the minde of Rutilius) ought in this maner to be placed or set thinne in beds, and both raked and weeded (if these not often) yet foure times at the least, as Plinie willeth: who also taught, that the ground be digged, and cast vp three times before the bestowing of the seedes in the earth.

If the Gardener commit seeds to the earth in the wane or decrease of the Moone, he shall possesse small and sourer ones, if the seedes in the increase of the Moone, then strong and bigge, and of a moyster tast, with the sourenesse maistred. But the same not to be vnremembred nor ouerpassed, that in all the kindes of Onions, the same somwhat long and sharpe, is wont to be sourer than the round, and the red one more than the greene, and the raw more than the boyled, the fresh also, more then that seasoned or poudered with salt, or the sodden one.

The Gardener or owner shall possesse farre greater Onions, if when there is a place or roome for the setting againe, they be layed in earth well laboured for twentie dayes space, and so long left drying against the sunne, vntill all the moysture be gone or drawn forth by heate of the sunne, after the instruction of the worthy Greeke Sotion, which Ruellius (out of Palladius) seemeth greatly to mistake, in that he ascribeth the same to be done to the Dill, and not the Onions, whose heads may also be bared, by plucking off the vpper skin, before the setting againe in the earth, to prosper the better, and yeeld the bigger seedes, if they be set in the earth well a hand breadth asunder.

The heades to be eaten before the full ripenesse, that these may be the sweeter, ought rather to be sowen in a moyst ground, among the yong Plants of the Cucumbers, Gourdes and Melones.

If the owner will rightly possesse, and gather the Seedes in due season, when the greene stemmes are shot vp high, and yelde bigge heades, they are then to be guided with two small forkes of wood, fixed on either side (as Columella willeth) that the stems, through the

the stayes shoaring them vpright, may not in any bigge winde, knocke the heades togither, to the spilling and losse of the Seedes on the earth, which are not afore to be gathered, that they enioy a blacke colour, as after the Greekes, Collumella and Rutilius likewise vttered.

The stemmes and knops, in which the seeds are contained, ought to be gathered in the increase or the wane of the Moone, in a aire & warme time, when the leaues or blades beginne of themselues to wither and drie, and that the seedes beginne to appeare blacke of themselues, for then ought the stemmes to be plucked vp by the roots, which knit togither in forme of Garlands, or otherwise bound vp, to be laid in the sunne to drie and ripen. The Onions will continue long vncorrupted (as the saide Sotion hath noted) if so the Onions be put into water, or (as Plinie willeth) into a saltie and warme water, and after laide in the hote Sunne, vntill they be through drie, which let be hidden or couered with Barly straw, and in such maner bestowed, that neither touch of her by any part. In many places, the Onyons be hanged in the smoke and in chimnies neere to the heate of fire, and in such wise preserue them a long time.

The auncient and skilfull writers of husbandry vtter, that if the Gardener would possesse Onions of a wonderfull bigneſſe in ye head, the seeds of the Onions must be put within the seeds of Gourdes, which so handled, bestow in moyst beds, well turned in with dung, into a like bigneſſe will the heades of the Onyons increase, if the earth digged round about, the small heades of the Onyons, in the heauing or lifting of the earth, shall be lifted vp, yet in such manner done, that the heades not quite raised out of the earth or plucked vp by the roottes, as I afore vttered to be wrought with the Leeke. The like also shall the owner obtaine, if boaring the head of an Onion, with a wodden pricke, in sundrie places, and putting into the holes Gourd seedes, he bestow them togither in a well laboured earth.

But in this place I thought not to omit, that if the Gardener shall commit the Seedes of the Onions in due time to the earth, they will after grow into a head, but they shall yeidlesse store of Seede. But if the Gardener shall bestow little heads on the ground, the heads will after wither and ware drie, and be shotte vp into a round stemme.

To these I adde, that the Onions plucked out of the ground and lying vpon the earth, or hanged vp in ropes, dee continue longer sound in the ayre: but if wee may credite Aristotle in the Sommer Solstice, these, as the Penny-royall, and many other hearbes, dee at the same time flourish, which may be as if they were of a doubtfull life, that one while taking nourishment out of the earth, and another whiles from the ayre. But the Onyons lightly bud and shoote out, not being in the earth, and send forth faire greene blades by occasion of the moysture in the heades, but after the stemme shallbe full shot out, the heades wither.

To which Plinie wrote, that the Nuts be contrary, in that these do abate the strong sauour of the Onion. I read that many skilfull Gardeners vsed to sowe the Onyons and Garlike neere to Garland floures (but especially the Rose) to procure them to yeeld a sweeter sauour, and the same done by the counsell of the auntient and the worthy Plinie. which in my opinion, deserueth to be followed.

Truely, this one thing is greatly to be maruelled at, that the Onyõ alone of all hearbes, as Plutarch writeth, receiueth no damage of the Moone, and hath contrary vertues of encreasing and diminishing to her: for the Onion becommeth greene, and buddeth forth in the wane or last quarter of the Moone: contrariwise the encreasing of Light, the Onyon then withereth and rotteth.

For which cause, the Egyptian Priests in time past, refused the Onyon in their Religious meates, where otherwise, Fruites, Hearbes, Trees, and Beastes, receaue a dammage or diminishing and increasing through the occasion of this Starre, so that the Onyon onely obeyeth vnto the contrarie turnes of the Moone, whose preseruing vnto the Winter time, Columella prepared after this manner: hee chose the Onyons or Scalyons (that are all alike) which be not budded forth, or that greene blades appeared, and these dryed afore in the hote sunne, after which cooled againe in the shadowe, by strewing vpon Time or Sauorie, hee then laid them by courses, with either of these strewed betwæn in an earthen pot, and by powring the licour vpon, which was three partes of vineger, and one of brine: hee strewed then a good handfull of Sauery (in such maner) that the Onyons were couched or pressed vnder the Licour, which when they had drunke vp the Licour, and seemed

to

to lye drie, he poured vppon and filled the vessell with the like mixture, and in an apt place set the pot to preserue them to vse.

This one thing I will not omit, although the same may seeme childish, in that it is noted by the learned man Cato, who writeth, that the letters drawen and written with the iuice of the Onyon are inuisible, which then shew and appeare euidently, when the paper shall be heated at the fire: to conclude; the Onyons set in the midle of August in a red earth, do yeeld the yeare following their high stems and seede, but the worser will those be, which are bestowed in the earth, to serue greene in the Lent time.

The phisicke commodities of the Onyon.

ALthough the worthy Greeke Hippocrates more commended the sight, than the eating of ye Onyon, saying that the same in sight to be good and in bodie euill, forasmuch as it is hote & burning: yet I purpose heere to entreat somewhat of the Phisicke benefites of the Onyon, and of these, part faithfully gathered out of the Greeke, and part out of the Latin Writers, aswell Phisitions, as cunning and most diligent searchers of husbandly secrets.

The Onyon hath the propertie of heating in the fourth degree, & of a grosser substance, as Galen witnesseth.

The Greeke Sotion (both husbandman and phisition) is Author, that if any shall dayly eate the tender Onyon fasting with honny, it shall maintaine the continuance of health: the saide Authour reporteth besides, that the same recouereth and cureth vlcers: to these, that it remooueth the foule spots on the body, being diligently rubbed with it in the Sunne, and to profite the eares running, by dropping the iuice into them. The same annointed, helpeth the swellings in the throat, and these rolled vnder hote embers, and eaten with oyle, do helpe the cough.

The Onyon after the rosting eaten with honny, doth remoue the griefe of an euill stomacke: the Onyon eaten raw harmeth the members, in that it too much drieth the moisture of the body: the Onyon also eaten raw procureth a rough throat, and swelleth the stomacke: the Onyon notwithstanding applied with vineger on Pi es, doth in short time open them: the iuice of ye Onyon is profitably annoynted

with honny for the clearing of the eyes, and both remoueth the pin and webbe, and amendeth the bloud-shotten eyes: the iuice annointed on a bald place, recouereth the haires shed away.

There be which affirme, that the greene Onyon applied with vineger doth helpe the bite of a mad dogge within three dayes, but I rather suppose that the iuice added with Rue, Salt, and honny, and after the beating together workmanly applied, to performe the same: the often eating of the Onion, harmeth the cholericke, by procuring them hotter and drier in stomack: but this is to great purpose vnto the flegmaticke, in that it cutteth a sunder, and consumeth the superfluous humours in them.

The Onion rosted in embers, and applyed with barly meale doth stay the dropping of the eies, and helpe the vlcers of the priuities: the iuice besides dropped with womans milke into the eares, is said to amend the paine and noyse of the eares. Which also many haue giuen to persons sodenly swollen, by the drinking of water: and they haue prosperously giuen the Onyon to such as are molested with the perillous flure Dysenteria: and these applyed, haue marueilously profited the griefes of the Loynes, and the iuice of them with the iuice of Fennell, expelleth the water beginning betwéne the flesh and skinne, which together with the Rue, and honny, recouereth the downe right slumbering and sléeping, and with Raisons or Figs, applied on impostumes, both ripeneth and spédely openeth them.

The Onyons after the rosting vnder hote embers eaten both morning and euening, not onely help the pains of the breast, but cause an easie spitting vp of grosse humours, and purge the stomacke: the Onion after the mixing with honny and salt, applyed on wartes, doth make them spedely fall off euen by the roots.

If the Onions be often vsed through their sharpnesse, they ingender in the stomacke euill humours, procure thirst, swellinges and windinesse: yea, cause head-ach, and to become foolish, through the fumositie of them ascending to the head, and harme the Braine: for which cause, the dayly and too often vsing hinders reason, & procures terrible dreames, if so be a weake person newly crept out of sickes shall much eate of them: but especially raw, in that these giue a nourishment to the body.

I adde out of Galen, that if the Onions shalbe twice sodden, each water separated, and in the third water boyled, to giue a very good nourishment to the eater, being boiled with a fat flesh, & other pleasant spices added, yet are they weaker than the greene in working, although the euilnesse of the iuice be no longer remaining, nor felt.

The raw Onion moderately vsed, according to the rule of Phisicke, heateth and cutteth asunder grosse and clammy humours, openeth the waies of the vaines, prouoketh the Termes and vrine, and increaseth the appetite: the iuice also drawne vp by the Nosethrels, or the sauor receiued by the Nose, purgeth marueilously the head.

The Onion is better commended to be eaten, than the sauour allowed, in that the person which daily eateth of the yoong and tender Onions with Honny fasting, shall continue a longer time in perfit health and strength.

The iuice remooueth the white spots as well on the face, as body: the iuice applied with Hennes grease, healeth the kybes, galling of the heeles by a straight shooe: the iuice mixed with Hens grease and annointed, remooueth the red and wanne spots of the face: the Onion bruised with vineger, and annointed on scabbed places, both healeth and causeth a cleere skinne: the Onions after the boyling in wine or water, fried in Oyle, and in plaister forme vnder the nauell, asswageth the painfull gripinges & flure, happening to women in childe bed: the Onions rosted vnder hote embers, and mixed with leuen and oyle of Lilies, and applied in plaister forme on impostumes, speedily breaketh and procureth them to runne.

The commended vertues of the distilled water of the Onions.

THe most chosen and aptest time for the distilling of Onions, is in the first moneth of Harvest, for then ought the rootes to bee shred and workmanly distilled: this water drunk foure or fiue times vnto the quantitie of two ounces at a time, recouereth the swelling caused by the bite of a mad dog, or other beast; the same drawne vp by the Nosethrels, asswageth the grieuous paine of the head: the water helpeth the ach and paine of the teeth, if they be either rubbed or washed with the same: this also causeth haires to growe in any bald of place of the head, if the same be annointed with it: the drinking the water expelleth wormes.

What

What care, skill, and secrets to be learned in the sowing and ordering both of lesser, and greater Garlike. Chap. 21.

THe Garlike much desired, and often eaten of the husbandman, with fat beefe, and other sodden meates, ioyeth in an earth especially white, diligently digged and laboured without any dung bestowed in it, whose cloues broken off from the head, ought to be bestowed on the borders of beds round about, well a hand breadth a sunder, about the same time when the Onions are: and these with the beddes or little ridges made (in forme to such in the field) to be high raised, whereby the plants comming vp may the lesser be harmed with the showres falling, and the naturall moisture consisting in the earth. The cloues set in the ridges and borders of the beds may not be deepe, nor the earth raised on them like to hillockes (as many doe) but in an euen manner, and vnto the middle ioynts bestowed, which when they shall haue yeelded or sent vp their blades, then these to be diligently weeded about, for through the often doing they encrease the better, and yeeld a bigger head.

The Neapolitane Rutilius (writing of the Garlike in his instructions of husbandry) willeth that the Seedes to be committed to the earth in the moneths of Nouember December, Januarie, and Februarie, in a ground well digged and laboured, and the same white, without any dung bestowed in it, besides the earth the same time indifferent dry, and in a warme day: for the seedes on such wise handled, are caused to prosper and yeeld the better. Although the learned Plinie seemeth to write that the Seedes bestowed in in the earth doe slowly come vp, whereby these in the first yeare, onely yeeld a head no greater than a Leeke, but in the second yeare, they growe deuided, and in the third yeare come to their full growth and perfection, and such some suppose to be the fairer and seemelier.

The seeds of the Garlike with vs, better agree to be bestowed in the moneths of September, October, Februarie, & March, in a earth white, indifferent dry, and well laboured without dunging. If any happen to remaine in beds (as Rutilius reporteth) after ỳ seedes full

ripe

ripe and gone, those then renew in the yeare following of the owne accord, both in the roote and blade, yeeld seedes the same yeare, which may after be sowen in well laboured beddes, to send forth greene Garlike. If the owner would possesse Garlike both great and bigge in the heade, then before the same be shotte vppe into a stemme he must workemanlie tye all the toppes of the greene blades to an other growing next to it, which after tread softly downe with the feet.

The worthy Rutilius willeth, that when the stemme beginneth to appeare, to couer the same with earth after the treading downe, which in such manner to foresee, that it increase not into a bushe or many blades, this so handled in the hard treading downe, to be daily applyed that the iuice may run to the rote, and cause the head to ware the bigger. The like of which Plime in his first time experienced. The worthy Sotion in his Greeke obseruations of husbandrie, and also Rutilius with certain others report, that if the cloues of Garlike heads be committed to the earth, & the like pulled out of the grounde, when the Moone shall be discending and vnder the Horizone (as hid to vs) that the stinking sauour will in a manner be extinguished, so that the breath of the eaters, shal very little be felt: which Plinie seemeth somewhat otherwise to vtter, instructing that the heades (vnto the same purpose) ought to be bestowed when the Moone shallbe vnder the earth, and to be gathered when the Mone shall be in coniunction with the Sunne.

The said Greeke Sotion seemeth to affirme, that the Garlike heads may be caused to grow sweet of sauour, if in the setting the kernels of Oliues (after the ioyning with them) bee bestowed together in the earth, or the sharper endes blunted on some stone, and then committed to the earth, or else in the setting, that lies of ỳ oliues be bestowed with the cloues. The singular Didimus (Ruellius noting the same) vttereth, or rather Sotion (as the greek copy sheweth) ỳ the lothsomnesse or stinking sauour by the eating of Garlicke heads is abollished or put away, if the green and raw Bean be sone after eaten. Others there are, which wil the rote of the Beete to be eaten, after the rosting vnder hotte embers, affirming the same to be sufficient to remoue the strong sauor: Also with the like remedie Menander one of ỳ greeke writers witnesseth, as Pliny writeth of him, ỳ sauor to be dissembled

and hid. Our later writers of husbandrie and Phisicke report, that the ranck sauour of Garlike may be extinguished, with the onely eating of greene Parsly blades.

The commodiouser and apter time for the gathering of the Garlike heads, is in the decrease or wane of the Moone, the day being drie and faire, when the blades be withered, that they leane or hang downe.

Many of the ancient writers of husbandrie vtter, that the Garlike heads will endure a long time, & be to better purpose afterwards, if they be either hidde in chaffe, or after the tying togither hanged vp in the smoke. There be others which after the infusion of the heads a while in warme salt water, and letting them dry, doe likewise hide them in chaffe.

But the heads handled after either maner, do for the more parte remaine barren, or prosper not after the bestowing in the earth. To others it was sufficient to haue dried them ouer the heat of the fire, that they might after growe. The learned Plinie vttereth, that those heads of Garlike be of a sowre taste, which possesse the more cloues round about, and he addeth that no more lothsomnesse or strongnesse of sauour doth consist in them after the seething, then in the Onion like ordered. Nor he omitteth not, that the Garlike heads afore eaten to be in steede of the white Neeswort for the Pioners, if they minde to auoide and escape the hazard of death. There is another wild Garlike, which the Grekes name Ophioscoridon, in English Ramsies, growing of the owne accord in the fallow fieldes, through which the Kines milke by feeding on the greene blades, is caused to sauoure of the Garlike, yea the chéese made of the same milke, doth render in the eating the like ranckneſſe of sauor. The husbandmen name this both the wilde and serpentine Garlike.

This Garlike on such wise boyled, that it may not grow againe, and bestowed in beds, doth greatly auaile against the harme of birds to Seeds, as afore is vttered in my first parte, there writing, that the same of Plinie is named Alum. But here commeth to minde a marueilous matter, not to be ouerpassed, which is that neither the Weasell or squirrell will after the tasting Garlike, presume to bite any foules, by which practise, Pullets and other foules in the night being sprinckled ouer with the licoure of the Garlike, may be defended from harme of either of these.

There

There is yet a matter more worthy the remembrance, & the same far marueiouser, which Volateranus vtereth, that in his time happned a husbandman to sleepe open mouthed in the field by a hey cocke, cast vp in the Harueest time, which when he had vnwittily suffered an Adder to creepe into his bodie, with the eating incontinent of Garlike heads, was (as by a certaine preparation against poyson) deliuered, yet the venome and death of the Adder, consisting or remaining within the bodie distilled and shead forth in coeating, a matter to be maruelled at of the wise.

But this also is maruellous in the Garlik: that if it be boyled with a Salte liccure, the same dooth effectuously destroy the mites or little wormes in either peasons or beanes, so that the walles and floores of the barnes be wet with this mixture. Heere also I thought not to ouerpasse the maruellous discord of the Adamant stone and Garlike, which the Greekes name to be an Antipathia or naturall contrarietie betwéene them, for such is the hatred or contrarietie betwéen these two bodies (lacking both hearing and feeling) that the Adamant rather putteth away then draweth to it Iron, if the same afore be rubbed with Garlike, as Plutarchus hath noted, and after him Claudius Ptolomæus. Which matter examined by diuers learned, and founde the contrarie, caused them to iudge, that those skilfull men (especially Ptolomie) ment the same to be donne with the Egiptian Garlike. Which Dioscorides wrote to be small Garlike, & the same sweete in taste, possessing a beawtifull head, tending vnto a purple colour. There be which attribute the same to Ophioscorido, which Antonius Michrophonius Biturix, a singular learned man and well practised in sundrie skilles, vttered this approued secret to a friend whom he loued. And the same as last shall heere be placed, that diuers Garlike heads hanged on the branches or trées, do driue faroff birds from the spoyling of fruits, as the like Democritus noted in the greek instructions of husbandrie.

That the big Garlik named of certaine skilfull Authors the Affrica Garlike, is of far bigger increase, then ỳ Garden Garlike with vs, Which the worthy Greek Sotion, Columella, and Rutilius instruct, that the cloues to be broken from the head, and bestowed in a white ground, well laboured and dressed without any dung, and set in high ridges of beds, to the end the natural moisture of ỳ earth, nor shoures

falling may offend.

The time commended for setting of the cloues, is in the moneths of January, February and March, but some will to bestowe them in the earth, from the beginning of October, vnto the ende of Nouember, well a hand breadth a sunder, and vnto the middle ioynts, or rather a finger deepe in the earth, which growne vp to some height, to be often weeded about, and the earth dilligently raked, whereby the plants may the better prosper.

These further growne vp, the skilfull teach, to tye the toppes of the blades, by two & two together, which done, to tread the blades down with the foote, that the iuice by the same meanes may run to the rote to increase the heades bigger.

The other instructions needefully to be learned, may the owner conceiue by the former taught of the garden Garlike, which for the Phisick benefits deserueth a place in euery grounde, especially in the husbandmans Garden.

The Phisicke helpes and commodities of the Garlicke.

THe learned Plinie seemeth to me, not to haue vnaduisedly written, that the Garlike dooth serue vnto many vses in Phisicke, and to the husbandman especially is profitable, for which cause of sundrie it is rightly named the husbandmans Triacle.

This (according to the agreement of the skilful) heateth and drieth in the fourth degree, the Onion, Garlike, and Leeke (as the skilfull Ægineta witnesseth in his first book) indued with a soure vertue, doth heat the body, extenuate and cut the grosse humours in the same, yet the Cholericke ought to beware ỳ they do not too often eate the Garlike, especially in the Sommer time and hotte seasons, for at such times the Garlike inflameth and drieth the body, and increaseth both the red and adust Choller: the worthy Greeke Sotion (principall of the writers of husbandrie) writeth that the garlike eaten wõ meat, or hanged against the region of the stomack, doth expell wormes in ỳ body, & applied in plaister forme, preuaileth against ỳ bite of either snake or adder. The heads burned & mixed with hony, and the same applied, dooth remoque the blacke and bleu spots, and cause a faire colour.

The

The Garlike eaten, putteth away the inward swelling of the bodie, softneth and openeth impostumes, and drawetb forth matter, being afore sodden, and applied thereon.

If the head be annointed with the iuce of Garlike, it killeth both lice and nits. The Garlike also is drunke to great purpose, with the decoction of Dryanie (as Dioscorides witnesseth) against lice and nits of the head.

The heads eaten do moue drine, and are supposed to amend the defaults of the kidneis: and a cloue holden in the mouth, ceaseth the toothach, proceeding of a cold cause.

The ashes of the Garlicke heads, after the mixing with hony, annointed, staieth the shedding of haire: in the same maner vsed, amendeth the faults or spots of the skinne. If the ashes be strewed on foule vlcers, which are open, it speedely cureth them.

The ashes of the heads, after the dilligent mixing with honny, and May butter, ãnointed, doth in short time remoue the foule scabs, and Leaprie, and cleareth the skinne, if the same be dayly excercised in the bath or hotte house.

The Garlike tenderly sodden and eaten, procureth a cleare voyce, and recouereth an old cough, and correcteth the stomack cold, the same mightily drieth vp the moysture of the stomacke.

If any shall afore eat of the Garlike, he shall not be endamaged by the bit of a venemous worme or Serpent, the Garlike brused and applied on the bite, doth speedely cure it.

And the same in these maruelous (as writeth the skilfull Serapio.) that although the heads eaten, doth helpe the sound sight of the eyes, yet do these comforte and relieue the dulnesse of sight, through the moisture consisting in them. The boyled heades eaten with oyle and salt, do cure the mattering and breaking forth of wheikes, and remoue both pimples and tetters. As well the raue as boyled heades eaten, do remoue an old cough: but the boyled heads eaten are farre more profitable then the raue, and likewise the sodden, then the rosted: and on such wise to the voyce they do more profit and helpe. The person which shall afore haue eaten sundrie Garlike heads, if he after happen to drinke poyson, shall not be harmed by it.

The heades with the greene blades boyled in wine and drunke

doth not onely moue vrine, but procureth the termes, and draweth downe the after burden, if ye belly afore be annointed with it: the like also may a smoke of the Garlike procure, if a woman sitting in a hollow chaire, and couered close about with clothes, receiueth the fume. The Garlike brused with the figge tree leaues, and Camomil floures by a like quantity, and applied in plaister forme, doth cure the bite of a mad dogge, or other beast.

The person which weakly disgesteth meat eaten, through the coldnesse of the stomacke, shall find great helpe through the sundrie times eating of the sodden hearbes with oyle and vinger.

Paxagoras vsed the Garlike in wine, against the kings euil.

Hippocrates supposeth the after burden to bee drawne downe through the sitting ouer the smoke, and Diocles, frensie persons they doe greatly helpe: if they after the boyling shal be eaten, and the same the dropsie persons, boyled with Centorie: and the Garlike eaten, stayeth the flure of the bellie, which the skilfull report, the greene more effectuously to performe, brused and drunke in pure wine with Coliander.

For an olde cough proceeding of a colde cause, let the soles of the feete, paulmes of the hands, and chyne of the backe, be dilligently annoynted with Barrowes grease, finely tempered with three heads of Garlike cleane pilled.

The Garlike eaten with fresh butter, or applyed in plaister forme on the stomacke, dooth in short time kill the wormes in Children.

The Garlike boyled with vineger and drunke with water and hony, expelleth the brode wormes in the body, and all other harmefull creeping things in the bowells: the heades boyled with oyle, and applyed in playster forme, doth cure the bit of venemous thinges, in what parte soeuer the same happeneth.

The harmes and swellinges of the bladder, are remoued with this ointment, if it be sundry times applyed without.

The Garlike boyled with milke, and eaten, doth heale the vlcers of the Lunges.

The Garlike boyled with Centorie in wine, and sundrie times drunke, remoueth the dropsie, gathered of a colde cause. The Garlike brused & mixed with Coliander, and on such wise taken with wine,

helpeth

helpeth the griefe of the Lunges, and difficultie of the vrine. The heads boyled and bruised with beanes, and tempered either with oyle Oliue, or oyle of Poppy, and of the same an ointment made, remoueth head-ache, annointed on the temples.

There is no better thing for the toothache procéding of a cold cause then to wash and retaine for a time, the decoction of the Garlike, thrée cloues bruised in vineger, which vndoubtedly ceaseth the paine.

The heades also boyled with vineger and Nitre, do remoue the itch, and taken in a white broth, ceaseth the grieuous paine of the going often to the stoole. A Garlike head after the boyling in sweete wine, with a halfe pennie waight of Beniamine drunke, dooth in short time expell the quartaine.

The same bruised and mixed with fresh butter, profiteth very much the pippes of hens and cocks.

The person hardly making water, and subiect to the stone, shall greatly be eased of the grieuous paine, by eating of Garlike sundrie times.

The worthie Galen vttereth, that the heades tenderly boyled in two or thrée waters, do remoue the soureneſſe of them, but these then yeelde a verry small nourishment, in respect of the rawe eaten with vineger.

The inconueniences of Garlike out of Plinie.

THe defaults of the Garlike are (as Plinie writeth) that it dulleth the sight, causeth windineſſe, harmeth the stomacke and much at a time eaten, causeth thirst.

So that for all causes it is better cõmended sodden then raw, and boyled then rosted.

The Garlike boyled and rosted, brought to fine pouder with Masticke and Pellitorie, if the mouth be washed with the same decoction, doth marueilonsly helpe the toothach.

The Garlike profiteth crafts men, husbandmen, and the Flegmaticke, and those which for the more part drinke water, and both vse cold meats and hard of disgestion.

The

The Garlike auaileth against the infections of waters, mutation of places, and other contagious ayres (which hastely annoy) by the eating afore of it, in suspect places.

As touching the Affrica Garlike, the same may serue vnto all the diseases and griefes in a maner, which tofore are written of the garden Garlike.

The commended vertues of the distilled water of Garlike.

THe heades with the greene blades finely shredde, ought to bee distilled in the Canicular or dogge daies, in the Tinne Limbeck. This distilled water, helpeth the swellings in the throat, if a linnen cloth wet in the same, be workmanly applyed, and drunke, vnto the quantitie of two ounces at a time, or gargelled so often in the mouth and throat, vntill the patient be better amended.

The water drunke euery morning fasting, vnto the quantitie of two ounces at a time, doth maruellously amend the greene sickenesse, and swelling of the Splene, being vsed for twelue or fourteene dayes space.

The water also drunke, profiteth vnto all the saide sicknesses and griefes, which tofore are vttered of the blade and reote.

What care and skill is required in the sowing and ordering both of the Scalion and Squile Onion. Chap. 22.

THe Scalions better prosper and come vp, being set then sowne, for when they are committed to the earth in the seedes, the owner may not hope for a seemly growth of them, before the second yeare. The owner may bestowe the Scalions in well dressed beddes, from the beginning of November, vnto the ende of Februarie, for to enioy the propper yeelde the next Spring following: and they require to bee likewise set in the grounde (as afore taught) to the Garlike.

But

But they are to be plucked vp to vse, before that the March violetts be in their full pride and florish: for if these be longer suffred, as vnto the time of the perfit flourishing of the violets, they are then founde feeble and withered. And for to know when the Scallions are ripe, it behoueth the Gardener to marke whether the blades beneath be withered, for on such wise seene, denoteth the full ripenesse of them. And to possesse Scallions with bigge heades, it behoueth the Gardener, to bestowe round about the rootes soft Cowe dunge, and to water them often, which growne to a reasonable heigth, hee must also tread downe and order as afore vttered in the vsing of the Leeke.

The Squill Onion better commeth forward in the Garden being set with the head, then sowne in the seed, for when the seeds are committed to the Earth, they yeelde slowelie their seemely bushe and heads.

The owner may bestowe the heades of Squill Onions in well laboured and dressed beddes, so that the grounde be of a drie nature, and tending vnto a Saltnesse, whether gravelly or sandie, for they desire a like dilligence to be bestowed on them, as is afore vttered of the Onion and Garlike.

The ancient and latter writers report, that there are two kindes of the Squill Onion, as the Male & Female, the Male yeelding white leaues, and the Female blacke. This strong by nature, will continue in the hanging vp (in a shadowie place) a long time greene, & it lightly groweth (as Theophrastus writeth) bestowed in drie earth, & speedily shooteth vp to a heigth, it keepeth fruits to be preserued, especially Pomegranats, the stalkes afore broken off: and this is saide to beare floure thrice in a yeare, foreshewing by it, the three seasons of committing seeds to the earth, as the first time of bearing floures, to signifie the first time of plowing, the second time of floure bearing, the second time: the third, the last time: for how many times these appeare, euen so often is the earth accustomed to be laboured.

The floure also of the Squill Onion (as Beritius writeth) shooting vp in a straight stemme, if so be it doth not hastily wither, signifieth the large or plentifull yeeld of fruits.

The phisicke helpes both of the Scelion and Squil Onin.

AS touching the benefit of the Scallions, there is no other aide nor profit to be hoped after, sauing that these yelde a more delight in the mouth, then the health of the bodie, for the Scallions serue to no other purpose, then to stirre vp or moue persons vnto the veneriall act.

The Squill Onion hath the vertue of heating in the seconde degree, and cutting especially of the toughe matter in the stomacke.

The Squill Onion vsed rawe, is verry hurtfull to the bodie, especiallye to the inward members or partes, for which cause, the Squil Onion is not inwardly to be taken, except they afore be either rosted or boyled: or by some other manner prepared.

The worthiest force of the same in medicines is, by sharpening it especiallye with Vineger, for which cause (being so prepared) is named the Squilliticke vineger, the making of whiche is after this manner.

Take the heades cleane pilled from the outward skinnes, those (after the shredding) hange in a Sunny place, being stytched through with small packthreed (in suche manner) that the partes bee a prettie distance asunder, which like handled let hang for forty dayes space.

The drie peeces after bestowe into a hogshead of most sharpe Vineger, but in such maner, that these of no part touch the vessell. The Hogshead after couered so close, that no vapours may breath forth, and sette into the hotte Sunne.

After the xlvii. day, let the vessell be lifted vp, and the pieces taken forth, which done, the owner shall then possesse a moste sharpe Vineger.

There are others, which make the Squilliticke Wine after this manner: the pieces of it shred, they bestowe into a vessell of wine new made (that being put in) it may on such wise heat togither: and they vse this wine to those purposes, as the Vineger.

The Phisicke commodities of the Squill Onion are (as the learned

ned Constantine, in his booke de gradibus vttereth) to amend the dropsie persons such fetching the winde hardly, the defaults of the Liuer and Milt proceeding of clammy humors.

The persons sicke of the Ague, and hauing erulcerations or orses within the bodie, ought to refraine the taking of the Squilliticke vineger. For the Squilliticke vineger or wine, purgeth grosse fleume, and corroderh, procureth the going to the stole, and vrine, & causeth vomitting.

The squill Onion (after the mind of Dioscorides) is rosted after this manner, this wrought in paste or clay is set into an Oven or couered with coles, vntill the paste or crusse about it be sufficiently baked, which drawne or taken forth, if the head be yet not sufficiently softned, then after the couering of it with paste, the second time, and set it in an Oven, bake the same throughly.

The Onions are also kindly baked or rosted in an Earthen potte, the mouth well stopped with dowe or course paste, and sette into the Oven.

This besides cut into roundepieces, & after the stitching through with Packthreed, that these be a pretty distance asunder, hang in the ayre from the Sunne beames, for on such wise handled, it serueth to the making of the oyle, vineger, and wine.

The singular Dioscorides teacheth the manner of boyling the Squill Onion, after this sorte: Take the middle partes (the outwarde skinnes pilled away) which after the slyeing into partes and boyled, throw the first water forth, on which poure other water, boyling in like condition: and this so often do, vntill no more bitternesse nor tartnesse in the water bee felte: after these, the slices hanged vppe, and dried in the shadowe, as aboue vttered, which done, if half a dramme of the fine pouder be sucked downe with Hony, the same amendeth the long continuance of the hard fetching of breath, and olde cough, and the grieses both of the Liuer and Milte, yea the dropsie and Jaundise. The like worketh the Squilliticke Vineger, and the same expelleth wormes, and other corruptions in the bodie.

The Oximel made of the squilliticke vineger, expelleth melancholy, remoueth the Apoplexie & falling sicknes, breaketh & sendeth forth the stone, ỳ same also purgeth ỳ Matrice of clammie humors, and helpeth

the acht in the Hippes. The Squilliticke vineger fastneth the teeth, by sundry times washing and rubbing of them with it, and amendeth a stinking breath.

The same dropped into the eares, remoueth the clammy humours hindering the hearing. The oile in which the squil Onion shal be steeped, annointed on places, putteth away wartes, and cureth both the chaps and clifts of the feete: the same annointed on moist or running scabs, healeth (or at the least) correcteth them, putteth away the dandrie of the head, and profiteth annointed on the bite of Serpents, and other venemous wormes.

The squil Onion containeth in it an oile which is blacke: this oyle tempered with Honny, and annointed on a bald place, procureth haire to grow. The squiliticke vinegar holden in the mouth amēdeth the corrupted and foule gums. The same vsed, procureth a cleerer sight of the eyes: healthful and profitable it is to the greefs of the sides and stomacke, if a little be taken twise a day, but haftily drunk down, it ouercommeth the partie for a while.

The squiliticke Onion boiled in wine and drunke, expelleth all the inward diseases of the body, and helpeth especially a hot and corrupt Liuer.

The Squill Onion prepared in the aboue saide maner, and boyled with Wormewood and Hastick in water and vineger, and swetned with Sugar, helpeth vnto the stopping of the Liuer and Milt, recouereth the kings euill and dropsie, mightily causeth vrine, draweth downe the termes, and expelleth the dead yongling. If Mice happen to drinke of the water in which the squiliticke Onion shall be steeped for a night, they soone after dye.

The distilled water of the Squill Onion, mixed with meale which Mice willingly eate, and bestowed in such places where they haunt, dooth in short time kill those which eat of the same.

What care and skill is required in the preparing and ordering of the Garden Saffron.

Chap. 23.

AS touching the Garden Saffron, it ioyeth to be bestowed in a mean and chalkie ground, and euermore well laboured, and it may verry well be set in the beddes, where the Onions haue bene newly plucked vp. The Saffron refuseth watering and moisture, for which cause the heads ought to be set in beddes betweene which furrowes be made, that these may receiue the moisture falling, which they greatly feare. Besides these the heads are greatly endamaged through the resort of mice, and Moles, which greatly couet to feed on the roots or Onions of the Saffron.

The remedies against these two noyous beasts, are fully taught in my first part, which the reader may resort vnto.

The heads are rather to be bestowed in the earth, then the seeds, in that the seeds (after the committing to the earth) prosper not.

The heads are to be set on ridges, in the month of Aprill or May, and the heads laide on a heape, to lye and wither in the shadow from the Sunne beames, for the space of eight dayes before, which done, to set them with the hairy rootes in the earth well laboured and dressed and at length one by another, well halfe a hand breadth asunder, and three fingers deepe. Certaine there are which will them to be set for the better yeeld, after the midst of August, vnto the midle of September, letting these to remaine for two or three yeares, and that euery yeare in the month of Aprill and May the leaues or blades then dry, to break off orderly, the other prospering to weede about, and to raise the earth after, two fingers deepe, but in such manner, that the heads be not touched.

After that the hearbes be sufficiently cleansed, when as the floures be withered and dead, especielly in August and towards Harueſt, which flourish not aboue a moneth, then these are to be gathered in the morning after Sunne rysing, and after the drying by a gentle fire to be kept together in bags of leather, in a close and drye place.

And this one thing as maruellous, is worthy to be noted, that the roote or Onion standing quite out of the earth, yeeldeth not with-

standing the propper floure of continuance but a day or two after the full opening, at the season of the yeare: but the head afterwards (as deprived of nourishment) withereth and rotteth.

The blades be fresh and greene all the winter through, in that the heads be full of iuice, and sufficient strong to indure the colde season. When the saffron is set, and in the third yeare digged vp, there are round about each head fiue or sixe heades growing, and ioyned together within the earth

The best Saffron is the same, which is fresh and new, and excelleth in the goodnesse of colour, in such manner, that the tops in which the seedes be contained be white, and mixed with a rednesse: the chiue also is not lightly broken, and rubbed in the hand, coloureth the skin, and is in sauour comfortable, with a great sharpnesse. And this is named the Orientall Saffron.

The Phisicke benefits and helpes of the Saffron.

THe Saffron hath the propertie of heating in the second, and drying in the first degree, as Ægineta witnesseth. The Saffron endureth for fiue yeares in perfect strength, being close kept in a lether bag, and set in a dry place.

Take a scruple of good Saffron, or the third parte of a dramme, and halfe a graine weight of pure Muske, this mixed togither with the best and hot wine, drinke fasting, for it is a singular remedie against the hard fetching of breath, of what cause soeuer the same shall happen.

The Saffron procureth a fresh and faire collour to the drinkers of it: it comforteth the heart, purgeth and causeth healthfull bloud, and remoueth poysons from the heart. Taken in meat it causeth a long and easie breathing, and helpeth the Asthma.

Against the infection and plague inwarde, many after the torrifying of the Saffron, Triackle and Mustard seede in an emptie egge shell close stopped, do make an electuarie with other spices adioyned, which after the taking expelleth the poyson or infection by sweates.

The vse of it profiteth impostumes in the brest, & those that be short winded: it amendeth the milt, moueth the veneriall act, and causeth

brine, this also auaileth against the vehement aking and paines of the head, if such a plaister bee made with the same: take of Saffron, Gumme Arabicke, Euphorbium, and Mirhe, of each a like waight, these after the finely working to pouder, and tempering with the white of an egge, apply in the plaister forme to the forehead, for this without doubt auaileth.

The Saffron taken either in meat or drink, procureth brine, & the Termes, this also amendeth the yelow Jaundise, drunke especially with sweet wine or Malmsey: this giuen besides to an vlcered brest, stomacke, liuer, lungs, kidneis and bladder, greatly profiteth.

For the grieuous paine of the Goute, take a quantitie of Saffron, with crums of white bread and milke, after the boyling togither, applyed in the forme of a pultise, on swellings, impostumes and vlcers, doth greatly aswage both the swelling and paine, yea mightily softeneth and breaketh impostumes.

If with Opium, barly meale, milke, and the white of an egge, an ointment be made after arte, and annointed on any painefull and sore place, it doth aswage the griefe in short time. The Saffron (as Vitalis writeth) doth greatly amend the feebling of the heart, and weaknesse of stomacke. The Saffron comforteth palsey members, and softeneth the hardnesse of parts: for the which cause, the same named Dricrocie, is right profitable. The saffron remoueth the griefe of the eyes, either of bloud or other blemish, if with Rose leaues brought to pouder, and mixed with the yolke of an egge, the same be applyed in plaister forme on a linnen cloth to the eye. The Saffron remoueth all swellings and griefes of the eyes, if the same be especially mixed with wine, and applyed in plaister forme.

The Saffron is profitable mixed with womans milke and annointed, for the distilling of the eies The Saffron remoueth drunkennes, drunke with Ciuite. The person also which shall drinke the pouder of Saffron in wine, shall not be ouercome by drinking. This besides is verry profitable for remedies of the eares.

What

What skil, care and diligence is required in the workmanly sowing, and ordering of the Nauewe.

Chap. 24

The Nauewes and Turnups, are sowne after one manner in earth well turned vp, and orderly dressed, or if the owner will in earable ground, and will indure in a manner any ayre: yet these desire a drie ground, rather leane and gravelly and diligently turned vp.

The seedes well prosper, bestowed in a fine poudered earth, well laboured afore: and to possesse faire Nauewes, let not the seedes be a boue three yeares old: for being elder, the seedes run into Coleworts. If the plantes in the comming vp appeare too thicke togither, the owner may pluck them vp, and set them thinner in other well dressed places. These also in the growing vp, ought dilligently to be weeded, and the earth to be digged about, and let the greater and fairer still grow, to possesse their seedes, which in the month of August, diligently bestow in a well laboured earth.

To commit seedes to the earth, the owner ought to stay vntill the ground be well moistened with showres, for bestowed soone after, they prosper and come the speedier vp: But the owner or Gardener ought in any case to take heed, that he bestowe not the seeds in any shadowie place, for the shadowie places are disagreeable and hurtfull to the plants, although the ground be good, fertile and well laboured.

The propertie many times of the ground dooth alter the Nauewe into a Turnup, and the Turnup into a Nauewe.

The owner ought to gather the Nauewes in the moneth of Nouember: and to possesse them all the winter time, he must bury the roots in sand lying in a seller, that he might not onely eat of them in the winter time, but all the Lent through.

The worthy Nauewes be those, which are rather long, & as they were crisped, and not big, and possessing fewe rootes, at the most but one seemly roote, and the same straight and sharp downward,

There be which make a singular cōposition of the Nauewes, with Radish rootes, a little Salt, Honny, Mustard, delectable spices, and Vineger: yea the same may be made without spices, both wholsome and profitable.

The

The Phisicke benefits of the Nauewes.

THe worthy Galen reporteth the Nauewe to be hot in the second degree, and moist in the first.

The Nauewes tenderly boyled, do nourish much, yet euilly or hardly digested, and they make soft flesh, and the same puffed vp, yet this lesse then the Turnup, who afore ought to be boyled in water, and that first water after the boiling powred forth, then into a second water bestowed, diligently boile them, for the hardnesse of their substance, will well be tempered, and meanly ingender a nourishment betweene good and euill.

The Nauewes which are not throughly boiled, do euilly digest, and procure a windinesse in the bodie, besides a stopping in the veins, and naturall powers: for which cause, these yeeld a more commoditie to the stomacke, and digest better, being twice boyled in faire water, and shifted a third time into a most fat broth, where boyled vnto a sufficient tenderneſse, and then eaten, there be which boile them a third time in new Cow-milke, for the better digesting.

The Seedes confected with Suger, and eaten, increase Sperme in man. But the Seedes bruised and drunke, doe especially auaile against poysons, for the which cause, these are profitably ministred with Triacle.

What care and skill is required in the sowing and rightly ordering of the Rape and Turnup.

Chap. 25.

THe Rapes be not much differing from the Nauewes and Turnuppes, sauing that these be bigger, and sweet in the eating.

For the Rapes or Turnuppes be much greater, and in the eating pleasanter then the Nauewes: The Rapes require a like ordering and dressing of the Earth, as afore vttered of the Nauewe, which for truetb ought to bee rather sowne in the moneth of September, then in any other time, in a moyst earth, well dunged, diligently turned in and dressed: for by that meanes they prosper and come the better forward, and are caused to be fairer, tenderer, bigger, and swéter of taste through the colde season following,

like as the hoarie frostes, snow, and cold mists, then in the drie and warme season of the yeare.

After these be come vp, and ready to be remoued, the owner must carefully see vnto, that the leaues be not gnawne neither of spiders, nor by any other vermine or wormes, and for the auoiding of like annoiance, it shall be profitable for the Gardener (well a day before the committing of the Seedes to the earth) to mixe the Seeds with the pouder or dust of planke boords, or rather with the soote of a chimny, which after wet with water, to the end the Seeds may receiue some moisture, and being thus ordered, bestow the whole togither in the earth the next day following.

The skilfull Neapolitane Rutilius reporteth that the Rape or turnup (as the Nauew) prosperetb vnder euery aire, and desireth to be bestowed in a fat and loose earth, and the same so lose, that it in a manner falleth to pouder, whereby the Seedes may prosper, and come the spedier forward.

The seedes also are to be bestowed with fine poudred earth, to the end the plantes may not come vp too thicke togither, about the end of July, vnto the midst of September: and if raine happen not the day before, then the day following, moisten the ground with water, gently sprinckled vppon.

If the seedes committed to the earth be bestowed thin, the plants in the comming vp (by dilligence of the Gardener) will increase the bigger, for which cause, where the plants grow thick togither, & these come to good strength, the owner may pluck vp sundry, and bestowe those a good distance asunder, whereby they grow the bigger in root.

And for the better furtherance of their growth, the owner shall sundrie times water and weed about the plantes. The seedes may be sowne in the open field, and where corne grew, if so be the ground be diligently ploughed, and the weedes weeded forth, these after the bestowing in the Earth, may the owner onely couer with the harrowe or rake, because the seedes lye shallow on the ground.

The seedes ioy in an open field, far from the shadow of trees, in that these lying vnder shadowe be much harmed: if the owner minde to commit seedes to the earth in a dry season, hee may then bestowe them in some well dressed place being moist and shadowie, thicke togither after the maner of the Colewort.

After

After this, when the plantes be well growne vp, and the earth sufficiently moistened with showres, the owner may remoue and set the plantes in larger places well dressed, from the end of August vnto the entring of the Sunne into Libra or middle of September.

The Rapes to serue in the winter time, ought to be gathered in the month of October, and those which are the fairer, by plucking away the outward leaues, may be set againe in well dunged and dressed earth, to yeeld seedes the sommer following.

And to preserue the Rape or turnup rootes, to serue the winter and Lent time, the owner may worke after this manner, by washing first the rootes, and these raw, bestow in rankes one vppon another, and in ech ranke strew salt, fennell seedes, and saueric, or onely couer them with salt, close couched, and on such wise letting these remaine for eight daies, poure so much faire water vppon, as will couer them, Which done, let the vessell stand in some vault or seller, to serue for the aboue saide times, or longer if the owner will, if so be he fill vp the vessell, when these lye bare and drie. These hitherto Rutillius in his instructions of husbandry.

This one thing is maruellous and worthy the noting, so small a seede to encrease in roote, to such a bignesse as we many times see them: of which the like hath bene seene to haue waied thirtie, yea fortie pound waight, to the admiration of many.

The owner ought especially to take heed: that the seedes to be committed to the earth, be not aboue three yeares olde. For the ground otherwise of the Rapes will change and bring forth Celewortes.

For to enioy faire and big roots, let the owner new set those roots which be growen vnto a finger bignesse, wel a span distance one from the other, Which done, and these somwhat more growen, the owner ought to tread downe with the foote, and diligently couer the heades thicke with earth, whereby the iuice of the leaues and stalkes may run to the encreasing of the rootes.

The rootes after the gathering in the month of Nouember, may likewise be preserued, to serue the Winter and Lent time, as afore is vttered of the Nauew.

The Phisicke vertues and helpes of the Rapes.

THe Rapes heate in the second degree, and moisten in the first: these cause many humours, hardly digest, and increase muche winde. The sowne Rapes are hard of digestion, which notwithstanding boyled do swell the belly, and increase the humours in the bodie.

The Rapes haue a marueilous propertie in sharpning the sight, as the singular Auerrois writeth: Yet these throughly boyled, as I afore vttered to be done by the Nauewes, do yeeld a nourishment, and are profitable to the bodie: contrariwise these eaten rawishe or not well boyled, doe hardly digest, cause winde in the bodie, and molest the stomacke.

The Rape seedes vsed in steed of triacle, recouereth and helpeth poysoning, if any hauing drunke or eaten poyson, shall take the seeds bruised in water and honnie, this of experience knowne, represseth or abateth the force of poison, that the same cannot harme.

The Rape or turnup roots confected with vineger, doth coole and ingender wind, yet these extinguish the hot and drie bloud, of which most great and perrillous sicknesses are caused. The rootes and seedes eaten doe stirre and moone the veneriall act.

They are profitable to health, being eaten after the third boyling, and if any foully arrayed with scabs, which represent ỳ kind of a leaprie, doe washe all the bodie with water in which the Rape seeds shal afore be boyled, it doth with the same cause in short time a fairer and cleare skin. The Rape rootes boiled in May butter, after the tender seething eaten with a little salt, doe loose the breast: the decoction of them taken, ceasseth a drie cough: boiled with oyle olive, and eaten with pepper and a little salt, doth helpe digestion. The rootes daily eaten, do engender grosse humours, for which cause greatly misliked of Democritus, to be vsed for a proper sustenance.

The decoction or broth of the rootes tẽderly boiled, applyed on palsie members, the hot Goute, and kibed heeles, doe spẽdily amend ẕ help these: if any in the side of the roote after the making of a hole, do bestow in it the oile of Roses, and vnwrought war, and after the tender roasting vnder hotte embers, doe aplie the same in vlcered or sore

kibes,

kibes it shall in short time cure them.

The benefits of the distilled water of Rapes.

THe garden Rape or turnup both leaues and rootes shred, ought to be distilled about the end of June, in a tin Limbecke.

This water preuaileth against the galling of members, if these be daily washed and supplyed with the same, and that a linnen cloth wet in it, be applied twice or thrice a day.

This helpeth any burning or scalding, if the same be washed with it, but after a crust gathered in one place, the same will in no maner be remooued, but through the daily washing of it with this water, which in the end perfitly cureth the sore.

The distilled water of the putrified Rapes, applyed often hotte with a linnen cloth wet in it, dooth greatly profit the swelling and sores of the foote, caused of cold.

What skill nd dilligence is required with the secrets to be learned in the sowing and ordering of the Radish. Chap. 26.

THe garden Radish with vs, is better knowne, then I with pen can vtter the discription of the same, for in a maner euery person as well the rich as the poore, the citizens as contrimen, when their stomacke is slack or irketh at meat: they then to procure an appetite to feeding, by the same root, by cutting the roots either into a length on each side, or into round slyces, do workemanly season them with salt, heating them for the more delight in the mouth, betweene two dishes, supposing a more tenderneſſe caused to the roots, through the like doing: whose care and dilligence in the bestowing of it in the earth, ought, (after the mind of Columella) to be after this manner: that the beddes, before the bestowing of the seedes, be well laboured, and workemanly turned in with dung, and when the rootes be growne to some bigneſſe, then the earth to be raised and diligently heaped about them, for the rootes shall be naked or lie bare of earth, that both the Sunne and ayre beat vppon them, then will they be-

come in their further growth, both hard and hollow like to the Mushrome, as Plinie reporteth, which prescribeth to these both a loose and moist earth.

The worthy Rutilius (in his instructions of husbandrie) utteretb that the Radishes refuse a hard, sandy, and grauelly ground, and doe ioy in the moisture of the aire: besides, these ought to be sowne in beddes a good distance asunder, and the earth deepe digged after a late or new raine fallen, except the place by hap shall be moist, and soone watered.

The seedes committed to the earth, ought immediatly and with diligence, to be couered light with a Rake, and neither dung bestowed within, nor strewed vpon the beddes (although Columella otherwise willeth) but onely chaffe of corne, as after shall further be vttered.

The skilfull practised in Garden matters report, that these better prosper being orderly set, then curiously sowne, and that these to be bestowed in the earth, as both sowne and set, at two times of the yeare, as in the moneth of Februarie, and beginning of March, if the owner shall enioy the rootes timely, and in August vnto the middest of September, if the owner would enioy them much sooner: & these then bestowed in the earth, are without doubt far better, for asmuch as the Radish in the colde season, groweth and encreaseth especially in the roote, and is the same time tenderer, whereas the plants otherwise in the faire and warme season, runne vp into a leafe and stem. Yet this manner of trauaile, to possesse them in the sharpe Winter, is little in vse with vs, because the Radishe can ill abide the bitter ayre, which once bitten and tainted with the frosts either withereth, or soone after dieth: yet the learned Plinie writing of the Radishe vttereth the same to ioy so much in the cold ayre, that in Germanie hath sometimes bene seene a Radishe, which grew in compasse so big as an infants middle.

The skilfull Aristomachus in his learned instructions of husbandrie willeth that the leaues of the Radishe in the winter time be broken off, and throwne away, and to heape the earth high about them, least puddles of water do stand in the beds, for the roots on such wise increase and be bigge in the sommer time.

Howsoeuer the rootes shalbe handled, certaine it is, that the cold

ayre

ayre and frostes do increase and sweeten the rootes (as afore vttered of the Rape) if so be they may continue in winter time: for the colde ayre conuerteth the increasement into the rootes, and not into the leaues, although that those (as Theophrastus vttereth) doe ware then hard in many places.

The rootes are caused to grow the sweeter in eating, and more delectable in taste, if the leaues be broken off (as Plinie hath noted) before the Radishes shoote vp into a stemme.

And the leafe of the Radishe, how much the smaller the same shall be, euen so much the tenderer and delectabler roote will it yeelde, which by watering with a salt licour, or pickle, causeth to breath forth the bitternes quite, if any such rest or be in the roote.

As the like Plinie wrote, that the Radishe to be fedde, yea and willed the rootes, for the tendernesse, to be often watered with pickle, or salt water.

The Egiptians watered with Nytre, to the end the rootes might be commendable in sweetnesse and delight to the mouth, which possesse a Cartilage and thicke rinde: to these, in many rootes, sharpe in tast, yet delectable in the eating, which are parte left bare abous the ground becommeth tough and hard, through the occasion afore vttered, and hollow (like to the Mushrom) vnlesse they be well couered about with light earth.

There are Radishes supposed to be of a feminine kinde, which bee so sharpe, and these possesse smaller leaues, and to the eye be a fayrer greene, as Rutilius writeth.

If the owner couet to enioy sweet rootes in tast, then after the connsell and mind of the singular Florentine, let him steepe the seeds for two daies before, in either water or honny, or Cuite, or else sugred water, and these dried in the shadowe, to commit them orderly to the earth.

If the Gardener desire to possesse faire and great rootes, let him (after the minde of theaforesaide Rutilius) when the rootes be growen to some bignesse, pluck away all the leaues, sauing two within to growe still, which done, couer the earth ofteneuer the heades to grow the sweeter and pleasanter.

A like experience in causing the roote to become maruellous big, doth Plinie skilfully vtter and teach, after this manner, by taking a great dibble, with the which making a hole in the earth well fire fingers deepe, fill it vp with fresh chaffe, after bestow a seed of the Radish with dung and light earth ouer the mouth, couering the same in like maner euen with the earth, these performed, the root will grow and encrease vnto the bignesse of the hole.

The skilfull practitioners report, that the goodnesse of the Radish is knowne by the leaues, which the sweeter they be (after the manner) so much the tenderer and more pleasant are the rootes in the eating: the like teacheth or sheweth the rinde, which the thinner the same is, so much the delectabler is the roote in the taste of the mouth.

The thinne bestowing of the seedes in well dressed beds, from the end of August vnto the midst of September, and after the comming vp diligently weeded about, with leaues broken off, the light earth couered about, and after watered with salt water, doe procure the roots not onely to ware, or grow the bigger, but tenderer and swéter in the eating, for asmuch as the salt pickle verrie much abateth the bitternesse consisting in them, as by a like we customably sée, that these be eaten with vineger and salt.

And the plantes better prosper, comming vp in an open aire, then bestowed in a shadowie place, where in the increase, the rootes be much hindered.

If the owner happen to commit seedes to the earth in a drie season, let them be sowne the thicker in beds, and if the same may be, in a moist ground lightly watered.

The plantes growne to a reasonable height aboue the earth, and that shoures haue moistened the ground a day before, the plants may then be remoued, and set into beddes well laboured and workemanly dressed, which by diligence bestowed, grow the better and pleasanter in the eating.

That the Radish may not be harmed with the garden fleas, Theophrastus willeth to sow in the beddes among them, the pulse named Erum.

Other singular helpes for the most herbs, may be learned in my first part: which I haue gathered for the most part out of ancient writers.

Heere

Here is not to be ouerpassed, that in the Radishes a bitterness consisteth according to the thickness of the rinde, as the worthy Pliny vttereth, which writeth that these also do offend the teeth, by blunting or setting them on edge.

But in this place commeth to minde, a secret verry profitable, and to be esteemed with vinteners, which the Authour freely vttereth to them.

If the Vintener cutteth a Radish into slices, and bestoweth those pieces into a vessell of corrupt Wine, doth in short time draw all the euill sauour and lothsomnesse (if any consisteth in the wine) and to these the tartnesse of it like reuiueth, which if the roote be not able to rid and draw quite forth this default, let the same immediatly be taken forth and (if need shall require) put a fresh roote like ordered. For this no doubt hath bene proued, and profiteth many by vnderstanding of the secrete.

This no doubt is a secrete verry maruellous, that the Radishe in no wise agreeth to be placed or grow nigh to the Vine, for the deadly hatred between them, insomuch that the vine nere growing, turneth or windeth backe with the branches, as mightily disdaining and hating the Radishe growing fast by: if we may credite the learned Plinie, Galen, and the Neopolitane Rutilius, which seeme to haue diligently noted the same.

And the reason they report to be like (as afore vttered of the agreement of the Coleworte with the Vine) which is through the hidde discorde of natures consisting in them, so that if the places were chaunged, yet for all the remoouing, will they in no maner ioy togither.

Of which Androcides affirmeth the Radish and Colewort, to be a singular remedie against drunkennesse, so that the ancient in Greece commonly ioyned and matched the drinking of wine, with the Radishe, as I afore vttered in the Chapter of the Colewort, so that no maruell it is if that these be vsed so common.

The Radish in time past hath bene in much account, and so worthily esteemed, that Moschion the Greeke wrote a large pamphlet of the worthy praises of the same: yea the Radishe before other meats, was so preferred in Greece, ý at Delphos in the temple of Apollo, the Radish was esteemed as Gold, the Beet as Siluer, and the Rape

or Turnup as Lead.

The Radish also is said to polish verry faire the ruory, and buried in a heape of Salt, doth alter and reduce the same into a waterie pickle.

The Radish to conclude, in the remouing and setting again, looseth the sharpnesse resting in it, and this hath a singular delight in the rinde, so that the same be new gathered and not too old of growth, therefore by the example of many sidoome eaten, do vnaduisedly refuse and omit the vsing of it.

And drawing to an end, I think it right profitable to vtter the making of Vineger with the Radish, as the learned Petrus Crescentius (in his work of husbandrie) hath noted the same, the rootes of the Radish (saith he) being dried and brought to fine pouder, and bestowed into a vessel which hath wine in it, let stand to settle (after the wel laboring and mixing together) for certaine daies: which done, the owner shall enioy a Radish vineger, very laudable and much commended for the dissoluing and wasting of the stone in the Kidneis, and many other painefull griefes.

The Phisicke benefits and helps of the Radish.

THe Garden Radish (after the minde of the learned) heateth in the third degree, and drieth in the second, but the wilde Radish in Phisick causes is more effectuous.

This one incommoditie (among the phisicke helpes) doth the Radish possesse, which is, that it procureth many times belching, after the eating at supper: for a remedie of this annoiance or incommoditie, may he or she incontinent eat, certaine braunches of Isope, Time, or Organie, or eat the root with pure Oyle.

And this one commoditie ioyned with it, the roote yeeldeth a maruellous number of benefits, for the health and ease of persons.

Here further learne, the other incommodities written by the wise, which are, that the Radish eaten, either before or after meales, doth cause winde, the resting of the stomacke dulleth the braine, eies, and reason.

The singular Greeke Florentinus (in his instructions of husbandrie)

dry) writeth, that the Radish doth profit very much the Reumaticke, and marueloufly helpeth the stone in the kidneyes, and stopping of the vrine by Grauell, If any especially boyle the rinde with white wine and water, and drinketh the same morning and euening, or the rinde of the Radish bruised and strained, and drunke fasting in the morning, and that the person shall perseuer or continue with the same for certaine daies.

The fresh rinde after the steeping in white wine for eight houres drunke with a fourth part of the pouder of Medler kernels, like auaileth.

The radish taken fasting in the morning, with warme water prepared, procureth vomiting, for which matter, ye Phisitions rather appoint the seeds boyled, thã the roote. If the rote be eaten with Oyle Oliue, it stayeth the belchings of the stomacke, which are wont to be caused by the same, in that the Oliue suffereth not such wind to rise.

The iuice drunke with Cuite cureth the kings euill, & drunk with water and hony, amendeth the cough, which on such wise ministred, doth help those fetching the wind short and painefully.

The whole substance of the roote, so much auaileth against poyson, that taking the same fasting, it shall nothing harme the creature.

And the hands anneinted with the iuice of the Radish, as afore vttered in my first part, may handle Serpents without feare.

The iuice of the Radish dropped into the eares, doth speedily assuage the winde and noise in them, the same drunk with water and hony, recouereth the Iaundise. The leaues boyled in porredge in steed of Coleworts, and eaten sundry times amendeth the stoppings of the Liuer and Mult.

The seedes bruised and giuen with white wine, is right profitable against all sorts of poysons and dangerous diseases.

And if any by a punishment, receiue grieuous strokes and spottes, by whipping, bruising, and applying the Radish on the places, shall speedily cure them.

The same also cleareth scarres and reduceth wanne spottes vnto the perfect colours, and remoueth the pimples in the face: this besides deliuereth the quartain Ague, if the same be dayly giuen by the way of a vomit, at the comming of the fit.

The iuice of Radish boyled with honny, and after the adding of a litle vineger, the same strained and drunk, profiteth against the quartaine Ague, and stopping of the Milt.

The Radish applied in plaister forme, deliuereth the water betwéen the skinne, and helpeth a hard swollen Spleue, as Dioscorides witnesseth.

The Radish well digesteth, beeing eaten with meat at Supper, for it heateth the stomacke, yet the same causeth a strong breath, by sleeping soone after meat.

The seedes after the bruising drunke with white wine, doe cause vrine, and drunke with Vineger, asswageth the swelling of the Milt.

The iuice annointed on olde vlcers, both cleareth and eateth away the Canker in them, the like performeth the pouder of the roote.

The Radish boyled with Mulse water or honny and water, and drunke warme, amendeth an olde cough: it remooueth the clammie Fleume of the breast, by spitting vp in the daily drinking for certaine dayes.

The fresh rindes of the Radish well bruised and taken with Vineger and Hony, procureth the patient to vomit: the like performeth the Seedes drunke with warme water.

The Sédes haue a singuler propertie in expelling, for which reason, these are right profitable to them hauing eaten Mushromes, which they cannot digest.

If a round slice of the radish be applied on the Nauil, it doth speedily ceasse the gripings in women, as the skilfull Hippocrates writeth.

The often eating of the Radish, procureth plentie of Milke to women giuing suck and Nurses.

The iuice of the roote drunke with hony, sendeth downe ẏ Terms, and expelleth the worms in the belly: the iuice gargelled with Hony and Vineger, aswageth the swelling in the throate.

The

The commended helpes of the distilled water of the Radish.

THe roote finely shred in the beginning of September, ought to be distilled in a Tin Limbecke, or rather glasse bodie in Balneo Mariæ. The distilled water of Radish drunk morning and euening vnto the quantitie of three ounces at a time, helpeth the digestion of the stomack, the Kings euill, and killeth the wormes of the bellie: the Radish also receiued, cleanseth the stomacke of all clammie humors and other matters which hinder digestion: this besides openeth all maner of stoppings of the inner members and veines. This drunk in the like order and quantitie, doth extenuate the clammy humors in the lungs, and amendeth the swelling of the milt: this also clenseth the breast of clammie humors and causeth a cleare voyce.

The water drunke vnto the quantitie of three ounces at a time, both morning and euening, recouereth the poyson taken either in meate or drinke. The same quantitie drunke at a time profiteth against the Quartaine Ague, draweth downe the Termes, and sendeth forth the stone.

This water helpeth those which are stinged either with the Bee or Waspe, or venomed with the Spider, if they shall wash the grieued place with the same, and shall applye linnen clothes wet in it. This water helpeth the pricking & stitches of the side, if the same be bathed with the water. The water dropped into the eyes, cleareth the humors falling which dimmeth the sight, it also remooueth the spots of the face, by the often washing with the water, this remoueth the yelow or blackish spots by beating, if the places be often rubbed with the same.

The water gargelled and reteined in the mouth, amendeth the swelling of the throat, and vlcers of the gums, for this resolueth, consumeth and breaketh them.

The water often drunke morning and euening chiefly at the going to bed, vnto the quantitie of three ounces a at time, for thirtie daies together, not onely cleareth the kidneyes and bladder, & the places which containe the stone, but breaketh the stone, & causeth vrine.

This water drunk for three or foure weekes together, vnto ye quantitie of three or foure ounces at a time, both morning and euening, recouereth the water betweene the skin, and sendeth the same forth by the

the vrine, so that the patient refraineth the ouermuch drinking: for how much the lesser hee drinketh, so much the more water by the vrine is sent forth, through which the patient is also sooner recouered.

What care and skill is required in the sowing and workmanly ordering both of the Parsnep and Carote. Chap. 27.

THe seeds of the Parsnep and Carote, require one manner of dilligence in the sowing, and to be bestowed in a ground painefully digged, well turned in with dung, and workmanly dressed before: but the seede to be committed to the earth, may not be bestowed in beds very thicke together, to the end these in the encreasing may grow the fairer and bigger.

The plants are in like manner to be set, and at those times sown as afore vttered of the Radish, as sowne in December, Januarie, and Februarie, to serue in Lent and spring time, but these better commended, to be sowne in harueſt time, to enioy them all the Lent.

The Gardener which wouldpossesse faire and big rootes, ought to pluck away the leaues oftentimes, and to couer light earth on the heads, as afore vttered of the Radish: besides these growne to some highnesse, at the least so big as the finger, ought to be thinner set, and often weeded about, whereby the rootes may grow the bigger and sweeter in the eating.

The Phisicke benefits and helps of the Parsnep and Carot.

THe vertues and properties of these two rootes are in a maner like, and serue rather for Kitchin, than to the vse of Phisicke, in that they be of a small nourishment, and lesser nourish than the Turnup or Rapedoth.

The Parsnep root (by the agreement of the ancient) heateth in the midle of the second degree, and moistneth in the first, but in these causes of phisicke small allowed.

The roote is brought to a more temperament for the bodie, if so be

it be boyled in two or three waters before the eating, for on such wise handled, it harmeth the stomacke the lesse.

This otherwise sodden (but in one water) ingendreth wind in the bodie, through which it causeth and moueth a desire to the veneriall act: and often vsed, ingendreth euil bloud.

The roote tenderly sodden in two waters, & remoued into a third, procureth vrine, asswageth the colicke passion, and sendeth down the Termes in women.

The Garden parsnep, eaten with butter and pepeer, and a little salt profiteth the Melancholicke, and as Vitalis writeth, this encreaseth good bloud.

The Parsnep seede drunke and applyed to the priuy place (as the learned Dioscorides writeth) draweth downe the termes, helpeth the straightnesse of making water, recouereth the water between the skinne, and amendeth the stitches of the side or pleurisie.

This commended for the sting or bit of any venemous wormes or beast: this also applyed to the priuy place, draweth downe the dead youngling: the leaues shred and applyed with honny, doth throughly cleare and amend the great eating in of vlcers.

It is thought that no venemous beast may hurt the creature which weareth or carrieth the roote about him: and the roote hanged about the necke doth profit against the swelling of the throat.

The Garden Carote is thought to heate and drie in the third degree, but the leaues and floures especially, and many times the one vsed for the other in Phisicke causes.

There is another kinde of Carot (being red in colour) which may be eaten raw, but the same sodden with the Turnup, seemeth a pleasant and daintie dish: and this may in like order be sowne, as the others aboue taught.

The Carot growing of the owne accord, which is of most men named the wilde, more auaileth in the leafe and floure for phisick purposes, then the roote doth: so that the leaues are to be gathered to vse, when the same yeeldeth the floure, which (after the seperating of the roote) ought to be dryed in a shadowie place, and kept in lether bagges for the whole yeare: for these haue the propertie of dissipating, consuming, and attracting, and is of qualitie drying by substance.

The

The head bound about with the pouder of this hearbe, made sufficiently hotte, amendeth a cold reume: the hearbe after the boyling in wine drunke, and a good quantity of it after the steeping in wine and oyle for tenne dayes, be boyled so long, vntil the wine be wasted and after the hard wringing forth of the hearbe, the whole set ouer the fire and a little ware put to it in making thereof a plaister: which applyed, amendeth the paine of the stomacke, proceeding of wind through cold, the strangurie, and stopping of the vrine, and both the Collicke and Iliacke passion.

This Carote boyled in wine with a quantitie of figs to discretion, and the same drunke fasting, remoueth a drie cough: the decoction drunke doth likewise helpe the hard fetching of breath. If the head be washed with the water or oyle, in which the hearbe afore is sodden, doth remoue the flure of the heade proceeding of a cold cause.

If three handfulls of this hearbe boyled in wine, to which, oyle added in the boyling, and applyed to the bellie, doth remoue winde and heate the stomacke: if a Sirupe be made of the hearbe and floures, and the iuice of Fennell, and the same drunke morning and euening, amendeth without doubt the stopping of the Liuer and Milte.

The hearbe boyled in Mallowes, and hearbe Mercurie, both in wine and water, and the same after the boyling, applyed on the nauell, amendeth the verings and griping of the bellie.

The vertues and helpes of the distilled water of the Parsnep.

The hearbe with the roote finely shred, ought to be distilled about the end of March in a Tin Limbecke, with a soft fire.

This distilled water drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantitie of three ounces at a time, and the trembling members bathed with the same, doth in short time amend the shaking of them.

If the water euery euening at the going to bed, be drunke vnto the quantitie of fire ounces at a time, doth not onely moue forwarde the veneriall act, but encreaseth Sperme.

This water drunke vnto the quantitie of foure ounces at a time both morning and euening, recouereth in short time the straightnesse or painefulnesse in the making of water.

The diligence and skill to be vsed both in the sowing and ordering of the Garden Poppie. Chap. 28.

THe Garden Poppie (after the minde of the Neapolitan Rutilius) ought to be committed to the earth, in the Moneth of September, if it be in a hotte and drie place: but the Seedes in colder and more temperate places, may bee bestowed after the middle of Februarie vnto the end of Aprill, and sowne in beddes among the Colewortes.

The plantes come the better forward, if so be vine braunches or other boughes of trees be burned in the places, where you after minde to bestow the seedes. To be briefe, the seedes of the Poppie and Dill, require the like order and diligence in the bestowing in the earth, as afore vttered of the hearbe Charuill and Arache.

The phisicke benefits of the Garden Poppie.

THe white Poppie as all the other kindes, cooleth in the fourth degree, and the Seedes full ripe, before the gathering in the Summer time may be preserued for fiue yeares.

The greene heades of the Garden Poppie, boyled vnto the thicknesse of honny, profit vnto many griefes: this receiued procureth sound sleepe, remoueth the cough, it also stayeth the flure of the belly, if any annointeth the belly with it.

The Poppy seede (after the bringing to pouder) mixed with new milke or broth, and giuen to children to drinke warme, procureth them to sleepe.

The Seedes bruised and spred on a tosse of Butter, doe cause children to sleepe: the Seedes confected with Suger and eaten, do maruellously preuaile, in procuring the weake patient to sleepe soundly.

The Sirrupe of Poppie helpeth the reume, cough, & lacke of slẽpe, by preparing it after this manner: Take of the new heads both of the white and blacke Poppie one pound, of rain water foure pintes, boile these so long togither, vntill a pint & a halfe remain, to which after ỳ straining, ad of Suger, & the Pennites, of ech fiue ounces: these boile

vnto a height, according to art, & this they name, the simple Sirrop.

The compound is made after this maner: take of the fresh heads, both of the white and blacke poppie, twelue ounces of maiden haire, two ounces of licourice, fiue drammes of Iuiubæ, thirtie in number, of lettuce sedes fiue ounces, of the Mallowes and Quince sedes an ounce and a halfe, these after the boiling in foure pintes of water vnto two, straine through a cloth, to which adde of Suger and the Pēnites one pound, making thereof a Sirrupe according to art, for this recouereth a drie cough, the consumption of the Lunges, the reume, and debilitie of sleeping.

A plaister made of either seede, to which womens milke and the white of an egge added, this applied on the Tēples, procureth sleepe.

The Sede or hearbe of the white Poppie, (after the tempering with the oyle of Roses) applyed on an vlcer caused through a bruse, draweth forth the heate in it, and the same applied on a hotte liuer, greatly profiteth.

The pouder of the white Poppie Sedes, mixed with oyle Oliue, and annointed on the chine of the backe, remoueth the griefe of the ioyntes, and strengtheneth them: the Sedes after the bruising with oyle Oliue, applyed in plaister forme about the head, not onely procureth rest, but sound sleepe.

The patient which cannot sleepe, may bruse certaine heades, and after the heating, presse forth the iuice, with which washing the face, like auaileth. The heads of the greene Poppie, boiled vnto a thicknesse of honny, profite vnto many causes: for this taken procureth sleepe, remoueth the cough, stayeth the flure of the belly, if any annoint him with the same. The iuice of Poppie, mixed with the oyle of Roses, and annointing the fete therewith, remoueth the rage of the Gout: the seedes of the white poppie brought to pouder, & mixed with the oile of Violets, and the chine of the backe annointed with the same, profiteth against the Ague, and heate of the Liuer.

The commended vertues of the distilled water of the white Poppie.

THe aptest time for the distilling of white Poppie, is in the beginning of Iune, and that the herbe finely shred be distilled in a

Tinne

Tinne Limbecke with a soft fire.

This water profiteth against the red spots of the face, if the same be washed with it twice a day, this procureth white handes, if they be washed with it.

The distilled water drunke vnto the quantitie of foure ounces at a time, before the going to bed, and annointing the temples or beating veines of the wrestes, doe not onely procure quiet rest, but sound sleeps: this also vsed, mittigateth the paine of the head procéeding of heate.

This water applied with linnen clothes wet in it, extinguisheth any heate, and profiteth a burnt skin through the sunne, in remouing the heate, by often applying of linnen clothes wet in it.

What skill, diligence and secrets is to be learned in the sowing and ordering of the Cucumber. Chap. 20.

THe antient in time past confounded, or rather contrary matched the Gourds with Cucumbers, as the like also Plinie did, and Euthidemus the Athenian in his booke which hee wrote of pothearbes, named the Gourd the Indian Cucumber, and Menedorus a follower of Erasistratus defineth two kindes of the same: the one, to be the Indian. which as he vttereth, is the Cucumber: and the other to be that, which is named the Gourd. The Cucumber besides (after the sentence of Varro) is so named, for the crooking of it, and the Gréeke phisitions named it both Sicyon and Sicys, for that it stayeth and represseth (as Demetrius writeth) the veneriall act, through the coldnes consisting in it.

But leauing further to vtter of the kinds, let vs come to the matter in teaching what diligence is required, about the well handling of the Cucumber.

The Séeds after the mind of the Neapolitane Rutilius, desire to be bestowed in furrows not thicke together, and these raised well a foot and a halfe high, but in breadth three foote, and betwéen the furrows must the owner leaue spaces of eight foot broad, whereby the Cucumbers (in the growing) may fréely wander and spread abroad. These after ỳ cõming vp néed neither to be raked nor wéeded about,

for that in their first commingup, they ioy and prosper the better by growing among other hearbs, of which these are greatly strengthned and ayded.

The plantes creepe along on the earth, and spread into braunches much like to the Vine, which for the weaknesse of the stalke, are caused on such wise to spread abroad on the ground, except these be otherwise shored vp in their growing, with props workmanly set in the earth, for the better staying vp of the weake armes and branches, that the fruits corrupt not by lying on the earth.

The Seeds for the more parte, appeare by the first or seauenth day after the sowing: being sufficiently moistened with store of water for that space and time, by a pot or pots of water dropping continually downe with a lift or wollen cloth hanging forth of the mouth of the pot, which manner of watering is named filtring.

This kinde of watering, is one of the chiefest matters required, in that the plants prosper & come speediest forward through the much moisture, in which they mightily ioy: Yet these are muche hindered, and greatly feare the frostes and colde ayre. For which cause the plants ought at such cold times to be workemanly fenced with mattresses of straw diligently spread ouer them. The skilfull Rutilius writing of the workmanly ordering of the Cowcumber, willeth the Seedes to be committed to the earth in the moneth of March, and for danger of the cold frosts, to couer the beds with mattresses of strawe, vnto the middle of May, at which times the plants ought to be remoued, and set againe into beds well dunged and thicke laid for to runne forth and creepe abroad on the ground, but the plants yeld the more if they be bestowed in beds well filled with earth and dung, and these raised aboue a foote high.

In the bestowing of the Seedes in the earth, the owner ought to haue a care, that he set the Seedes in beddes a length, and these well two foote asunder one from the other, heerein considering whether the Seedes bee broken by the eight or tenth day following, which found either hard or broken, dooth denote a perfectnesse or goodnesse of the Seedes: But these in a contrary manner discerned soft, are vnprofitable, and to be cast away, in whose places others require to be set, prooving by the first or eight day, if the Seedes be broken or otherwise

therwise soft, which in a contrary maner seeme, bestow others in the places as aboue taught.

The plantes after the comming vp, néed not to be wéeded in any maner, for asmuch as the plantes better prosper and growe the fayrer, by comming vp among other hearbs, of which these take a nourishment.

If the seedes before the sowing, be steeped for two daies in sheeps milke(as Rutilius willeth) or in water and honny, as Plinie instructeth, or in Sugered water, which cause the plantes, after their perfit growth, to yeeld cowcumbers, both sweet, tender, white, and most pleasant, aswell in taste as in sight (as the singular Columella hath noted) and before him the Grécke Florentinus, also after both, Plinie and Palladius, to all which experience confirmeth.

The Gardiner which would possesse Cucumbers timely and very soone, yea and all the yeare through, ought (after the mind of the Neopolitane) in the beginning of the spring, to fill vp old worne baskets and earthen pannes without bottomes, with fine sifted earth tempered afore with fat dung, and to moisten somewhat the earth with water, after the seedes bestowed in these, which done when warme and sunnie daies succeede, or a gentle raine falling, the baskets or pannes with the plantes, are then to be set abroad, to bee strengthened and cherished by the sunne and small showres: but the euening approching, these in all the cold season, ought to be set vnder some warme couer or house in the ground, to be defended from the frostes and cold aire, which thus standing vnder a couer, or in the warme house, moisten gently with water sundrie times, and these on such wise handle, vntill all the Frosts, Tempestes, and cold ayre be past, as commonly the same ceasseth not with vs, till about the middes of May.

After these, when opportunitie or an apt day seruetb, the Gardener shall bestow the Baskets or Pannes vnto the brimme, or deeper in the earth well laboured or trimmed before, with the rest of the diligence to be exercised, as before vttered: which done, the Gardener shall enioy verrie forward and timelier Cowcumbers then any others.

This matter may be compassed, both easier, in shorter time,

and with lesser trauaile, if the owner, after the cutting of the waste branches, doth set them in well laboured beddes, for these in farre shorter time and speedier, doe yéld faire Cucumbers.

This one thing I thinke necessarie to be learned, for the auoiding of the dayly labour and paines, in the setting abroad and carrying into the house, either halfe tubs, baskets, or earthen pannes, which on this wise by greater facilitie may be done, if so be the Gardener bestow the vessels with the plantes in Wheelebarrowes, or such like with Wheeles: for these, to mens reason, causeth maruellous easnesse, both in the bestowing abroad, and carrying againe into the warme house, as often as néede shall require.

The yong plantes may bee defended from colde and boisterous windes, yea, frosts, the cold ayre, and hote Sunne, if Glasses made for the only purpose, be set ouer them, which on such wise bestowed on the beds, yélded in a maner to Tiberius Cæsar, Cucumbers al the yeare, in which he toke a great delight, as after the worthy Columella, the learned Plinie hath committed the same to memory, which euery day obtained the like, as he writeth.

But with a lesser care and labour, may the same be performed, as Columella writeth, if in a sunny and well dunged place (sayth he) be sundry roddes set a rowe, aswell of the Osier as Bremble, and these so planted in the earth, after the Equinoctiall of Harueest, to cut a little within the earth, whose heades after the wiser enlarging with a stiffe wodden pricke, to bestowe soft dung either within the pithes of Osiers and Brembles consisting in the middes: these done, to sire or put Séedes of the Cucumber into the places, which after the growing to some bignesse, ioyne with Osiers, and Brembles.

For the plants on such wise growing, are after not fed with their owne, but as it were by another mother roote feeding, which by the same meanes yéld Cucumbers, that will indure the colde season and frostes.

The learned Plinie vttereth the same matter, admonishing héere the reader, of the wrong instructions of Columella, although he séemeth to alledge an Authour, for which cause it shall be to great purpose to heare the sentence of Plinie in this, who remoouing the error

of

of Columella vttered, that Cucumbers may be enioyed all the yeare greene, instructeth and willeth, that the greatest roddes of the bremble be set againe into a Sunny place, where these be cut, well two fingers long, about the Equinoctiall spring or middle March, and into the heades of these after large holes made, the Seedes to be bestowed lying especially within the pitches of the Brembles, and filled with soft dung, which done, that fatte dung and fine Earth, after the well mixing togither, ought to bee thicke laide, and diligently heaped about the rootes, which may the better resist the colde.

But howe soeuer these ought to bee handled, it well appeareth, that Plinie doth disagree with Columella, in this instruction.

For Plinie willeth these to be set about the Equinoctiall spring, but Columella, about the Equinoctiall Harueſt, as the Neapolitan Rutilius interpreted and noted the same, to whom, as it should seeme, he bare a fauour.

The plantes much feare the thunder and lightning, for which cause the Gardener may not set nor remoue them at those times: besides, if the teder fruits be not couered ouer with sheetes or thin Coueriets, when such tempests or stormes happen, they commonly after perish and wither.

The Gardener minding to possesse long and tender Cucumbers, ought to set vnder the young fruites growing, an earthen Panne, Bole, or halfe Tubbe, filled with faire water, well fiue or sixe fingers, yea, halfe a foote distance from them, for those by the next day, will bee stretched vnto the water, so that setting the Pannes lower into the earth, or raising the fruites higher, ye shall dayly see them stretched forth towards the water, vnto the admiration of the owner, for the length of them: which deprived of their vessels of water, shall in a contrarie manner see them winded and crooking, so much these ioy in the moysture, and hate the drouth: the fruites likewise will grow of a marueilous length, if the flowres bee put to grow within hollowe Canes or Pipes of the Elder: but the same is otherwise to be learned of the Dyie, for as the Cucumbers so deadly

hate

hate (as Plinie writeth) that setting vessels of the oile, in steed of the water vnder them, they after bend and winde away, as disdayning the licour, which the owner shall well trie and see that these to haue bended so crooked or winding as an hooke in one nights space.

But there must be a speciall care, as Columella (after the Greeke Florentinus) admonisheth, that no woman, at that instant, hauing the reds or monthly course, approcheth nigh to the fruites, especially handle them, for through the handling at the same time, they feeble and wither.

If shee in the place be like effected, shee shall after kill the young fruites, with her onely looke fired on them, or cause them to grow after vnsauerie or else corrupted.

The Cowcumber will yeeld fruits without seedes, if three daies before the sowing, the seedes be steeped in Oyle Sesasminium or Sauin Oyle (as the Neopolitan Rutilius hath noted) or that the seeds afore be steeped in the iuice of the hearb named of Plinie, Culix, or as the same in Greecke may be coniectured to Coniza, in Englishe Flebane.

The like shall be wrought, if the first armes or branches (after the condition of the veins) be on such wise digged about, that onely the heades of them appeare naked, which a third time to be like barred, if need shall so require, yet such a diligence to be excercised in the same, that what branches growe out, and spread on the earth to bee workemanly cut away, preserving onely the stemme and branches that last shoot foorth: which on such wise handled, yeeld fruits with the onely Pulpes, hauing no seedes in them.

If the Gardener desireth to enioy Cowcumbers, hauing Roman letters, strange figures, & scutchins or armes imbossed on the greene rinde without, he may, after the liuely counterfetting of formes on ẏ Moulds of wood, bestow of the potters clay, or plaister of Paris vnto the thicknesse of a finger, which like handled, and cut into two partes, let drie in a faire & hotte place, that these may the sooner seruc to vse, after bestow into the hollow moulds framed to a like bignesse & length as the frute of ẏ yong cowcũbers, which fast bound about, & so close togither, that no ayre breath in, let these on such wise hang vntill the fruits haue filled the moulds within, which they ioy to doe,

and

uered of the same, for while he sleepeth, all the feuerous heate passeth into the Cucumbers.

If the owner would enioy Cucumbers, hauing but litle water in them, he must digge a furrow, of a reasonable deapth, and the same filled halfe vp with chaffe, or the wast braunches of Vines or trees, finely broken, couer ouer with earth, into which then bestowe the Seedes of a reasonnable distance a sunder, and in the comming vppe, water not the plants, or these moysten very litle, but in the rest order the Plants as afore taught.

To the losing and purging of the body it also belongeth: if the owner shall steepe the Seedes in the rootes of the wilde Cucumber brused, either Ruberbe, Turbith, Agaricke, Ellebore, or any such like made into a Potable water, for three daies together, or for fiue daies together, after the Plantes shoote vppe, doeth often moisten them with this licour, he shall after enioy fruites, which will gently purge the belly.

And they may be caused to worke the stronger, if the rootes, while they send foorth the branches, bee digged about, and the smaller rootes vpwarde cut away, in the places of which, a quantitie of the Ellebore, and some other purging simple laid, and the earth diligently couered about.

The Phisicke commodities and helpes of the Cucumber.

The Garden Cucumber, is moist and cold in the second degree, but the seedes dryed, haue the qualitie of drying in the first, beginning of the second degree.

Diphilus Caristus (a Physition among the Greekes very well learned, and in Husbandry singular) disalowed or rather forbade the Cucumber to be eaten at the beginning of supper, as a meate incommodious to the Creature, in that the same (after the eating) procureth the person like to rest, as the Radish doeth, but this eaten last at the meale, worketh an easier digestion of the meate, where otherwise in many, this casteth vp the meates eaten.

The tougher part inclosing the seedes, is of a hard digestion, but the softer Pulpe or substance within, is of a farre speedier and easier digestion, and profitable to the Cholericke, and hote and dry stomack, being moderatly eaten, for that this doth coleth and extinguisheth thirst.

The whole substance of the Cucumber, may moderatly be eaten with vineger and salt, of such which dayly exercise some laboure of the bodie.

But to such which laboure not, or be fleumaticke, this altogether denyed, for as much as this greatly harmeth especially the stomacke and sinews, yet hath the water (workmanly distilled) and the iuyce cleare strayned forth, the propertie of remouing the Ague, and mitigating thirst.

The Cucumber is not to be eaten sodden, but rather raw, with oyle and vineger, and the better fruites are these which be gathered at the full ripenesse, or in the hand discerned somwhat light.

The seedes bruised and drunke, do amend the strong sauour of the vrine, but the decoction more auaileth than this, and aswageth the heate of the kidneyes, yea it abateth the heate, and thirst of the Feuer.

The said Diphilus instructeth, that the seedes haue the vertue of cooling, and for the same cause, hardly digested and sent by the windings of the bellie, yea these (as he affirmeth) doe cause a greate coldenesse, ingender Choller, and abate the veneriall act.

The Seedes after the bruising, drunke in either Cuite or Milke, doe greatly profite such as haue an vlcered bladder. To these, and such as are payned with the cough, if so many seedes bee taken and vsed at a tyme, as maie handsomely bee taken vp with three of the fingers, and these after the bruising with Cummyne, drunke in Wine, doeth in short tyme amend the same.

The sayde pouder drunke in womans Mylke, vnto the quantitie of three ounces at a time, profiteth the frensye persons, and such molested with the perillous flixe Disenteria: yea this pouder drunke with a like weight of Cummine seeds, in pouder, recouereth the spitting vp of corruption or matter.

The

The whole substance and meate of the Cucumber, hath the vertue of clensing and cutting a sunder, of which the same causeth cleare bodies, and so much the more, if any after the drying, finely beating, and searsing of the seedes vseth the same in steede of a clensing ponder.

The learned Galen writing of the vse and properties of the Cucumbers vttereth an instruction worthy the learning, that although these (saith he) be well digested of the Cholericke, and that such without care, eate plentie or much at a time of them, yet they in the continuance of time, increase a colde and somewhat grosse humour in the vaines, which not able to be digested in them, doth after corrupt the sounde bloud.

For that cause (saith he) I iudge it profitable to restraine ỹ meats being of an euill iuyce and nourishment: although that those in certaine persons may easily be digested: for to vs not taking a care and regard of them, is a iuyce gathered (after a good distance of time) in the vaines, which assoone as the same once putrified by a light occasion, doth immediatly kindle and cause wicked feuers: these hetherto Galen of the incommodities of the Cucumbers.

What skill and secretes are to bee learned in the sowing and workmanly ordering of the Gourde. Chap. 30.

All the kindes of the Gourdes, require the same trauaile and diligence in the bestowing in the earth, as afore vttered of the Cucumbers, which after the large setting a sunder and often watering, appeare (for the more part) aboue the earth, by the first or seuenth day after the bestowing in beddes.

The weake and tender branches, shot vp to some height, and couetting by a certaine propertie in nature vpwarde, require to be diuersly added with poles to run vp in sundry maners, as either ouer a round and vaulted Harbour, to giue more delight, through the shadowe caused by it, and the seemely fruites hanging downe, or els by poles directed quite vpright, in which the Gourde (of al other fruites) most earnestly desireth, rather than to run braunching and creeping on the

grounde like to the Cucumbers.

The plants loue a fat, moist, and dunged lose ground, as ỳ Neapolitan Rutilius in his instructions of husbandry hath noted, If a diligence be bestowed in the often watring of them, the plantes require a lesser care and trauaile, in that they are very much furthered, by the store of moisture, although there may be found of those, which reasonably prosper with small store of moisture, or being seldome watered, and that they of the same yeelde fruite of a delectabler taste.

If the owner or Gardener happen to commit sées to the earth in a dry ground, and that the tender plants appeare aboue the earth, his care shall then be to water them plentifull for the spédier shooting vp, after this maner: by taking certaine pots filled with water, into which tongues of cloth afore laide to the bottoms of the pottes, that these may the workmanlier distill and drop often on the plants, through the stooping forward of them: which no doubt, profiteth greatly the plants in drowth and hote seasons.

The longer and smaller haue fewe Seedes in them, and for the same more delectable in the eating: yea these are better acompted of, and solde in the Market.

The Gardener, minding to commit of the Sédes to the earth, ought afore to stiepe them in a Boll or panne of water for a nighte, whereby the sédes apt to be sowne, may ỳ surer be knowne, which he shall well perceiue by those resting in the bottome, of the cunninger sort preferred and vsed, but the others swimming aboue, as vnprofitable, and seruing to no vse, are willed to be throwne away.

The chosen sédes are to be set in beds together with thrée fingers vnto the middle Iointes, and sharper endes fixed vpward, but the beds afore ought to be digged two foote deepe, and so many broade, and the Seedes bestowed well thrée or foure foote a sunder, one from the other (in these filled vp with olde dung,) well turned in with the earth: or rather to procure them spedier to growe and yélde the fruite the sooner, let the beddes bee filled with hote horse dung, new taken out of the stable.

If the Gardener would possesse Gourds of diuers formes, as long, rounde, and short, it behoueth him to chose and set the seedes accordingly. For those Sédes taken out of the necke of the Gourde,

shall

shall the owner after the counsell of the singular Columella, learned Plinie and Rutilius, set in well dunged grounde, with the sharpe endes vpwarde. Which after the well watering (as aboue taught) yeelde fruites long in fourme, tenderer, and better esteemed. The Seedes taken out of the midest of the bellie, and set into the earth with the big endes vpwarde, do yéelde (after the husbandly handling and watering) great fruites, round and large, of which after the throughdrying, and meate taken out, be Bottles and other vessels made, to seruc for diuers vses, in that these grow farre larger in the belly, than any of the other kindes.

The Seedes taken out of the bottome of the Gourde, and set with the grosse or big ends vpward, doe also yeelde after the workmanly ordering, fruites both great and large, yet these far lesser and shorter. And the Sedes in generall, in what place they bee sette, ought to be bestowed in earth well dunged, and the rather with hote horse dung, new taken out of the stable, if these be set in the moneth of March. But the seedes in no maner, may be bestowed in lowe places, least showers of raine falling, hinder and corrupt the fruites, through the ouermuch water cloying and standing in the Alley or other low place: the plants shot vp to some height, oughte to bee diligently weeded about, and the earth heaped high vp, and when neede requyreth in the hote seasons, to water them often.

If the seedes happen to bee set in a earth smally laboured and hollowe, when the plants be somewhat growne aboue the ground, the owner ought to dig a way of a good depth (from the young plantes) the earth round about, that the rootes may the frélier runne and spread abroad: the plants further growne & shot vp, may the owner erect to runne and spreade like to a vine well a mans height.

If the plants happen to be annoied with the Leke or garden fleas, the owner shall remoue & driue them away, by the onely setting of ẏ herb Organie, in sundry places among them, on which (if they happen to light) they either are incontinent killed, or caused to encrease but few after, as the Greeke writers of husbandry, in their skilfull practises witnes: out of which with diligence we haue also gathered these, that to ẏ owner or gardener may happile appeare profitable: as the Gourd (a matter somwhat straunge) to yéld fruits without séeds,

if

if the seedes before the setting be stieped for three daies at the least, in Sesaminum, or Sauin oyle, as the Neapolitan Rutilius vttereth, or in the iuyce of that herbe infused, named Conyza, in Englishe Fleabane.

The like may be wrought, if after the condition of the vine, the principallest and first stemme shot vp, be on such wise digged about, that all onely the head of the same be left bare: which as it shall encrease, must the owner repeate: yea, a third time if neede shall require the same.

And in this doing, must the owner haue a care, that as the braunches spread forth (whether vpright or on the ground) to be cut away, herein preseruing onely that stemme, which shot forth last.

The Gourdes on such wise handled (as the Cucumbers afore noted) wil yeeld fruits without seedes, possessing onely Cartilages, and a soft pulpe within. If the owner would possesse fruites timely and very soone, then (after the instruction of the Greeke writers of husbandry) bestow in earthen pannes or old baskets without bottoms, fine sifted earth intermedled with dung, about the beginning of the spring, in which the seedes set, sprinckle and moisten sundry times with water: after this, in faire and sunny dayes, or when a gentle shower falleth, set them abroad, but when the Sun goeth downe, bestow the baskets with the plantes within the house againe, and these like order so often (and water when need requireth) vntill all the frosts, tempests, and cold seasons be gone and past. After this assoone as opportunitie and time will serue, and that a faire day bee present, bestow all the baskets and pannes of earth vnto the brim, in well laboured and dressed beds, and apply that other diligence required, through which the Gardener shall possesse timely fruite, aswell of the Gourde as Cucumber.

The same matter shall the owner bring to passe, and cause with lesser cost, trauaile, and time, if he cut away the wast braunches of the Gourdes, or tender shootes of the Cucumbers, for on such wise handled they speedier yeeld and send forth their fruites.

If the Gardener coueteth to enioy diuers formes on gourds, or sundry caracters on Cucumbers, let him bestow ẏ floure or tender yong fruit of either, as the same shall yet be hanging on ẏ braunch, into a mouldo of like bignes as the fruit: which so handled, will after cause the

whether the same be Gourd or Cucumber, to possesse on the vpper face, the like figures or caracters, as were afore imprinted within the mould.

For the fruit of either, after the mind of Gargilio, so much desireth a new forme, that it like representeth the image or figure imprinted within the mould. Insomuch that of what forme the moulde of the Gourd shalbe fashioned, on such manner shall the fruit grow within the mould: And Plinie for confirmation of the same reporteth, that he saw many Gourds fashioned in their full growth after the forme of a winding dragon. If the owner endeuoureth to possesse long and slender Gourds, he must bestow the yong fruits new grown, & hanging still on the vine branches, either into a truncke of wood, or a long Cane boared through all the ioyntes, which in time growing, will stretch and shoote forth into a maruellous length. For the substance which should encrease into a bredth, is caused through the hollowe pipe to stretch and growe slender, whereby the narrownesse of the hole so hindering the bignesse of growth, procureth the fruit to run into a length, as the like Gourd by the same occasion, Plinie sawe to extend well nine foote of length. The like fruits altogither shal the Gardener purchase, if vnder the vines, he set of some deepnesse in the ground earthen pannes filled with water, and they distant well fiue or fire fingers from the Gourds hanging downe. For by the morrow or next day shall he see the fruits stretched euen downe to the water, by which feeding and handling of the pannes with water, they may be caused to grow of a wonderfull length.

But the pannes for a time remooued or taken away, will cause the fruits to crooke and winde vpward, so much of property they ioy in moisture, and refuse or hate the drowth: yet of the oyle is otherwise to be learned, forsomuch as they deadly hate the same as Plinie writeth, which if in the stead of water it be set vnder the fruites, causeth them by the next day to winde another way.

If this likewise they cannot doe, yet do they writhe, and as it were disdaining of the same, crooke vpward after the maner of a hooke, as a like forme of the fruit may be tried in one night space.

This one matter ought especially to be cared for, as Columella after the Greeke Florentinus warneth, that no woman come or verie seldome approch nigh to the fruites of the Gourdes or Cucumbers,

for by her only handling of them, they feeble and wither, which matter if it shall happen in the time of the Termes, doth either then flea the yong tender fruits with her looke, or causeth them to be vnsauerie, and spotted or corrupted within. The Gourds determined to be kept for seede, ought after the minde of Rutilius the Neapolitane, to hang stil on their vine, vnto the winter time, and cut or broken from the same, to be dried either in the Sun or in the smoke: for the seedes otherwise are prone to putrifie, and not after profitable to any vse.

The Gourds and Cucumbers will endure, and be kept a long time fresh and faire to the eye, if they be hid and couered with white wine lees, not ouer eger or sowre, in the hanging downe in pipes or hogsheads. They be in like maner defended and preserued by bestowing them in a pickle or brine. But they will a long time continue freshe and faire (as the worthy instructers of husbandry report) if so be they hang so high within the vessels, that they be nothing neere to the vineger. And the vessels appointed for the onely purpose, shall diligently be pitched ouer and round about, least the spirits of the vineger in the meane time breathe forth, and by nature otherwise is penetrable, through the thinnesse of partes. The Cucumbers may in like manner be kept for a long time, if they shalbe bestowed in a vessel of distilled vineger: for on such wise they putrifie not, as hath bẽn tried of the skilfull searchers of secrets.

Thus by these practises, may the owner enioy faire Cucumbers and Gourds all the winter to vse, which if the Gardener will, shall he also preserue a long time, if while the fruits be tender, he cut them off, and scalde them in hote water, and after lay them abroad all the night to coole, and bestow them on the morrowe into a sharpe pickle of brine, made for the only purpose, which on such wise handled, wil maruellous well endure, vntill the new be come.

In this place commeth to minde, and that verie aptly, the same which Athæneus boasted, as touching his strãge feast that he prepared for his friends, and especially in that he serued them with grẽns Gourds for a daintie dishe, in the moneth of Janury, which so pleasantly sauoured and eate, as if they had bẽn new gathered, in a manner. Which like, by studie and diligence of the Gardeners that exercised this art, they supposed them to be preserued.

As the like Nicander long before Athæneus and many others report,

port, who will the Gourdes to be first dried in the aire, and stitched through the heades with a strong packthread, to be after hanged vp in the smoke, that the pots filled with them may leisurely soake all the winter, and drinke in of the Waine.

At this day in France, through all the winter moneths, are the Gourdes hanged vp in the rooles of their houses, to be preserued for daintie dishes greene, when occasion offereth to vse them, especially those which are named the Citrones, that far longer endure, and be not so lightly subiect to putrifying.

The fruits of the Gourds, Mellons, Pompons, and Cucumbers, may be caused to loose and purge, like to many others, if the seeds be steeped for a night and a day in the licour made with Ruberbe, Agaricke, Turbith, Senæ, Colocynthis, Scamonie, or other simple purging medicines, and those after the bestowing in the earth, watered for fiue dayes togither, and fiue times euery day. When the Gourd is felt vn pleasant, the fruits by the steeping, may after receiue what sauour and taste the owner will, if the seedes before they be committed to the earth, be infused for a time in any pleasant licour, whether the same be damaske or muske water, for the plantes shooting vp of these, will yeeld fruit of like sauour, as well being sodden as rawe, after the condition of the Cucumber.

The like altogither may be wrought or caused without any art, if whiles the fruit is a seething, you bestow in the licour what taste, colour, or sauour you desire to haue. For the Gourd and Cucumber are of such a kinde, that they be voide of any qualitie.

The rinde of the fruite of the Gourd growen to full ripenesse, becommeth so hard as wood.

The Gourd planted in the ashes of mens bones, & watered with oile, yeeldeth fruite by the ninth day, as the ancient Hermes affirmeth. Which man, for that he teacheth vaine matters, for the same cause he giueth me occasion to credite him weakely. Yet experience doth many times cause the vncertaine to proue certaine.

The Phisicke benefites and helpes of the Gourde.

THe fruite of the Gourde, is of a colde and moist temperament, and the sedes especially vsed in medicine. That worthy Phisition Crisippus with the Grekes, condemned or rather vtterly forbad the Gourds in meate, as vnprofitable for their coldnesse to the stomacke.

That skilfullman Diphilus contrary affirmeth, that the Gourds boyled in water and vineger, doe strengthen the stomacke.

The learned Galen writeth, that the Gourde in no manner may be eaten rawe, in that the same is vnpleasant to eate, but either sodden, rosted, or fried in a pan, is well commended.

The Greke writers of husbandry doe report, that the Gourd doth loose the belly, and that the iuice of the same dropped into the grieued eares, caused of heate, they affirme to profite, vnto which vse of it selfe, and with the oile of Roses dropped warme into the eares.

The outward rinde pared away, and the meate with the kernels not fully ripe, heated or parboiled in water, and after shred smal like to the Cabbedge, and boiled with butter, onions, and a quantitie of Salt, This on such wise prepared and eaten, profiteth leane men.

Others after the cutting of the vnripened fruit into round slices, boile them with butter in a dish like Apples.

The wine standing for a night abroad, in the hollow of the freshe Gourd, and drunke with a fasting stomacke, purgeth gently the belly costiue.

The meat of the Gourd, after the sedes taken forth applied, helpeth the cornes of the toes and feet: the iuice of it boiled, and rubbing the mouth there with, fastneth loose teeth, and allwageth the paine of them, proceeding of a hote cause.

The seedes of the Gourd cleane picked from the skin, being sodden in barly water, strained, and drunke, helpe the inflammations of the liuer, kidnies, and bladder, the impostumes of the breast, and prouoketh vrine.

If a sicke person of the Feuer, refuse to drinke of this water, a sirrope then with suger, may be compounded of the same, which mightily profiteth all kindes of Agues.

The

The iuice of the pæces of the Gourd, tempered with milke and vineger, in which a linnen cloth wet, and applied on the liuer, verie much asswageth the heate of the liuer.

When the winter approcheth, the sæds ought to be taken forth of the fruite, and these rubbed well with salt, that the clammie humors may on such wise be remooued.

The sædes ought rather to be laide in a drie place, whereby the proper moisture may not corrupt them, and those sædes like prepared, will indure for thrée yeares.

The pæces of the rinde of the Gourd bruised, and annointed or applied in plaister forme on the heades of infants, doth asswage the inflammation or burning caused of the braine: the pæces or iuice of the same applied, doth like mittigate the burning Gout, and qualifie the inflammations of the eyes.

The Gourd after the fine shredding, applied in plaister forme, asswageth tumors and swellings: the dry ashes applied on burninges doth maruellously auaile, the ashes also of the rindes applyed on vlcers of the priuie place, beginning to putrifie, doth purgeth, and bringeth them to a scarre.

The iuice of the Gourd, after the boyling with a little honny and Nytre drunke, gently looseth the belly, the same iuice mixed with the Oyle of Roses, and annointed on the ridge bone and loynes, cooleth the burning of Feuers: this besides annointed, helpeth the Shingles.

Here learne that the Gourd rosted, or boyled in a dishe or frying pan, is more wholesome than raw, for that through the rosting, it leaueth a great force of watery moisture, and therfore yeldeth a stronger and worthier nourishment.

The Gourd sodden, requireth a tartnesse to be matched with it, for the same otherwise is felt vnsauerie and without delight, so that it better relisheth, beeing matched with either salte, soure or tart thinges that neerer agree to the benefite of our bodie, and the same ought to be on such wise prepared that it procure not the creature to vomit, as the singuler Galen hath cleerely vttered.

The benefites and helpes of the distilled water of the Gourde.

THe chosen time for the distilling of Gourds, is when they bée full ripe, for these then are to be finely shred, and the kernels with the whole substance aptly distilled.

The distilled water of the fruits, mixed with a quantitie of suger, drunke, not onely loseth the belly, but ceasseth thirst, and helpeth the cough proceéding of a hote cause.

The saide water drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantity of thrée ounces at a time, for fortie dayes togither, doth maruellously helpe the stone in the kidnies.

This water drunke in the like maner for ten dayes togither, purgeth the kidnies and bladder, and causeth vrine: this also drunke in the like manner, qualifieth the burning of feuers, when no other medicine can asswage the same: this besides applied without, on the region of the heart, with linnen clothes wet in the same, like represseth the heat.

Of the rare helps and secretes of the Pompons, Mellons, and Muske Mellons. Chap. 31.

THe auncient both of the Greeke and Latin writers of Husbandrie, attributed the Pompons and Mellons, to a kinde of Cucumbers which they confessed, verie nóere to agree with them, in that the Cucumbers, in their growth haue beene seene, to be changed into Pompons, and Mellon Pompons, which two kindes of fruite, doe differ in themselues, especially in the fourme and quantitie: for when these appeare to exceede in bignesse, they are then named Pompons, but they growing round, and in forme of an Apple fashioned, are by a bie-name of the Pompon and Apple, named Mellon Pompons. For which cause Palladius nameth all this kinde of forme of apples, Mellons, or as if a man should say he named them apple-wise or Quince-like, which are not wont to hang, as Plinie writeth, but to growe round

on

on the ground, and they are then growen to a ripenesse, when the stalke is parted from the body and a swéet sauour from the belly strikeeth to the nose. Further those growing after the fourme of ỳ quince, which properly are named Mellons, haue a harder and tougher meat than Pompons, and they not only enioy lesser wrinckles in the rind, but be drier, grosser, whiter of flesh, and haue more séeds than the Pompons.

The other kinde named Cytrons, be in fourme and colour like to the Cytron, and the leaues of the branches deuided into many small parts after the forme, feathers or wings of birds.

The other kinde named the Winter Pompons, are nothing so bigge of growth, as bée the common Pompons of the Garden.

But the best kinde of all, are the Mellons, next the Turkish pompons, and those made swéete by art, when the Séedes before the bestowing in the earth, are for a night laid in water well mixed with Suger, or honny.

The Mellons and Pompons hardly come vp in any Countrie, at due time of the yéere, without labour, cost and diligence of the gardener in hastening them forward, nor these caused well to spread and yéeld before the great heate of the yeare be come, which season, some yeare, hapneth diuers and intermedled with cold, & either ouer dry, or ouer moist, which much hinder the ripening of them in the harnest time and toward the vintage. For which cause the Gardener ought to hasten the fruites forward by dung, and heate of the Beds, which alwaies procure a more health to persons. The séeds of Mellons to be cõmitted to the earth, ought to be such which haue bèen kept within the fruit, vnto the full ripenesse for the same: for these then taken forth of the Mellon be more worth, and reserue in them the proper substance within the bodies. If the owner would possesse the fruites of the Mellon timely, he ought afore to infuse the séeds in luke warm water, for fire or ten houres, and those after to bestow in beds, prepared, about the tenth day of March, well thrée or foure foot distant one from the other, and the beds to cast well two foot high, and so manie broad, and to fill them with old dung finely broken, and with blacke earth sufficiently loose wrought togither, for on such

wise

wise handled they yeld a bigger, fuller and pleasanter fruite. Certaine skilfull Gardeners bestow horse dung in beddes, so hote as the same commeth forth of the stable, to cause the plantes farre sooner to shoote vp, and they turne vpward fire or ten of the seeds of the pompone with the sharpe ends downeward, as certaine doe foure or fiue of them to come vp, and those they lightly couer ouer, with much beating or treading the earth downe on them. Rutilius in his husbandry, willeth the Seedes, both of the Mellon and Pompon, to be thinne set in beddes, in such manner, that the seeds be placed well two foot a sunder, and the places well digged and diligently turned in with fine dung, for the plantes ioy in a libertie, that they may spread at wil hither and thither, and are greatly holpen by other hearbs, growing among them, as the Cucumbers are, so that they shall neede but litle raking and plucking away of other hearbes.

After these, for danger of the cold and frosts, the owner may couer the plants and beds with light mattresses made of strawe, or with mattes spred on rods, shored vp with the forkes set at ech corner of the beddes, or he may for a seemelier sight, lay abroad bordes or tables on pillers or other stayes of stone, set at ech corner of the beds, in such manner, that the bords may be lifted off, when the sunne shineth hote, and set ouer againe, at the going downe of the sunne, or when the cold aire is felt.

And assoone as the Mellon hath yeelded leaues sufficient great, the Gardener ought to water the same gently and softly, with a list sharpened at the end hanging forth, and broade at the other ende, resting within the Potte or Dishe full of water, which on suche wise continually moisteth (by the drops falling) the Earth verie drie.

The Mellons further growen, the owner ought to remoone, and set the plantes againe, when the fruites are yeelded so bigge as Orenges, and this especially must bee done after the middest of May, when as the colde of the yeare is well spent, that otherwise might hinder the growth of them, and sette well fire foote distant one from the other, in beddes diligently dunged and laboured.

The Pompons purchase a far greater sweetnes, and pleasanter in taste, if the seeds afore be steeped for three dayes in water well mired with

with Suger, or in water and honny named Mulse: and in like maner the fruites are found swæt in the eating, if the sædes stæped in new Cow milke, be then set well in dressed beddes.

The Pompons in like maner will obtaine a sauour of Roses, if the sædes afore be laied among drie Rose leaues for twentie or thirty dayes togither, and those after with the leaues, set in well dressed beddes, or the Sædes stæped in Rose-water, or other odoriferous licour, which after the drying in the shadow, then as afore vttered, committed to the earth, as the worthy Authour Florentinus in his Græke instructions of husbandry writeth, and after him the like that worthy Rutilius.

Yære I thinke it a matter not to be omitted, that Cattes by an earnest desire couet the Pompons, for which cause the owners must haue a care to loke diligently thereunto.

To procure Pompons to continue a long time without decaying or corrupting, let the owner water the plants for a time, with the iuice of Houseléke.

The other matters to be learned, are fully taught in the secrets of the Cucumbers and Gourds, where many deuises are vttered, that may be vsed commõ. As if the owner would enioy timely fruits, and hauing strange formes on them, big, laratiue, and without Sæds, let him diligently reade and consider the former Chapters, both of the Cucumber and Gourd.

The Mellons and Pompons ought then to be gathered, when the stalkes begin to fæble, and the fruits to yæld a pleasant sauour in the eating, at which time the owner must diligently take heede of cattes, that haue an earnest loue and desire to them as afore is vttered.

Also the gardener ought to conceiue, that those named the winter Pompons, doe neuer grow to a full ripenesse on their beds, & for that cause, to procure them spædily to ripen, he must (after the gathering) hang them vp in the roofe of the house, and eate of those, when they appeare yellow within.

The Phisicke commodities of the Pompons and Mellons.

THe learned report, that the Mellons coole and moisten in the second degree, yet those felt swæte in taste, are temperately colde. The sæds also are vsed in medicine, & possesse the same property.

Diocles Caristius (in libris salubrium) vttereth, the Pompon to be easie of digestion, and to comfort verie much the heart, yet the same yeldeth but a small increase to the bodie.

Diaphilus reporteth, that the meat of the Pompon doth make fat, yet verie hardly digested, through coldnesse mixed with the moisture of the same, besides it rendereth a small nourishment, and hardly moueth the belly.

Phænias reporteth, that the Pompon must be eaten after the stomacke is emptie, for that this is otherwise lightly cõuerted into those humours, which of the same occasion hinder digestion, through the preheminence that it then obtaineth in the receptacle of the meat or stomacke.

Therefore hee willeth the Pompons, to be eaten with a fasting stomacke, and to pause from eating any other meate, vntill this in the stomacke be halfe digested.

Diphilus writeth, that the Pompons eaten, doe greatly asswage vnnaturall heates of the stomacke, and mittigate wicked Agues.

Galen reporteth, that all kinde of Pompons, haue the propertie of cooling, and enioy a large moisture, yet those not without a manifest qualitie of clensing, in that the Sœdes marueilloussly clense the face of sun-burning, of pimples, and foule spots.

This authour further addeth, that the same doth yeld and cause a wicked iuice, although it may sometimes be well digested of the stomacke.

Besides he affirmeth the same to cause Choller, and to yeld the plentie of moisture out of order.

The Pompons ought to bee eaten for the first meate, but in such maner that such which are fleumaticke do drinke olde wine after the same, and the Cholericke, to drinke some soure or tart thing after it, for on such wise handled, is all maner of harme auoided.

For this kinde of meate doth lightly alter into choller, or fleume, for which cause the ouersweet Pompon doth offend the Chollericke, and the fruit vnripe the fleumaticke.

Many worthy men preferre the long Pompons before the round, yet doe all the kinds moue or lose the belly, and cause vrine, so that they shall be ripe. For which cause they are iudged profitable for the kidnies, but the sœdes more auaile, insomuch that stones there pre-

pared

pared they maruellously expell.

The outward rinde of the Pompon applied to the forehead doth effectuously asswage and stay the running of the eyes.

Such which haue a hote stomacke, and encombred with Choller, are greatly harmed, if they drinke wine after the eating of the same, in that of the owne nature it is lightly caused, and the wine immediatly increaseth it more, and causeth a sharper humour in such bodies, and apt to vomit: yea this also extenuateth, grosse and clammy humours, yet doth it well agrée, that the fleumaticke eate of the Pompon, forasmuch as in the same is a substance tender and soluble, that is, the same which is next to the séede, for this doth not lightly corrupt.

The persons which eate of the Pompons, may not immediatly eate any other meate after them, in that those both corrupt, and alter the same eaten.

All the kindes of pompons prouoke vomiting, in bodies prepared, except the meate enioying a good iuice, be eaten immediatly vpon, for they on such wise, mooue the speedier downward.

The greater number of Phisitions write, that those eaten, doth mittigate the veneriall act, and doe abate the genitall seede.

The seeds properly clense the face, if the skinne be sundry times washed with the decoction of them: the Mellons (as Galen reporteth in lib. de facultatibus alimentorum) haue the propertie of clensing, for which cause they may aptly clére sunny spottes, pimples, and other foule spots both on the face and body.

The seedes of the Mellon cleane picked from their vpper skinne, and diligently brought to powder with Beane floure, this after the artly mixing with Rosewater, and dried in the sunne like cakes, dissolue in faire water, washing the face sundrie times with it: for it maruellously clenseth, and procureth with wine a cleere face, yea the same mundifieth all foule spots on the skinne.

The seedes also haue the propertie of causing vrine, yea those purge both the Loynes and kidnies, but the seedes more auaile in the Loynes, than in the bladder, so that a mightier remedie must bee inuented for the stone in the bladder, than for the stone of the loines and kidnies.

The rootes of the Mellons, not onely clense, but heale the vlcers full of matter, being applied with honny in plaister forme.

Many there be, which eat the Mellon with vineger, but to it they adde and mixe, the Pennyroiall and Onions, by which the harmfull force of the cold, might so be tempered.

Dyphilus writeth, that a little peece of the Mellone put into a pot with meat, causeth the speedier boiling of the Pettle or Mustard-seeds or the slip of the fig tree, on such wise ordered.

The commended helpes of the distilled water of the Mellons.

The best time for the distilling of Mellons, is when they bee throughly ripe, which shredde small, distill after art, about the harvest time.

The distilled water of the Mellons drunke, helpeth singularly the stone, procureth vrine, and clenseth the kidnies, the rather being vsed both morning and euening, for three or foure weekes togither, vnto the quantitie of three or foure ounces at a time.

The said water, for a time drunke, not onely cooleth the Liuer, but cooleth and extinguisheth all inward heats not naturall: yea this tempered with Suger and drunke, ceaseth marvellously thirst.

The water drunke, in like maner abouesaid, amendeth speedily an old cough.

The water applied without the body, with linnen clothes wet in the same, not onely expelleth the heates, but the swellinges of the bodie, wheresoeuer those shall happen.

Worthie

Worthy instructions about the sowing and se ting of sundry phisicke hearbes, to these of the greatest number of fragrant hearbes, and pleasant floures: and first of the blessed Thistle. Chap. 32.

WHere afore we haue sufficiently written of the apt placing and workmanly ordering of the most hearbes and fruites, both for the pot and sallets, and for their benefits for the vse of phisicke: in this part following (for a further encrease and comfort of the simple) we purpose to entreate not only of the artly placing of sundrie phisicke hearbes, but to what vses these serue for the aid and benefite of health.

And of these we entend to begin with that worthy hearbe named the blessed Thistle (for his singuler vertues) aswel against poysons, as the pestilent ague, and other perillous diseases of the heart: which to many at this day is very well known, although great controuersies haue been amongst the auntient Phisitions, about the true description of the hearbe: for both the name and forme of the hearbe, dee declare the same to be a kind of thistle: yet the learned Rutilius writing of the blessed thistle, came neerer to a troth, and faithfuller described the forme of the hearbe, in that hee affirmed the same to haue a big stalke, and leaues crisped with prickles (after the condition of the Endiue) the flowre yellowish, and seeds small, contained within the soft downe, (as in the other thistles) and that they do late wax ripe.

This hearbe named the blessed thistle, requireth to be sowen in a well laboured ground, and the seedes ought to be committed to the earth in the first quarter of the moone, but those not to be bestowed in beds aboue three fingers deepe.

The hearbe also ioyeth and well prospereth comming vp among Wheate.

The Phisicke benefites and helpes of the blessed Thistle. 6

THe hearbe of qualitie is hote and drie, which the bitter taste of the same well demonstrateth, besides it drieth & somewhat digesteth: the herbe hath the nature and propertie of opening the stopping of members, of pearcing and causing traine.

The blessed thistle either eaten or drunke deliuereth the patient from the mightie paine of the head which vereth about the eyes: this also putteth away the giddinesse of the head, restoreth (by a like reason) memorie lost, the hearing, and diseases of the Lungs.

The leaues brought to pouder, and drunke in wine, consume and send forth the fleume of the stomacke, but the leaues are the better and handsommer taken, if of the pouder pilles be made.

This in like maner purgeth the breast and bloud, and very much profiteth the consumption of the Lungs: the leaues boiled in Wine, and drunke hote, doth ceasse gripnges, prouoke sweate, breake the stone, and helpe the monthly termes.

The herbe for a time vsed, comforteth the braine and sight, not only if the same be eaten, but if the eyes also bee annointed therewith.

When the iuice of the hearbe cannot be had, then let the pouder, or the hearbe it selfe dried, be steeped for a night in water, and the eies washed with the same: The iuice also dropped into the eyes, remoueth the bloud consisting in them.

The blessed thistle refraineth or stoppeth the bleeding of the nose, or mouth, if the hearbe be applyed to the place, from whence it runneth.

The pouder of the same herbe purgeth the Vuula, the Iawes, and throate, and cause that the patient may the easier eat and spit forth fleume and grosse humours.

The hearbe drunke in wine, amendeth a weake stomacke, procureth

cureth an appetite to meate, and abateth the heate: yea this consumeth the euill bloud, and engendreth the good.

If the herbe shalbe boyled in water and drunke, the same consumeth euill humours, and preserueth the good, this boyled in wine and drunke, prouoketh sweate.

The herbe drunke boyled, or raw with wine, breaketh the stone, the same eaten, strengtheneth the palsie members, and recouereth the exulcerated lunges.

The blessed thistle boiled in the water of a healthfull male childe drunke, profiteth the dropsie persons, helpeth the plague, and dissolueth all impostumes: yea, this remooueth the canker and falling sicknesse: the pouder of the leaues, vnto the quantitie of halfe a Walnut-shell at a time drunke in wine, is a moste present remedie against the plague, if the same shall be receiued within foure & twenty houres space of the time grieued: If wine be boiled with the herbe, and drunke, profiteth the like: this by a like maner receiued, amendeth the rotten Feuers of the stomacke, and such encumbred with the feauer Quartane: the downe proceeding of the flowres of the blessed thistle, applied on deepe cuttes, and new woundes, doth in short time cure them without paine.

The pouder of the herbe mixed with meale, and a plaister employed of the same with hote vineger, helpeth the pushes and other swellings of the plague: the herbe cureth any manner of burning, and the blisters proceeding of the same, if afore dried, and mixed with the proper iuice it be applyed on the places.

This herbe drunke with white wine, remoueth the Collicke, and putteth away scabbes: the herbe chawed in the mouth, amendeth a stincking breath: the heatbe also bruised, and applyed on botches speedely cureth them: yea, this recouereth the defaultes of womens places, and causeth the termes.

The bite of venemous beastes may be holpen, either with the iuice, or decoction of the hearb in water: the pouder of the herb eaten or drunke, helpeth stitches in the side, and the pleurisie: this also profiteth infantes incombred with the falling sicknesse, and wormes.

Manie worthie phisitions affirme, that the pouder or iuice, or the decoction of this hearbe doth expell all maner of poisons: the example

of

of which matter, Hieronimus Tragus (in his Herball) learnedly vttereth, where he reporteth that there was a certaine young maiden, which vnknowing thereof, did eate poyson in an apple giuen to her, whose bodie incontinent swelled, and no medicine could asswage the swelling, vntill that the distilled water of this herbe was ministred to her, which in short time mittigated or abated the swelling, to the wonder of many, so that on this wise the childe was deliuered from all perill of the poyson.

A like historie reported of others, that a childe happened to sleepe in the field open mouthed, into whose mouth an Adder crept & went down into the bodie, but after two ounces of the distilled water was ministred, the Adder incontinent crept forth again by the fundament without further harme or hurt vnto the childe. Wherefore against all poisons, they affirme the pouder, iuice, decoction or distilled water of this herbe, to be a singuler remedie, applied either within or without the bodie: but after the taking either of these, the patient ought to be diligently couered with clothes, that he may well sweate for three houres space.

The wine made in harueſt of the blessed thistle, and drunke in the time answerable, profiteth and helpeth all the grieſes before vttered.

The commended vertues of the distilled water of the blessed Thistle.

THe time and order of distilling of the same, is that the hearbe alone, about the end of May be distilled.

The water distilled of the blessed thistle drunke vnto the quantitie of two or three ounces at a time, both morning and euening, putteth away head-ache, comforteth memorie, helpeth the giddinesse of the head, and recouereth especially all the grieſes of the eyes, although they be but washed with the same.

The water in like maner taken, profiteth such being in a cõsumption of the bodie. The water in like quantitie drunke both morning & euening, breaketh the stone, & cureth any burning, by often applying linnen

linnen clothes wet in the same.

The patient molested with the quartayne or any other Ague, by taking three ounces of the distilled water of the hearbe fasting, well a quarter of an houre before the fitte of colde beging, and lying downe to sweate, be well couered with clothes, shall within certaine fittes so vsing himselfe, be deliuered either of the one or other Ague, the like doth the decoction of the hearbe or the pouder drunke hote with wine.

Against eating Cankers, or any other putride vlcers, there is scarsely to be found any other worthier than the leaues, the Iuice, decoction, or water of the blessed Thistle. And notable diseases hath the herbe recouered, especially in women, whose breasts were eaten and consumed with the Canker, euen vnto the bare ribbes, by clensing first the places with this water, & applying after the pouder of the hearbe, which on such wise handled, healed them in short time.

And Bathes are profitably made of this hearbe, for the dissoluing of the stone, and prouoking of the Termes.

What care and secretes are to be learned in the sowing and setting of the hearbe Angelica.

Chap. 33.

The hearbe Smyrnium, which at this day of all the Phisitions and poticaries throughout Europe is named Angelica: this when in the first yeare it shall come vp of the seede, yeeldeth stalkes of a foote and a halfe high, a finger bigge, rounde, tender, smooth, and bending backe to the earth: these also deuided and spread forth into two, or three, and many times foure smaller stalkes or armes, in whose toppe are leaues in forme like to the leaues of the Smallach, but farre greater, and those deuided into three partes, sharpe fashioned at the ende, and growing vnto twelue fingers in height and breadth, and green all the Winter.

In the second or third yeare, ẏ stemme shooteth vp, out of the middle of the leaues, and in height two or sometimes three cubites, encreasing within a thombe bigneſſe for the more part, round, iointed, whitish and smoothe, & as the same were sprinckled with dusky spots

and hollow within, beset also with leaues in ioynt forme, much lesser than the abouesaide. This also hath litle branches and certaine stemmes shooting forth, in whose toppe are great tuffes, well fiue or sixe inches broad, and those in forme imbossed round, and full of whitish flowres, in which do after succéde two séedes, conioyned together, long, cornered, and of ashie white colour: those also contained within the huske, be longe, plaine, blacke without, white within, and the tough kernell couered with a rinde or pilling sharpe edged. This encreaseth in roote many times so bigge as the hand can clasp about, and sometimes bigger, yea it sendeth forth the roote before the stemme be come vppe, which roote encreaseth in yeeres well a foote of length, or into many parts deuided, being blacke without, and white within, bigge, soft, and full of Iuice, which being cut, sendeth forth a yelow Iuice or licoure from the inner side of the rinde, and a like licoure is contained in the veines of the leaues, but the same more watery.

The roote, seedes, and leaues possesse an eger taste, fretting the iawes, somewhat bitter, thinne, and aromaticke or sweete smelling.

The most effectuous of all the partes, is the proper licour, next the seedes, then the roote, last the flowres and leaues.

The hearbe Angelica loyeth to be sowne in a wel laboured earth, and the same rather dry than moiste, for the harming by wormes, after the comming vp, this requireth to bee diligently wéeded about and seldome watered. This Angelica flourisheth and beareth flowres in the moneth thof July and August.

The Phisicke commodities of the Angelica.

The hearbe of qualitie is hote and dry in the third degrée, it openeth, extenuateth, and dissoluoth.

This hath speciall properties against poysons, it cleareth the bloud and body.

The roote is souueraigne against the plague, and all maner of poysons, the like doth the distilled water of the roote preuaile.

The pouder of the hearbe, vnto the quantitie of halfe a dramme, with a dramme waight of pure Triackle, giuen in foure or fiue ounces of the distilled water of the same, and the patient well couered

red to sweate, doth marueilloufly helpe the infection of the plague, and sudden agues or sweating.

And for lacke of Triacle, may a whole dramme of the pouder be ministred.

The roote of the herbe (after the infusing in vineger) applied to the nose, or the pouder of the roote drunke sometimes fasting in wine, very much auaileth against a pestilent ayre.

The distilled water of the Angelica, or pouder of the roote, ceasseth gripings of the belly proceeding of cold, if the belly otherwise be not costiue. To be briefe, the distilled water and pouder of the roote, recouereth al inward griefs of the body, and in the pleurisie or stitches of the sides, this is profitably ministred. The pouder of the Angelica (or as some write the distilled water of the herbe) helpeth ruptures, and the diseases of the Lungs, it putteth away gripings of the belly, amendeth the strangury, sendeth forth the yongling and Termes, and dissolueth all inward swellings of the body.

The roote boyled in wine or water and hony, and drunke, preuaileth in all the aboueſaid griefes, being in due order ministred. The Iuice bestowed into hollow téeth, stayeth the running of them: the water of the herbe dropped into the eares, doth like auaile in the same. This also amendeth the dimnesse of sight. The leaues of the Angelica wrought with the leaues of Rue and Honny in a plaister forme, and the same workmanly handled, doth not onely heale the bit of a madde Dogge, but the sting of venemous woormes. This plaister applyed on the head of the patient sicke of the Ague, doth in short time draw to it, all the heate of the feauer. The distilled water, Iuice, and pouder of the herbe, workmanly applyed in the deepe woundes, do clense, and regenerate or renue flesh in the places.

The distilled water applyed with linnen clothes wet in it, doth marueilloufly assuage the ache of the hippes and gout, in that the same consumeth soft and clammy humors gathered.

Many other vertues of this hearbe may be gathered by the former helpes vttered.

The seedes haue like properties as the roote possesseth: the wilde Angelica is weaker in vertue, but boiled in wine and applyed in plaister forme, doth especially cure new and old vlcers.

What care and diligence is required in the artly sowing of the hearbe Valerian. Chap. 34.

THe Valeriane groweth vppe with a long and high stemme, iointed and hollow, bearing on the toppe a tuffe, and flowers purple mixed with a whiteneſſe, or white mixed with a redineſſe, after the forme of Organy, the roote as bigge as the little finger, and white, with many other small rootes branching in the earth, and these yelowish of colour, sweete in sauoure. And this doth Hieronimus booke report to be true Valerian, and that rare to be found, which for the rareneſſe, is at this day sowen in many Gardens. The Valerian commeth very well vp, being bestowed in a moist and well dunged ground, and the hearbe after the comming vp, requireth to be often watered, vntill it hath yeelded a high stemme.

The Phisicke benefits of the Valerian.

THe hearbe of qualitie heateth in the third degree, and drieth in the beginning of the second, and the roote especially seruеth for the vse of Phisicke.

The roote of the Valerian brought to pouder, and drunke in wine, prouoketh sweate and vrine, the like perfourmeth the roote it selfe being boyled in Wine: yea, this also amendeth the paine and stitches of the sides and backe.

The roote dried may be kept for three whole yeares, and gathered especially in the moneth of August.

The pouder of the roote of Valerian, mixed with the white Helleboro or néese wort, and the flowre of wheate, this in apt places layed, killeth Mice. The roote boyled in white wine with Fennell and parsely seedes, doth mightily prouoke the vrine, colde, helpeth the paines in the sides, and moueth the Termes.

This also preuaileth against poyson, and the plague, by drinking of it.

Certaine do boile the roote of the Valerian, with Fennell, Annise seedes, and Licouritse, for the cough and straightneſſe of breath.

The

The greene Hearbe and fresh roote bruised, and applyed, doth mittigate the paine of the heade, stay fluxes, and profiteth the shingles.

The flowers or roote boyled in wine, and dropped into the eyes, procureth a clearenesse of them, healeth the great piles in the fundament, and other vlcers, but this especially amendeth the dimnesse of sight, as Ieronimus booke witnesseth.

The worthie vertues of the distilled water of the Hearbe.

THe conuenient time of the distillation of the same is that the root, hearbe, and stem, with the whole substance be shred togither, and distilled about the end of May.

The distilled water of Valerian, drunke vnto the quantitie of foure ounces at a time, both morning and euening, and linnen clothes wet in it applyed vppon, doth in short time amend vlcers, olde sores, and those causing swellings: yea, this auaileth against the piles, by applying linnen clothes wet in it.

The saide water drunke in like quantitie, both morning & euening profiteth the creature hauing any bone broken: this also helpeth a rupture, or a body broken: and dropt in the eyes, clareth them.

The distilled water of the Valerian, drunke vnto the quantitie of a spoonfull at a time, euery morning fasting, doth expell the long woormes in children.

This water drunke in like maner, as afore vttered, profiteth against poyson, and a pestilent ayre: it healeth new and olde wounds, clareth vlcers and impostumes within the body, and remoueth the ache of the hips.

The distilled water orderly drunke procureth cleare eyes, remoueth the paine in them, and procureth sweat, this poured into troubled wine, causeth the same purer and clearer to be drunke.

The said water assageth the paine of the members, proceeding of an vntemperate coldnes, by daily annointing the members with it.

The vertues of the distilled water of the roote of Valerian.

THe distillation of this water is to bee wrought, from the fifteenth day of August, vnto the eight day of the Moneth of September.

This distilled water drunke, as afore taught, doth remoue poyson, and profiteth against venomous beasts.

The water distilled drunke fasting, vnto the quantitie of fiue ounces at a time, before the fitte commeth, deliuereth the Quotidian Ague.

The said water in like quantitie giuen, and both annointed, and applied with linnen clothes wet in it, amendeth the stitches in the sides.

When two persons at variance, shall drinke a quantitie of this water out of one cup together, it doth after procure them friendes, and louing one to another.

The diligence required in the bestowing of the hearbe Bytonie. Chap. 35.

THe Bytonie is an herbe, hauing a slender stemme, and foure square, growing in many places a foote and a halfe high, the leaues long and soft and indented round about, like the Oken leaues, and sweete smelling, among the which, greater leaues are those growing nigh to the roote: in the top of the stemmes is the seede, cared after the maner of Sauerie, the rootes spreading small, and beareth purple flowres.

The herbe Bytonie ioyeth to be sowne in a moist & colde ground, and by a brick or stone wall to enioy the shadow of the same, for the herbe much delighteth to stand in the Sunne beames.

The

The Phisicke commodities of the herbe Bytonie.

THe hearbe Bytonie (after the minde of the learned) is hote and drie in the first degree complet, or in the middle of the second, and hath the nature of cutting asunder, which is manifest of the taste, that is sower and somwhat bitter.

The hearbe boyled with the floures in wine and drunke, staieth belching, the rawnesse of stomack amendeth, and the soure restings correcteth. The selfe same may the distilled water, or a confection made of the floures with sugar, or the pouder of the drie hearbe it selfe, or ministred with honny.

The hearb drunk in wine, very much profiteth the diseases of the Matrice: and this to be briefe, is auaylable to all inward griefes of the body, in what maner soeuer the same be taken. For this giuen in Mulse vineger vnto the quantitie of a dramme, profiteth in the sending forth of the harmefull humours of the Stomacke, Liuer, Milte, Kidneyes, Bladder, and Matrice.

The person which feareth to haue drunke poison, by taking a dram waight of pouder in wine, shalbe deliuered of the harme both by vrine and siege.

The hearbe (after the boyling in water) drunke, profiteth phrensie persons: such hauing the falling sicknesse, the Paulsie, and ache of the Hips.

The hearbe helpeth digestion, if any after supper eateth vnto the bignesse of a beane of the same, being afore boyled in honny, this also stieped in wine for a night, and drunke stayeth vomiting.

The hearbe boiled in wine and drunke, expelleth the Ague, and ministred to the waight of two drammes, with Hidromel, sendeth forth the water betweene the skinne, and many humours.

The pouder of the Hearbe to the weight of a dramme drunke with wine doth speedely help the Iaundise, and sendeth downe the Termes.

The Bytonie boyled in wine and strayned, if with three drams of Hiera Pigra Galeni mixed and drunke fasting, gently purgeth the belly: the Herbe boyled with Honny, recouereth the consumption of the body, and mattery spittings of the Lungs.

The

The herbe bruſed, and applied in plaſter forme on the hurt of the head, as witneſſeth Apulens, doth by a maruellous ſpedines cloſe and heale the ſame, yea, this hath ſuch a propertie, that it faſtneth broken bones, and by this force draweth forth, and diſſolueth the clotted bloud.

The pouder of the herb giuen to the weight of a dramme in wine, ſtayeth the ſpitting of bloud.

The leaues bruſed and applyed in plaiſter forme on the eyes doth ſpeedely helpe the eyes bruſed or hurt by a ſtripe: the rootes alſo of the hearb boiled to a third part in water, and the eyes ſuppled with the ſame water, do ſpedely remoue the paine of them.

The iuyce of the hearbe dropped into the eares with the oyle of Roſes, remoueth all maner of paine in them, the ſame amendeth the hardneſſe of fetching of breath, if the breſt be annointed therwith: the herbe eaten cauſeth the clearenesse of ſight.

The Bytonie boyled in old wine and vineger, vnto the conſumption of a third part, and gargalled in the mouth, remoueth toothach.

This drunke in wine, recouereth an euill colour of the body, the ſame boyled in wine and drunke, they affirme of experience to profit the diſeaſes of the Milte.

The eating of two ounces of the pouder with Honny for eight daies together aſſwageth the cough, two drammes of Bytonie and one of Plantaine, miniſtred with foure ounces of warme water beſore the fit of colde, putteth away the quotidian.

Three drammes of the pouder, with one ounce of pure Honny giuen in three ounces of warme water, before the fit comming, doth maruelloſly remoue the fits of the Tertian and quartane ague.

For griefe of the bladder, take foure drames of Bytonie, of Parſely rootes three ſcruples boiled, but the rootes of the Parſely afore boiled in a pinte of water, vnto the conſumption of the halfe, and then the Bytonie added to, and giuen to drink, which ſo deliuereth the paine, that neuer after it commeth againe.

The Bytonie drunk in wine, diſſolueth the ſtone, & helpeth al painfull griefes of the bladder: yea, his is moſt effectuous in ỳ ſtranguria, certaine perſwade for a ſingular remedy againſt the ſtone, to drinke the pouders of Bytonie, Veruaine, and Yarrow, by equall portions in water.

The

The rootes of Bitony boyled with the leaues vnto a third part away, and drunke in water, with the Hearbe applied alone, doe marueilously assuage (of experience knowen) the paine of the Gout.

The leaues heated betwéene two new Tyles, and applyed to the forehead, do mitigate the griefe of the eyes, and stay the running of them, in that this among the other hearbes, which they apply to the head, obtaineth a principalitie.

The commended vertues of the distilled water of Betonie.

THe time of gathering, and distilling of the Betonie, with the whole substance, is about the end of May.

The distilled water of Bitonie, as Hieronimus Brunsuicensis, a most expert. Herbarian witnesseth, drunke vnto the quantity of foure ounces at a time, both morning, noone, and euening, putteth away the dropsie, Iaundise, and any ague.

The distilled water helpeth the diseases of the kidneys, mylt, and Lungs, and all those griefes tofore vttered: the water either drunke or applied on the places with linnen clothes wet in it, if the euill or griefe shall appeare without the body.

The skill and diligence required in the artly bestowing of the Hearbe Louage. Chap. 36.

THe Louage ioyeth to grow by waies, and vnder the Eiuesing of an house, it also prospereth in shadowy places, but especially delighteth to growe neare to a running water.

This in the growing sendeth vp a long and slender stem, like to Dyl, iointed, with leaues round about like to the Melyote, sweete sauouring, tenderer and softer, towards the toppe smaller and much more deuided. In the toppe of the stem groweth a tuffe, in which consisteth the seede, blacke, hard, and long like to the Fennell seede being sharpe in taste, and sweete in smelling, it also beareth a yelow floure, and hath a pale roote within, but blacke without, sharpe, sweete sauouring, tender, full of Iuice, and byting the iawes.

The hearbe for his swéete sauour is vsed in bathe, but the séede is of greater effect in medicine.

The Phisicke benefites of the Hearbe Louage.

THis Herbe of qualitie is hotte and dry, in the third degrée, the sedes indure in strengh and vertue for three yéeres.

The drie roote bruised heateth the stomacke, helpeth digestion, expelleth superfluous humors, and drunke in wine, vnto the waight of halfe a dramme at a time, ceaseth all inward grieses: this also expelleth poisons, causeth vrine and the Termes, and performeth the like matters, which the Angelica doth.

The Hearbe boyled in wine or water, and drunke, openeth the stopping of the Liuer and milte, the hearbe bruised and mixed with Cummine, very much profiteth if the same be drunke in wine, for this recouereth the stomacke, and expelleth noyous windes out of the bowels.

The hearbe Louage with Galingale and Cinamon boiled in wine, and drunke with a fasting stomacke, amendeth the diseases of the stomacke, milt, and boweles, a pouder like to Eclegma prepared of the Louage seedes, Cinamon, Raponticke, and Galingale, with sugar in equall proportion mixed, and drunke in wine, auaileth vnto the aboue sayd diseases.

If any drinke a quantitie of the Louage sédes, in wine fasting, it procureth the person to purge both vpward and downewarde, the sédes after the boyling, giuen vp in glister forme, doth greatly ease the person pained with the Gout in the feete.

The Seedes stéeped for a night in white wine, & drunke fasting, doe mightely draw downe the Termes, yet are the seedes of themselues ouer forcible vnto the vse of the medicine inward, in that they ministred or applied in plaister forme, both breake and open vlcers, yea, expell mightily the dead yongling.

For which cause the strength of those seedes must be tempered, by a like waight of the Fennell and Annis seedes, which on such wise ministred, worketh his propertie in the bodie without harme.

But the seeds may safely be applyed without the body in any maner without any other addition to them.

The

The Louage sedes boyled artly in Wine, do aswage the gripings of the belly and bowels, remoue the swelling of the stomacke, digest the humors of the stomacke, cure the bite of venemous woormes, procure vrine and the Termes.

A bath made of the Louage, Rosemarie, Peneroyall, Sage, Catmint, Cammomyll, Mellilote, the Cytrine, Stæchados, Mugwort, and Fenegrate, these together boiled in wine, and sitting ouer the fume to sweate, not onely openeth the poares of the body, and drawetb forth all euill humours, but dissolueth the stone, procureth vrine and the Termes, healeth the Crampe, procéding of the fulnesse of body, the paine of the Gout, the Palsie, the kings euill, and heateth all the inner members.

The roote bruised and applyed in plaister forme, doth greatly auaile on the bitte of a mad dog, and venemous woorme, in that the same both mitigateth and expelleth poyson.

The commended vertues of the distilled water of Louage.

The time of the distillation of the same is, that the leaues shred together with the stems, be distilled in the middle of May.

The distilled water of the Louage drunke morning and euening vnto the quantitie of two or thrée ounces at a time, doth in short time helpe them, pained with stitches about the breast and sides, remoueth the griefe of the stone in the Loines and bladder, cleareth the hoarsenesse of voice, and putteth away the dangerous swelling of the throat, by washing and applying on the same, linnen clothes wet in it.

The distilled water asswageth the swelling of the head, and the aking of the same, if linnen clothes wet in it, be applyed vpon: it procureth a white and louely countenance, if the same be diligently washed both morning and euening with water.

This helpeth the pushes, and rednesse procéding of heate, hapning commonly from the knée downeward, by applying linnen clothes wet in it, that ceaseth the heat and cureth the pushes.

This cureth the Canker of the mouth, if it be often washed with the same, and that at eche time, the pouder of the Barberrie roote be sprinckled vpon.

This also cureth the griefe and exulceration of womens places, if these be washed there with for three or foure times a day: the same dooth the sayd water perfourme, if linnen clothes wet in it, be sundrie times applyed vpon.

What care and skill is required in the bestowing of the Herbe Elecampane. Chap. 37.

THe Herbe Elecampane groweth vp with a long stem, big and mossie, and the leaues with mossy heares on the one side, on the toppe of the stem, being many times a mans height, is a bigge yealow floure growing, in which the seedes are contained, and those by feeling procure itch.

The roote within the earth reddish without, and white within, bigge, sharpe in taste, and sweete smelling. The roote is digged vp at the beginning of sommer, and slyced, dryed in the sunne.

This especially flourisheth in the moneth of July.

The Elecampane may not be sowen, in that the seedes bestowed in beds prosper not, but rather set the yong buds broken tenderly from the roote, in earth well dunged and laboured afore. And those beginne to set in the moneth of February, well three foote asunder, one from the other, in that those send forth bigge leaues, and long rootes spreading in the earth.

The Phisicke commodities of the Elecampane.

THe Elecampane of qualitie heateth in the ende of the third degree, and moysteth in the first.

The pouder of the dry roote mixed with pure Hony, and vsed in forme of an Eclegma, amendeth the cough, the roote also of the Elecampane (artely prepared) defendeth the Lungs from euill humors, remoueth the ache of the Hyppes and ioyntes, and sicknesses proceeding of a colde cause.

This expelleth the grosse humors in man, and asswageth the ache of the Hucklebones: boyled also in wine, and mixed with Suger in the

the drinking, amendeth that hard fetching of breath by the necke, especially holden vpright, and procureth vrine.

The pouder of the roote drunke in like maner sendeth downe the Termes, and this is profitably ministred against poyson, & the bite of venemous wormes and beastes.

The roote canded with Honny or Sugar, is sayd very much to preuaile against the daunger of a pestilent ayre, being afore eaten, for which cause the rawe roote (of many) is eaten in the plague time.

The roote of the Elecampane is canded after this maner, by plucking the roote out of the earth in the moneth of October, at what time the same is growne to a full ripenesse, which then is to be rubbed and clensed with a course heiry cloth, after this scraped faire with a sharp knife, and those rootes which are big, to be sliced into three or foure peeces so long as a finger, which after ỳ putting into a brasse chafer, to be tenderly boiled with vineger, but in such maner, as the peeces burne not to the sides or bottome of the chafer: within three dayes after the boiling, they are to be dried in the Sunne, and then bestowed into a newe earthen pot, well pitched about, on which a pleasant Cuite poured to soke them in and store of the herb Saucrie pressed downe vpon them: which done, the mouth of the pot to be diligently stopped with a skin or thick parchment.

The rootes may otherwise be ordered in scraping them cleane, and after the cutting of them into two or three peeces, well a finger long, to let those steepe in water a whole day ouer hote embers, which done, to boile the peeces two or three times ouer, in asmuch waighte of honny or sugar.

The conserue of the Elecampane roote, may be made by clensing and scraping the roote in the maner aboue taught: which done, to cut them into thinne round slices, letting them soke in water ouer the hote embers, for a long space, and to boile them vntill the licour bee all wasted, then to beate those in a stone morter, letting them after to passe through a strainer or linnen cloth: this done, to boile the whole with a like waight of honny or sugar, two or three times ouer.

All other rootes may in like maner be canded, and made into conserue, but farre pleasanter in the eating, if to the confection a quantitie of Sinamom be added.

The same also they name to be canded, when the roote or the thing canded, remaineth whole after the canding, but the conserue in a contrary maner remaineth not whole, in that the same is beaten small to the making of it.

The leaues of the Elecampane boyled in wine, and a plaister made of the same, applyed to weake and loose members, doth so much heate them, that in short time they recouer strength and health.

The Elecampane putteth away ye and heauinesse, comforteth the heart, and sendeth forth the superfluous humours by vrine: this also (after the mind of Hippocrates) causeth mirth.

The hearbe defendeth and preserueth the skin of the face, and like garnisheth the whole body with a continuall semelinesse, the wine also of the Elecampane made, heateth colde members, the same drunke orderly, helpeth all the diseases which are afore vttered.

Here note, that all wines boyled or made of the hearbs, doe more prenaile in the morning, than at euening.

The Elecampane boyled with Pellitory, and mixed with oyle, applyed hote to the belly, ceaseth the gripings of the bowels, and the same applyed vnder the Nauell, remoueth & helpeth the strangury.

The worthy vertues of the distilled water of the leaues of the Elecampane.

THe time aunswerable to the distillation is, that the hearb and root shred togither, be distilled in the moneth of May.

This water drunke morning and euening, for fiue or sixe daies togither the quantitie of an egge-shell full at a time, expelleth the griefe of the stone.

The distilled water drunke in the sayd maner, or a quantitie bestowed in drinke, helpeth the person broken: the same also drunke, & the head annointed therwith, in such maner as the same may dry in, greatly comforteth the head.

The distilled water drunke morning and euening for certaine daies togither, comforteth and strengthneth the stomacke, amendeth the hard fetching of breath, the cough, pleurisie, poyson, the stone, and termes in women.

The

The distilled water strengthneth the members annointed therewith, and the more by daily drinking thereof: this also expelleth the stone of the kidneyes and bladder, and the same cleareth the parts of the body, and causeth vrine, by drinking of it morning and euening, for certaine daies togither.

The commended vertues of the distilled water of the root.

THe roote of the Elecampane is to be distilled about the end of May, or from the Moneth of July, vnto September.

The distilled water of the same drunke many dayes together, vnto the quantitie of two or three ounces at a time, healeth an inner rupture: the distilled water drunke in the sayd maner, helpeth the stone, prouoketh the termes in women, asswageth the griefe of the stone, and prouoketh vrine: yea, this drunke in the aboue said maner, sendeth the dead youngling out of the mothers wombe.

The distilled water either drunke or applyed with linnen clothes wet in it, remoueth the swellings of womens places: the sayd water also drunke or applied with linnen clothes, asswageth the swelling testicles, and onely this drunke often, doth amend them.

The distilled water drunke sundry daies vnto the quantity aboue-sayd, both morning and euening, ceaseth the cough, and consumeth the grosse and clammy humours about the stomacke.

The care in the bestowing of the hearbe Pepperwort. Chap. 38.

THe Pepperwort is a seemely hearbe, yeelding leaues greater and broader than the Peache or Bay-tree, and those thicker, greener and softer, the hearbe also growing a foote and a halfe, and sometimes two foote high, with a stiffe and round stemme, bearing on the top white and very small flowres, after these a small seede and long roote.

The leaues are soure, & bite in taste like pepper on the tongue, for which cause this is rightly named pepperwort: this groweth euery where in Gardens, and wel ordered in the ground, endureth for two

yeares,

yeares, in certaine places also (as wit nesseth Ruellius:) it continueth greene ten yeares. It flourisheth or beareth floures in the moneth of June or July, and next yeldeth the Seede.

The herbe Pepperworte ought to be set before the beginning of Marche, after the growing vp, to be clipped and cut like the Siues, but this not often, for after ý first day of Nouember, the herbe ought not to be cut least it perisheth or drieth through the colde season ensuing. The herbe prospereth and continueth two yeares, if the same be well dunged about, and diligently weeded.

•

The phisicke benefits of the herbe Pepperworte.

THe herbe of qualitie heateth and drieth in the third degree, as Brunsfelsius reporteth, but Galen affirmeth the Pepperworte to be hote, as the Cresses is, in the fourth degree, yet lesser dryeth than it, and the leaues of this herbe doth by propertie exulcerate: the nature also of the herbe, is to cut and extenuate the meate receiued, and clammy humoures.

The Pepperworte is not to be vsed or taken inwarde without milke, and it hath the like properties as the Cresses, which after the maner of condite thinges, must bee condited with milke and Salte. And the same may be made after this maner, by infusing the freshe leaues in newe milke: and after ý third day, ý whey pressed foorth. Time, and Parsely mixed, and diligently beaten togither, this well sodden and strayned, to adde so much salt as shall suffise.

Seeing the leaues possesse such a sharpnesse (as Dioscorides reporteth) that they doe exulcerate partes within, for that cause may they aptly serue vnto exulcerating in the paine of the hips, if after the bruising with an Elecampane roote, it be laide to the place a quarter of an houre. And this in the like maner lying to, asswageth the swelling of the Milt.

The roote beaten with barrows grease, or with the Elecampane roote, and applied in plaister forme on the hip grieued, doth deliuer the ache in short time.

This amendeth the skinne of the face, by exulcerating, so that the same

same be after healed, with Oyle of Roses and wax. And on such wise it easily taketh away foule scabbes and leaprie, and the markes of Vlcers.

The roote of the hearbe Pepperwort tied on the Arme, or hanged about the neck, is supposed to cease or allwage the toothache.

The care in the bestowing of the Celondine. Chapter 36.

THe Hearbe Celondine shooteth vp a foote and a halfe high, and sometimes is more slender of stemme, bearing manie leaues, and those like to the Crowfoote, but softer and to a yealowishe colour tending, yelding also a yelow floure like to the Violet.

The iuice in the hearbe of yelow colour like Saffrone, biting the tongue, sowre, somewhat bitter & strong sauouring. The roote aboue all one, but within the earth shedde into many yellowe hayrie rootes: it commonly groweth in shadowey places, by walles and in stonie heaps: this florisheth at the comming of the swallowes, and all the Sommer, but it withereth at the departure of them.

The Celondine commeth vp in any earth, yet doth the same more ioy bestowed in a shadoweye place, and the seeds ought to be committed to the earth in the moneth of February, which after the comming vp, wil endure for two yeres, if after the shedding of the Seedes, the stemmes be cut away, well foure fingers aboue the rootes.

The Phisick benefits of the Celondine.

THe Celondine is of qualitie hotte and dry, in the third degree absolute: but Platearius affirmeth the hearbe to be hote and dry in the fourth degree. Foure things are preserued of this hearbe, as the leaues with the stemme, the rootes seeds, and iuice.

The iuice of the hearbe boyled in a Copper vessel with honey on the coles, and dropped into the eies, procureth a clearnesse of them, and putteth away the dimnesse of sight.

The iuice mixed with salt Armoniacke, and dropped into the eyes remoueth the pinne and webbe growen on them, and causeth a clear-

nesse of sight. The hearbe with the floures diligently beate, boyling them after in water, and that water boiled, poure into a pot, setting the same againe ouer the fire, and well skimming it in the boyling, when the licour beginneth to seeth ouer, straine it some after through a linnen cloth, which keep close stopped in a glasse or a pot to vse, for this dropped in the eyes, remoueth the dimnesse of sight.

The iuice of the roote cleareth the leaprie, if any annointeth the places there with, and the patient after taketh the Sirrope of Fumicorie for nine daies together, both morning and euening, which without doubt recouereth and helpeth the same.

The iuice is to be purchased in May, as well out of the rootes as leaues and floures beaten together, and pressed forth, which after the drying in the shadow, to be formed into little patties.

The roote of the Celondine, boyled in white wine with Annise seeds, and drunke fasting deliuereth the Iaundise through stopping in the bodie, and applied (after the boyling in wine) or chawed in the mouth, asswageth the toothache.

A handfull of the Celondine purged, boiled in an equall quantitie of Rose water, and strained, to which an ounce and a halfe of Triacle added, is a most effectuous remedie against the plague.

The roote boyled in wine, and applied in plaister forme on the Shingles or Tetters, speedily healeth them, the hearbe bruised (as Plateanius reporteth) boyled in wine, and applyed vpon, or a spunge wette in the saide decoction, remoueth the Cholick passion.

The pouder of the roote, sprinckled on woundes and vlcers, both clenseth and healeth them.

For the Canker of the mouth, bone, or sinewes, the pouder of the said roote, with the pouder of Roses wrought together with vineger, and boiled vnto a meane thicknes, like to mustard, and the cankerous parts annointed with it, doeth much auaile.

For prouoking of the Termes, and clensing the matrice, let a foment be often applied with the water of the decoction of the same.

The commended vertues of the distilled water of Celondine.

The time of gathering and distilling of the Celondine is, that the hearbs with the whole substance be small shred, and distilled in the

the middle of May.

The distilled water drunke vnto the quantitie of foure ounces at a time, both morning and euening, expelleth the yellow Jaundise: this drunke in the like maner, auaileth against the gripings of the belly.

The distilled water drunke in the aboue said maner, mitigateth the ague, and remoueth scabbes caused of cold, if they often be bathed or soupled with it.

The distilled water drunke vnto the quantitie of two ounces at a time, either twise or thrise a day, profiteth vnto the stopping of the liuer and milt.

The water dropped into the eies, correcteth the pinne and webbe, putteth away the rednesse of them, and causeth a sharpe and readie sight.

If the mouth be washed with the said water, it ceasseth the tooth-ache, and putteth away spots of the face, if the face be washed with this water.

The distilled water drieth and healeth a Canker, yea Fistula also, and remoueth pestilent pusches, if a linnen cloth wet in it, be applied on the places twice or thrice a day.

The care in the bestowing of the hearbe of Filipendula. Chapter 40.

The hearbe Filipendula groweth in stony and rough places, as on hils, bearing a leafe like to the wilde Parsenep, or Parsly, the stemme big, and a foote or somewhat more in heigth, yelding on the toppe a white floure, in the moneth of July, after that the Sæd like to the Orache, and a big roote, out of which many round heads or kernels grow.

The roote ought to be digged vp in the ende of harueft, which endureth for ten yeares.

The Filipendula commeth well vp in any earth, yet doeth the hearbe more ioy, being sowen or set in a stony or grauelly ground: the Sædes require to be committed to the earth in the moneth of April, and to be like ordered, after the shooting vp in the wæding and watering as afore taught of the other hearbes.

The Phisicke commodities of the hearbe Filipendula.

THe Filipendula of qualitie is hote and dry in the third degree, which his vehement bitternesse, sufficiently declareth.

The seed, leaues, and stemme of the Filipendula, drunke in wine and hony boyled togither, send downe the after burden, and further the birth of the childe.

The roote of the Filipendula brought to pouder, and drunke in wine, not only helpeth the kinges euill and strangury, but the stone, paine of the kidneys, and ache of the hips.

The pouder of this roote taken in wine, remoueth the swelling and coldnesse of stomacke, helpeth the hardnesse of fetching breath, and such short winded, yea all sicknesses which proceed of a colde cause.

The meale of this roote mixed with meat and giuen to eate, recouereth the falling sicknesse, by sundry daies vsing.

Against the hardnesse of fetching breath, take this pouder, & Gentian in like waight, and vse the same in meat, for this without doubt auaileth in short time.

The commended vertues of the distilled water of Filipendula.

THe chosen time for the distilling of it is, that the whole hearbe with the roote be finely shred togither and distilled in the end of May.

The distilled water of Filipendula, drunke vnto the quantitie of three ounces at a time, both morning and eueuing, recouereth the plague.

The said water drunke vnto the quantitie of foure or six ounces at a time, auaileth against poison, if a man by hap hath either eaten or drunke poyson.

The distilled water drunke vnto the quantitie of foure ounces at a time, both morning and euening, dissolueth and cureth the stone of the kidneys, and bladder.

FINIS.

¶ A neceſſarie Table to the ſeconde part of this booke, breefly ſhewing the Phyſicall operations of euery hearbe and plant therein contained, with the vertues of their diſtilled waters.

A

ANgelica cureth poyſons. cleareth blood, and preſerueth the body against the plague. fol. 162.

Angelica auaileth againſt the peſtilent aire, it recouereth all inward griefs, it helpeth ruptures, it amendeth the dimnes of the ſight, the bit of a dog, the heat of the feuer, deepe wounds, reneweth fleſh.&c. fol.163

Angelica aſſwageth the ache of the hips and the Goute, it cureth new and old vlcers. fol. 163.

Artochoke reformeth the ſauour of the mouth. fol. 53.

Artochoke cauſeth vrine and veneriall act. fol 53.

Artochoke amendeth the hardeneſſe of making water and the ranke ſauour of the Arme pits. fol. 53.

Artochoke ſtrengthneth the ſtomacke, & helpeth the priuy places, that men children may be conceiued.

Arage or Orage helpeth the ſtopping of the liuer, it ceaſeth the ſhedding of the gall or yelow Iaundiſe, it caſteth vp choller, ſoftneth the belly, healeth impoſtumes, ſwellings, ſwimmings, drawing of the wind ſhort, expelleth worms, prouoketh vomiting, helpeth a hot liuer, it looſeth the belly, & deliuereth the paine of the bladder, helpeth the ague, profiteth againſt ſpitting of bloud: it helpeth the matrice, draweth a thorne or naile out of the skinne: it looſeth rough nailes from the fingers, it helpeth the hote goute in the feete, it ſoftneth the belly being hardned by heat, and remoueth ſwellings. fol.18.19.

B

BEete looſeth the bellie, prouoketh vrine, purgeth the body of euill humors: it helpeth the ſmelling, the paine of the eates, and of the gums, it procureth haire to grow, and killeth lice, nittes, and dandrie: it healeth whelkes, bliſters of ſcalding and burning, gripinges of the bellie, ſtayeth a looſe bellie, driueth awaye the wormes of the bellie, helpeth the obſtructions or ſtoppings of the Liuer, the corrupted ſplene and the ſhingles. fol.14.15.

The diſcommodities of the Beete: it grypeth and biteth the ſtomack, and encreaſeth euill humors. fol 15.

Beete ſoftneth the bellie, cureth the biting of a Scorpion, the beating paine of the temples: it profiteth the Oyle on the milt, it reſtraineth the tearms. fol. 17.

Borage procureth gladſomneſſe, it helpeth the giddineſſe and ſwimming of the head, the trembling and beating of the heart, it encreaſeth memorie, and remoueth melancholie, and the kings euil, it doth onely comfort.

Bugloſſe preuaileth for the roughneſſe of the throat and cough, it procureth gladſomnes, it purgeth red choller, it expelleth the noyſome humours of the lungs, it remoueth the ſwelling of the feete: it preſerueth a good memory, it comforteth the heart, & engendreth good bloud. fol.28.29.

Bucks horne helpeth the griefes of the ioyntes, it bindeth, it putteth away the feuer. fol.77.

Betony ſtayeth belching and rawneſſe

of the stomacke. fol. 165.
Bitonie profiteth the diseases of the matrice, and all inward griefs. fol. 165.
Bitonie purgeth all poison, it profiteth frensie persons, falling sicknes, palsy, ache of the hips: it helpeth digestion, stayeth vomiting: it expelleth the ague, &c. fol. 165.
Bitonie fasteneth broken bones, dissolueth clotted bloud. fo 168
Bitonie stayeth the spitting of bloud: it helpeth the eyes bruised, and the paine of them: it helpeth the pain of the eares: it causeth cleerenesse of sight, remoueth tooth-ach, the quotidian, tertian, quartain ague, the griefe of the bladder, &c. fol. 168.
Bitonie asswageth the paine of the gout, &c. fol. 169.
Blessed thistle causeth vrine, helpeth the megrim, restoreth memorie and hearing, helpeth the diseases of the lungs, purgeth fleume of the stomack and bloud, helpeth consumption of the lungs, gripings, prouoketh sweat, breaketh the stone, and helpeth the monthly Termes. It comforteth the braine and sight, purgeth the bloud in the eyes, stoppeth the bleeding at the nose, purgeth the Vuula and ceaseth the spitting of fleume. fol. 168.
Blessed Thistle helpeth a weake stomacke, procureth appetite, abateth heate, consumeth euill bloud, prouoketh sweate, strengthneth the palsie members, recouereth the lungs exulcerated: it profiteth against the dropsie, helpeth the plague, impostumes, cankers and falling sicknes, it is a present remedie against the plague, the feuers of the stomacke, and the quartaine. it cureth greene woundes, pushes, swellinges of the plague, any burning, the chollicke, scabbes, a stinking breath: it helpeth womens priuities: it helpeth stitches, pleurisies, and infantes incombred with the falling sicknesse. fol. 150.
Blessed Thistle expelleth poison with two examples. fol. 160.

C

Colewort helpeth the hardnesse of making water, the canker sores, the vlcers in the pappes of women, aches in the ioynts, hardnesse of heating. fol 9.
Colewortes procureth the monethly course of women, it cureth the sorenesse of eyes: it profiteth against the eating of venemous mushromes: it maketh children to goespeedilier alone, cutteth the disease of the Splene and Iaundise: it cleanseth the scurfe and leaprie: it amendeth the voice and griefe of arteries: it cureth the bite of a dogge, it helpeth the Reume and falling of the vuula: it helpeth the bit of a Serpent or Adder: it cureth the goute, ioynt sicknes, old vlcers, purgeth the head, draweth the termes or reddes downe, and qualifieth inflammations. fol. 10.
Colewortes asswageth great swellings: it breaketh botches, staieth the shedding of haire, the disease of the splene: it cureth eating vlcers, canker sores, griefes of the flancks or sides, head-ach, a drie cough: it drieth a moist belly. fol. 11.
Colewortes bringeth these discommodities: it hardeneth the bellie, it harmeth the fleumaticke, and women hauing the redde course on them. fol. 11.
Cheruill prouoketh vrine, and sendeth down the terms in women: it looseth fleume: it putteth away gripinges of the belly, it engendreth winde: it killeth wormes in the belly: it healeth a canker: it ceaseth ach in the hips: it recouereth the dandry of the head: it healeth running sore[illegible] the

the bit of a madde dogge. it breaketh the stone of the bladder, and prouoketh vrine, it dissolueth the bloud gathered into knobs. fol.72.73.

Cheruil healeth impostumes behinde the eares. fol 73.

Cresses dryeth superfluous humours, it expelleth the dead youngling; it caseth the cough and looseth the brest: it auaileth against the palsie of the tongue. fol 73.

Cresses are not to be vsed alone. fol. 73.

Cresses restraine the distillations of the head, clense the braine and paine of the head, helpe against the palsey, prouoke neesing, and amend the lythargie and sleeping out of measure: dryeth the vuula, helpeth infections of the head, as knobs and dandrie: stayeth the going out of the fundament, expelleth the round and flat wormes in the bodie, these help the griefes of the brest, the ache of hips, and griefe of the loines, purchase a readier vnderstanding, and wit, remoue the chollick proceeding of a cold cause, helpe the strangurie, remoueth the paine of the teeth, and dooth asswage the swelling of the milt. fol.73.74.

Carots amend a cold reume, the paine of the stomacke, stopping of vrine, and chollicke, a dry cough, the hard fetchind of breath, the fluxe of the head, remoue wind, heat the stomack, helpe the stopping of the liuer, the vexing of the belly. fol.128.

Ciccorie cureth scabbed places, causeth a faire skin, recouereth the stopping of the liuer, it purgeth the matrice: it helpeth the liuer, the vexing paine of vrine, the kings euil, the plague, burning agues, pestilent pushes, the gout proceeding of heat, and cureth the shingles. fol. 56 57.

Celondine, the iuyce of the hearb cleareth the eyes, remoueth the Pinne and webbe, being mixed with salte Armoniacke. The hearbe remoueth the dimnesse of sight, the iuyce clenseth the Leaprie, the roote drawveth away the laundise, and helpeth the tooth-ache, and healeth Tetters or shingles: the hearbe remoueth the chollicke passion, the pouder of the roote clenseth and healeth vlcers, healeth the Canker of the mouth, bones or sinewes being annointed with the same, boiled in vineger with the pouder of Roses. fol 78.

Celondine boiled in Rose water, and a quantitie of Triackle added to the same, is a most effectuous remedie against the plague. fol.178.

Filipendula is of qualitie hote and dry in the third degree. fol.180.

The leaues and stemme of the Filipendula drunke in wine and hony mingled together, helpe the after burthen, and furthereth the birth of the child: the roote brought to pouder, helpeth the kings euill and strangurie, the stone, paine of the kidneyes, and ache of the hippes Taken in wine, it remooueth the swelling and coldnesse of the stomacke, hardnesse of fetching breath, and all sicknesses proceeding of colde causes. fol. 179.

The water of Filipendula beeing drunke Morning and Euening, vnto the quantitie of three ounces at a time, recouereth the plague. The same also being drunke foure ounces at a time, is good against poyson, and also dissolueth and cureth the stone of the kidneyes and bladder. fol. 180.

E

ENdiue preuaileth against the stopping of the liuer and milt, against the simple & double tertian, against the heat of the liuer, against burning impo-

impostumes, it draweth hot pushes, it cureth the Cardiacke passion, it stayeth the flix, it helpeth the kings euil the shingles, hote impostumes and swellings, asswageth headach, the spitting of bloud, the excesse of sperme. fol. 57.58.

Elecampane amendeth the cough, the ache of the hippes, expelleth grosse humors, ceaseth the hard fetching of breath, it procureth vrine. &c. fo 172

Elecampane is profitable against poyson, against the pestilent ayre and plague, &c. fol. 173.

Elecampane recouereth strength and helpeth the strangurie. fol. 174.

G

GArlike beateth the bodie, extenuateth grosse humours, it expelleth wormes, cureth the bit of a Snake, taketh away blacke and blew spots, fol. 100.

Garlike harmeth the Cholericke person.

Garlike putteth away inward swellinges, openeth impostumes, killeth lice and nits of the heade, moueth vrine, helpeth toothach proceding of a cold cause, stayeth the shedding of haire, cureth vlcers, remoueth lepry, procureth a cleare voice, and remoueth an old cough, correcteth the stomack, cooled dryeth vp the moisture of the stomacke, it is a preparation against the bit of a serpent, relieueth the dulnesse of sight, healeth tetters & whelks, it resisteth poyson, remoueth vrine, procureth Terms, draweth downe the after burden, cureth the bit of a mad dog, helpeth the digestion of the stomacke, the kinges euil, frensie persons, dropsie, it staieth the fluxe, an old cough proceeding of a cold cause, it helpeth woormes in children, expelleth the broode wormes in bodies, it cureth the bitte of venemous things the swellinges of the bladder, healeth vlcers of the lungs, dropsie being of a cold cause; it helpeth the griefes of the lungs & dificultie of vrine, headache, toothache proceeding of a colde cause, itche, the paine of going often to the stoole, expelleth a quartaine, cureth the pippes of hennes, it helpeth the stone. fol. 100.101.102.103.

Garlike profiteth against contagious ayres.

Gourd comforteth the stomack, loseth the bellie, helpeth the heate of the eares profiteth leane men, purgeth gently, helpeth the corns of the toes, fastenetth loose teeth, and helpeth the toothache, the inflammations of the liuer and bladder, impostumes, prouoketh vrine, helpeth all agues, asswageth the heat of the liuer, the inflammations of Infantes heades, the burning gout, the inflammations of the eyes, asswageth rumors, vlcers on the priuie places, looseth the bellie, cooleth burning feuers, helpeth the shingles. fol. 148. & 149.

L

LEeke cureth the bit of a venemous beast, helpeth the difficulties of making water, stayeth the spitting of bloud, dulleth the sight of the eyes, offendeth the stomacke. fol. 86

Leeke iuice sodden draweth downe the Termes, procureth vrine, obtaineth a superfluous heate, stayeth the bleeding of the nose, causeth vomiting, and putteth away drunkennes being eaten raw. fol. 86.

Leeke amendeth an old cough & the vlcers of the lunges, healeth pushes, the griefe of the eares and the toothache: it purgeth vlcers, remoueth the bloude clotted in brused members, stayeth the fluxe of bloud after birth, ceaseth the bleeding of the nose, profiteth against paines of the hippes, coue-

macke, ceaseth an old cough, helpeth the dropsie, staieth the flixe of the belly, and helpeth a hoarse voice. fol. 87.

Nero accustomed to eate an vnset leeke with oile for his sounding voice fo. 87

Leeke helpeth the paine of the head, it preuaileth against the exulcerations of womens priuie places, looseth the difficultnesse of making of water, aydeth the deliuerie of the childe, for the spitting of bloud and staying the bleeding of the nose is very profitable, cleanseth the wounds, helpeth the ache of the hips, recouereth the wasting of the lungs. fol. 87. 88.

Lettuce procureth sleepe, causeth good bloud, helpeth digestion, looseth the belly, causeth plentifulnesse of milke in the breastes, sharpneth the sight, cooleth impostumes, helpeth the dropsie, cureth the shedding of sperme, procureth sleepe being laide vnder the couerlet, and profiteth cholericke persons. fo. 63

Lettuce is noisome vnto married men: it dulleth the sight of the eies, it abateth the veneriall act, it harmeth the fleumaticke: the ouermuch eating of Lettuce is as perillous as Hemlocke fol. 64.

Lettuce helpeth the Tertian ague, it looseth the belly, it represseth drunkennesse. fol. 64.

Lettuce procureth sleepe. fo. 65.

Louage helpeth digestion, expelleth superfluous humours, it ceasseth inward griefs, it expelleth poison, causeth vrine, &c. fo. 170.

Louage expelleth the stone of the kidnies and bladder, &c. fo 171.

M

MArigold helpeth the after burden of a woman, stayeth the fluxe of pissing of bloud, it killeth the worms, it healeth pushes, & stoppinges, and griefes of the liuer, comforteth the stomacke, and procureth appetite to meat, heateth a cold breast, assuageth the paine of the teeth, it recouereth the palsie, and fit of the plague: is a preparatiue against the plague, it helpeth the quartaine, it helpeth the mile or colde stomacke. fo. 32. 33.

Mintes vncurdeth milke. fo 42.

Mintes staieth the belching of the stomacke and vomiting, it profiteth against the long wormes in the body, it helpeth the swolne priuities, assuageth the fluxe of the bellie, and scouring with bloud, it stayeth the reddes in women. it healeth vlcers on the infants heades, quickneth the spirites, bringeth appetite, amendeth the default of the nosthrils, retaineth the fluxes of bloud, softneth the pappes, and defendeth them from mattering, it looseth the belly, procureth a seemely colour, profiteth the spitting out of bloud, assuageth the head-ache, and the noyse in the eares, it remooueth the dimnesse of sight, it amendeth the strong sauour of the mouth, it helpeth the teeth, and purgeth the gums, and healeth the blistering of the tongue, it comforteth in colde sicknesses, it stayeth the will to vomit, and helpeth the shingles, it dissolueth and cureth impostumes, and helpeth the spottes in the eies. fol 43

Mallowes or Holihock remoue a hotte cough, recouereth the lunges blistered, and is a singuler remedie against the consumption of the lungs, healeth the putrified sores of the throat and mouth, looseth the belly, and helpeth the hoarsenesse of the voyce, it ripeneth anie impostume and softeneth it. fol. 44.

Mustard seede heateth and ripeneth, it breaketh impostumes without pain, it cureth the biting of a venemous beast, it helpeth the palsie of the tongue, and auaileth against all palsies, it helpeth the dropsie, the bli-

ſtering of the mouth, the ſwelling of the throate, it procureth a good memorie, it helpeth a colde gout, ſciaticke, and feebleneſſe of ſinewes, it remooueth the dimneſſe of ſight, and putteth away the ſpots and webbe in the eies, it cauſeth thirſt, and prouoketh the veneriall act, fol. 79

Muſtard ſeede preuenteth the falling ſickeneſſe, it purgeth the braine, it cleanſeth the braine from humours, it amendeth the fall of the vuula, and vlcers of the throate, it draweth downe fleume from the head, it remooueth the ſwelling of the lawes, it helpeth the ſuffocation of the matrice, it ceaſſeth the ache of the teeth comming of colde, it breaketh the ſtone in the bladder, and procureth the Termes, it cauſeth a cleer voice fol 79, 80

N

NAuewes nouriſhe much profit the ſtomacke, encreaſe sperme in man, preuaile againſt poiſon. Folio. 133

O

ONions maintaine health, cure vlcers, remooue ſpottes in the bodie, profite the eares running, helpe ſwellinges in the throate, and the cough, remooue the griefe of the ſtomacke, open pilles, cleare the eies, remooue the pin and web, amend the bloodſhotten eies, recouer the haires ſhed away, the biting of a madde dogge, &c. fo. 93.94

Onions eaten rawe harme the members. fo. 93

Onions harme the Chollericke, and profiteth the fleumaticke perſon, folio. 94

Onions ſtay the dropping of the eyes, helpe vlcers of the priuities, paine and noiſe of the eares, Diſenteria, griefe of the loynes, the water betweene the fleſh and the skinne, cure ſlambering, and impoſtumes, paine of the breaſt, ſpitting of groſſe humours, purgeth the ſtomacke, cureth wartes. fol. 94

Onions often vſed, engender euill humours, procure thirſt, ſwellinges, windineſſe, head-ache, cauſe to become fooliſh, they nouriſh nothing. Folio. 94

Onions twice ſodden nouriſh Folio. 65

Onions eaten rawe cutte groſſe humoures aſunder, open the vaynes, prouoketh Termes and vaine, encreaſeth apetite purge the heade, remooue the white ſpottes on the face, heale kibes, remooue the redde and wanne ſpottes of the face, healeth ſcabbes, aſſwageth fluxes and gripinges in childbed, heale impoſtumes ſpeedely. fol. 95

P

PImpernell is eſpecially applied for poyſon, it drueth venemous blood from the heart, it ceaſeth the head-ache, it healeth a greene wounde, vlcers and other woundes, by experiment tried vppon a cocke: it mooueth ſweat, expelleth poyſon, remoueth the diſeate of the hippes, the cough, and purgeth the breaſt, and ſtone of the kidneies and bladder, and remooueth the ſtrangurie: the gripinges of the bowels, the ſtopping of the liuer and milte, it putteth away any feuer: an experiment againſt the Phiſicke of the Lunges fol. 26

Parſely dooth incarnate Vlcers and Carbunckles, it doth diſſolue the impoſtumes of the pappes, it amendeth the ſtopping of the Liuer: it prouoketh vrine, it ſtaieth looſeneſſe of the belly, ſtrengthneth looſe parts and helpeth the ſtone, it healeth the ſhingles, the hardly making of water

ter, and softneth the hardnesse of the paps: It healeth the kidneies, remooueth vlcers out of the mouth, and Iaundise, and helpeth womens monthly course: it is delectable to the stomacke, it expelleth winde in the bodie, remooueth scabbes, and maketh a faire skinne: it helpeth the swelling of the stomacke, & dropsie, it clenseth the liuer and Leapry, and remooueth the paine of the Loins and bladder, it preuaileth against a feuer, it procureth a sound braine and perfect memorie, and purgeth the blood, asswageth the strangurie, and helpeth the biting of a madde dog. fol 37.38

Parseley Seedes are the principall causes, the Roores the next, the leaues as third in working. folio. 39

Purselaine asswageth hotte and Cholericke fluxes and helpeth the burning feuer, helpeth the teeth beeing on edge, helpeth the shingles, hindereth veneriall act, and abateth sleepe, it expelleth the woormes in the bellie, it stayeth the fluxe Discenteria, ceasseth the tooth-ache, it helpeth the stomacke swollen, it cooleth inward heate, amendeth the vlcers on the priuities, it healeth an hotte impostume, it remooueth the vlcers of the head.

Purselane helpeth swolne eyes, and spitting of bloud, it remooueth the burning feuer, it qualifieth the heate of the stomacke, it stayeth womens monthly course, it stayeth the bleeding at the nose, and the head ache, it extinguisheth the heat of the eyes, it stayeth Disenteria, it strengtheneth both the kidneies and bladder, it helpeth burning Feuers, it killeth the woormes in the belly, and stayeth the spitting of bloude, it helpeth excoriation in womens bowels, and the rawnesse of priuie places: it helpeth the head-ache, it mittigateth a furious heate, it helpeth the nauels of infants, it stayeth the loose teeth in the head, it asswageth the kernels and vlcers in the mouth, it mittigateth the desire of often drinking, it remooueth wartes, it asswageth the goute, and inflammation of the paps, the fall of the vnula. &c. fo.68.69

Parsenep and Carots mooueth veneriall acte, procureth vrine, and asswageth the Chollericke, sendeth down the Termes in women, it profiteth the Melancholicke, encreaseth good blood, helpeth the straightnesse of making water, amendeth stitches of the side or pleurises the bitte of a venemous beast. it amenbeth the eating of vlcers, the vvearing of this roore is profitable.

Poppy procureth sleepe, helpeth the Reume, cough, and lacke of sleepe. folio. 129

poppy recouereth a dry cough, consumption of the Lungs, Reume, and debilitie in sleeping, it drawveth heat out of an vlcer, helpeth a hotte liuer, strengtheneth the ioynts, remooueth the rage of the goute, profiteth against the ague. fol.130

pompions or Mellons, are easie of digestion, comfort the heart, asswageth vnnaturall heates in the stomacke, they take away sunne-burning and foule spottes. fol.154

pompions profite the fleumaticke and Cholericke person. fol.154.155

pompions which are round, loose the belly, and cause vrine. fol.154

Pompions asswage the running of the eyes. fol.155

Pompions mittigate the veneriall acte, clenseth the skinne, causeth vrine, purgeth the loynes, kidnies, and bladder, heale vlcers, and cause speedy boyling.

swelling in the throat. fol. 124

R

ROcket encreaseth the sperm, causeth veneriall act, causeth a giddinesse and paine in the head, encreaseth a strong heat, is hurtfull to the head, encreaseth milke in women and nourses, causeth vrine, softneth the belly, comforteth the stomacke, helpeth digestion, recouereth blacke scarres vnto whitenesse, amendeth pimples or pushes in the face, killeth nittes and wormes of the head, helpeth bruised bones, and bitings of venemous beastes, the iaundise, and hard swelling of the milt. &c. fol 69.70.

Rapes or Turnup sharpeneth the sight, yeeldeth nourishment, extinguisheth heate and drie blood, it stirreth veneriall act, cureth scabbes, helpeth digestion, hotte goutes and kibed heeles. fol. 116

Radish eaten before or after meat causeth winde, dulleth the braine, eyes and reason. fo. 122

Radish profiteth the fleumaticke, helpeth the stone, stopping of the vrine by grauell, procureth vomiting, stayeth belchinges, the kinges euill, the cough, profiteth against poison, and to the handling of serpents, it helpeth the noise of the eares, the stopping of the liuer, it auaileth against all sortes of poysons and diseases, it cureth strokes of whippes or bruses, it cleereth scarres and pimples in the face, it deliuereth the quartaine ague. fol. 23

Raddish profiteth against the stopping of the milte it deliuereth the water betweene the skinne, and swolne milt, it eateth out the canker of vlcers, amendeth the old cough and fleume, it procureth vomittinges, it causeth mushromes to digest, it helpeth gripings in women, procureth milke, sendeth downe the Termes and wormes in the bellie, assuageth the

S

SAffron amendeth the hard fetching of the breath, procureth a faire colour, comforteth the heart, causeth healthfull blood, remooueth poysons from the heart, causeth long breath, expelleth Infections, helpeth impostumes, in the breast, mooueth the veneriall act, and causeth vrine, helpeth head-ache, procureth the termes, remooueth the yellowe iaundise, it profiteth an vlcered breast, stomacke, liuer, lungs, kidneis and bladder, it helpeth the gout, impostumes, swellinges, the griefes of any sore, feeblenesse of the heart, palsie, the griefe of the eies, the distilling of eies, remooueth drunkennesse, and diseases of the eares fol. 110. 111

Sperage helpeth the palsie, kinges euill, strangurie, a hard milt, and stopping of the liuer, it recouereth the shedding of the gaule, it remoueth the swelling of the belly and cholick, it procureth vrine, and dissolueth the small stones in the bladder, it helpeth the griefes of the womens priuy place, it profiteth against the stinging of Bees, it helpeth the hardly making of water, the paine of the gummes, teeth, mouth, breast, and chine of the backe, it remooueth veneriall act, and looseth the belly: the dropping paine of the vrine, the difficultnesse of the same, the flixe Disenteria: It cleareth the kidneis, and stoppiug of the liuer. fol. 22.23

Spinage softneth the belly, moysteneth the bodie, remoueth the griefes of the breast and lunges, it profiteth in hotte causes, it nourisheth more then Araga, it assuageth the Choller, it helpeth the sorenesse of the throate, hoarse voice, the hardnesse of breath, the cough. &c. fol. 24

Sorrell procureth appetite to meate,

preserueth against the plague, it ripeneth sores, it asswageth the flixe Disenteria, the paine of the belly, & abortment of the stomacke, it helpeth the leapry and Ringwoormes, and rough nailes, the itch of the bodie, the paine of the eares and teeth. the kings euill, the head-ache, any sicknes comming of heat, Iaundise, the reds of women, all fluxes of the belly, the swelling of the milte, the burning of the feuer. fol,77

Strawberry leaues helpeth hotte impostumes. fol. 77.

The strawberry amendeth the hardnesse of the splene, the stone, healeth wounds and vlcers, procureth the termes, staieth the bloudie flixe Disenteria, and causeth vrine, it helpeth inflamations of the Liuer, and clenseth both the kidneis and bladder, it helpeth aches, and prouoketh vrine, it fasteneth the Teeth, and stayeth the reume: it is good for cholericke stomackes, it putteth away the impostumes of the throate, it remooueth the rednesse and pimples which happen on the face through the heate of the liuer, it asswageth the rednesse of the eies, the iaundise, fetching the wind short, & cooleth thirst. fo 78.79

Scalions or squill Onions, mooue veneriall act, cut the tough matter in the stomacke. 106

Squill Onion amendeth the dropsie, the fetching of wind hardly, the defaults of the liuer, the ague, exulcerations, purgeth fleumes, and the bellie, causeth vomiting. 107

Squill Onions amendeth the hard fetching of breath, an old cough, griefes both of liuer and lungs, expelleth woormes, melancholly, Apoplexie, falling sicknesse, the stone, purgeth the matrice, cureth the ache of the hipps, fasteneth the teeth, amendeth the sauour of the breath, helpeth the hearing, driueth away warts, chappes of the feete, running scabbes, the dandrie of the head, the bite of serpents, procureth haire to growe, amendeth the foule gummes, the sight of the eies, griefes of the sides, expelleth all diseases of the bodie: also it killeth mice, &c. fo.10

T

TIme remooueth ioynt sickenesse, purgeth Choller and humoure, it helpeth the passions of the bladder, the swelling of the belly, it remooueth the griefe of the hippes, loines, and sides: it amendeth the breast, and the inflammations of Hipochondria, or the flanckes, it helpeth melancholie, blearenes of the eies, and the paine of them: it asswageth the griefe of the colde gout, the stifnes of limmes, it asswageth the swellings of the Testicles, it purgeth the bowells: it helpeth the hard fetching of breath, and falling sicknesse, it breaketh the stone of the kidneis & bladder, it helpeth the stinging of a bee. fo.40.41

Blacke time is not to be vsed. fo.41

Time which hath a purple floure, is commended: all Time is mightily hotte. ibidem

Time healeth the bite of an Adder, or snake, it helpeth the spitting of blood, it staieth the Reume comming of a colde cause, it easeth the cough, and a cold stomacke, the head-ache, frensines, Letharge and often slumbering, it openeth the stoppings of the Liuer and milt, and mooueth vrine, it recouereth the bittes of venemous beasts, it helpeth the swelling in the throate, the cough, and purgeth the breast, it staieth bloodie vomitings, it heateth the stomacke, it remoueth winde in the bowels, it ceaseth the strangury, it mooueth vrine, and expelleth the stone. fol. 39

V

VAllerian prouoketh sweat, and vrine, amendeth stitches, killeth mice, mouetb the termes, preuaileth against the plague, helpeth the straightnesse of breath, the head-ache, fluxes, and Shingles, procureth clearenesse of sight, and healeth the pyles, fol, 164 165.

W

WAter of the hearbe Valerian distilled amendeth vlcers, olde sores, swellinges, piles, bones broken, rupltures: it cleareth the eyes, expelleth woormes: it profiteth against a pestilent aire, impostumes and ache of the hips, it prouoketh sweat &c. fol 165

Water of the rootes of Valerian distilled, remooueth poyson: the Quotidian ague and stitches. fol. 198

Water of white poppie distilled, cureth the red spots of the face, procureth white handes: it helpeth the head-ache proceeding of heat; it extinguisheth any heate. fol. 131

Water distilled out of Gourdes, looseth the belly, ceasseth thirst, the cough, helpeth the stones purgeth the kidneis and bladder, quallifieth burning feuers. fol. 150

Water of mellons, distilled, helpeth the stone, procureth vrine, clenseth the kidneis, cooleth the liuer, ceaseth thirst, breaketh the cough, expelleth heat and swellings. fol. 156

Water of the blessed Thistle distilled, putteth away head-ache, comforteth memorie, helpeth giddines, and all griefes of the eies, consumption of the bodie, breaketh the stone, cureth burnings. fol 160

Water of the leaues of Elecampane, expelleth the griefe of the stone, helpeth the person broken, comforteth the head, strēgthneth the stomacke, amendeth the hard fetching of breath, the cough, pleurisie, poyson, the stone, and Termes of women, causeth vrine, &c. fol. 172

Water distilled out of the roote of Elecampane healeth an inner rupture, asswageth the griefe of the stone, prouoketh vrine, it sendeth the dead yongling out of the belly, it asswageth the swellinges of the Testicles, it ceaseth the cough &c. fol. 176

Water of Strawberrie leaues distilled remooueth the kinges euill. it looseth the breast, purgeth the lunges, helpeth the cough, clenseth the leapry it mitigateth the heat in the eies, it ceaseth ouermuch sweating, it is healthfull for the stopping of the Liuer. fol. 82

Water of mustard-seedes distilled, amendeth vlcers of the gummes, it helpeth the consumption of members. it heateth the marrowe in the bones: this water profiteth against a colde disease in the ioynts. fol. 82

Water distilled out of Leekes remedieth the spitting of could blood: it profiteth a barren woman, it staieth the bleeding of the nose, it helpeth a costiue belly and ache of the hippes, purgeth the kidnies and bladder, procureth vrine, expelleth the stone, healeth woundes: it profiteth exulcerations and fracture of womens places. fol. 88. 89

Water distilled out of onions, recoueretb swellinges, caused by the bite of a madde dogge, asswageth head-ache and tooth-ache, causeth haires to growe, expelleth woormes. fol. 95.

Water distilled out of Garlike, helpeth the swellings in the throate: also the greene sickenesse and swelling of the spleene. fo. 104

Water distilled out of Rapes, helpeth gallinges, burnings, scaldinges, swellinges of the feete. fol. 117

Water distilled out of Radishe, hel-

peth digestion, the kings euil, wormes of the belly, clenseth the stomacke: it openneth all manner of stoppings, extenuateth the humours in the lunges, clenseth the breast, causeth a cleere voice fol. 125

Water of Radishe recouereth poysoning taken in meat or drinke, helpeth the Quartane, draweth downe Termes, and helpeth the stone: asswageth the stinging of the Bee, profiteth against the venome of a spider, helpeth the pricking in the side, cleareth the eyes and the face: it remooueth yellowe or blackish spots by heating: also the swelling of the throat and cleareth the kidneis, breaketh the stone, and causeth vrine, and expelleth the water betweene the skin fol. 125

Water distilled out of Parsneps, helpeth the palsie, mooueth the veneriall act, and encreaseeh the sperme, helpeth the painefulnes in making of water. 1.8

Water distilled out of the roote of Louage, helpeth an inner rupture, helpeth the stone, prouoketh the Terms in women, remooueth the swellinges of womens places, and ceaseth the cough, &c. fol. 171

water of Colewortes stayeth womens reddes, it profiteth the birth of a child, the dropping of the vrine: it staieth a loose belly, fol. 12

Water of the redde Colewortes softneth the belly, putteth away the giddines of the head, helpeth the Apoplexie, the Cramp, palsie, inflammations, swellinges, Vlcers within the bodie and without. fol. 12.13

Water of the white Beete, preuaileth against the stone, it ceasseth the vexing paine of ioynt aches. fol. 15

Water of Sorrell preuaileth against the plague: it remooueth all inward heats, ceasseth thirst, helpeth the liuer and milte: also remooueth the shingles, scaldings, or burning, the kinges euill: it cooleth the burning heat of agues. fol. 27

Water of pimpernell helpeth the stone of the kidnies and bladder, and purgeth the rains: it helpeth the plague, profiteth women whose matrice is colde, and sendeth downe the reds: it helpeth the shaking of the members: it expelleth griefe from the heart, and euill humours, and prouoketh vrine, it profiteth against poison, and causeth a white skin. fol. 27

Water distilled out of Borage, asswageth the griping, and swellings of the belly: it cureth Disenteria, and hardnesse of fetching breath: it comforteth the heart and braine, and rendereth a helpe to memorie and wit: it purgeth all bloud and frensinesse: it ceaseth the stinging of a Bee or Spider: it procureth cleerenes of sight: it remooueth the ringing and paine in the eares: it comforteth the heart, it helpeth the Reume, burning Feuers and iaundise, it cooleth the liuer: it helpeth the flixe Disenteria, the painfull fetching of breath, and decay of minde, the weake braine: it purgeth the blood, and pricking about the heart and breast: it clenseth the leaprie and scabbes, and staieth the stilling of the head, the head-ache, the burning of the eyes, the ringing of the eares. fol 30.31

Water of Marigoldes distilled, recouereth all defaultes of the eies, and procureth cleere eyes, and also putteth away the griefes of the head. fol. 33.

Water of parsley distilled, profiteth against the stone of the kidnies and loines: it purgeth the kidnies and bladder, and greatly prouoketh vrine, fol. 33

Water distilled of running Time, strengthneth the head, braine, and stomacke: it also procureth appetite

to meate, it remooueth the noise and rumbling of the belly, it softneth the hardnes of the stomack and moueth vrine, it comforteth the sight, and consumeth distillations of the head, it helpeth a quotidian ague, it amendeth a cooled Liuer and Milte, and healeth the bowels exulcerated, it openeth the stopping of nosthirls and eares, it restoreth hearing, helpeth giddines, staieth desire to vomit, and expelleth the gripings of the belly, it breaketh the stone, and moueth vrin, it cureth bruised members fol 40.

Water of Marigoldes or holihocke distilled cureth the breaking out of the mouth, as also the outward and inward heate, the Shingles, vlcers, and all swellinges, it cureth all inward heates of feuers, it cooleth all impostumes of the lungs and sides, it mitigateth the flux Disenteria, the hote swellings of womens places, the kidnies & bladder, it expelleth the stone, it procureth sleepe in a hot Feuer, & ceaseth thirst. fo. 44. 45

Water of Mints distilled strengthneth the stomacke and digesteth the meat receiued, it helpeth the stopping of the liuer and mylte, it openeth the wayes of the vrine, it procureth an appetite to meate, it stayeth belching and vomiting, it recouereth a stinking breath, and putrified gummes, it stayeth sounding and giddinesse, it purgeth the matrice, it dissolueth the milke courded in hard pappes, it healeth ruptures within, it restoreth the vuula fallen, it healeth the scabs of children, it helpeth wormes, and heateth a cold stomacke. fo. 45. 46.

Water of Cichory cooleth the heate of the stomacke, it preserueth from the plague, it cureth carbuncles, it stayeth the rising of the lungs, and stoppeth the flixe Disenteria: it openeth the stopping of the lyuer, it helpeth the swelling of the vuula and throat, helpeth wasted members, & the bite of venemous beasts, helpeth the vlcers in the eyes, and the dimnesse of sight, the pinne and web, &c. fol. 58.

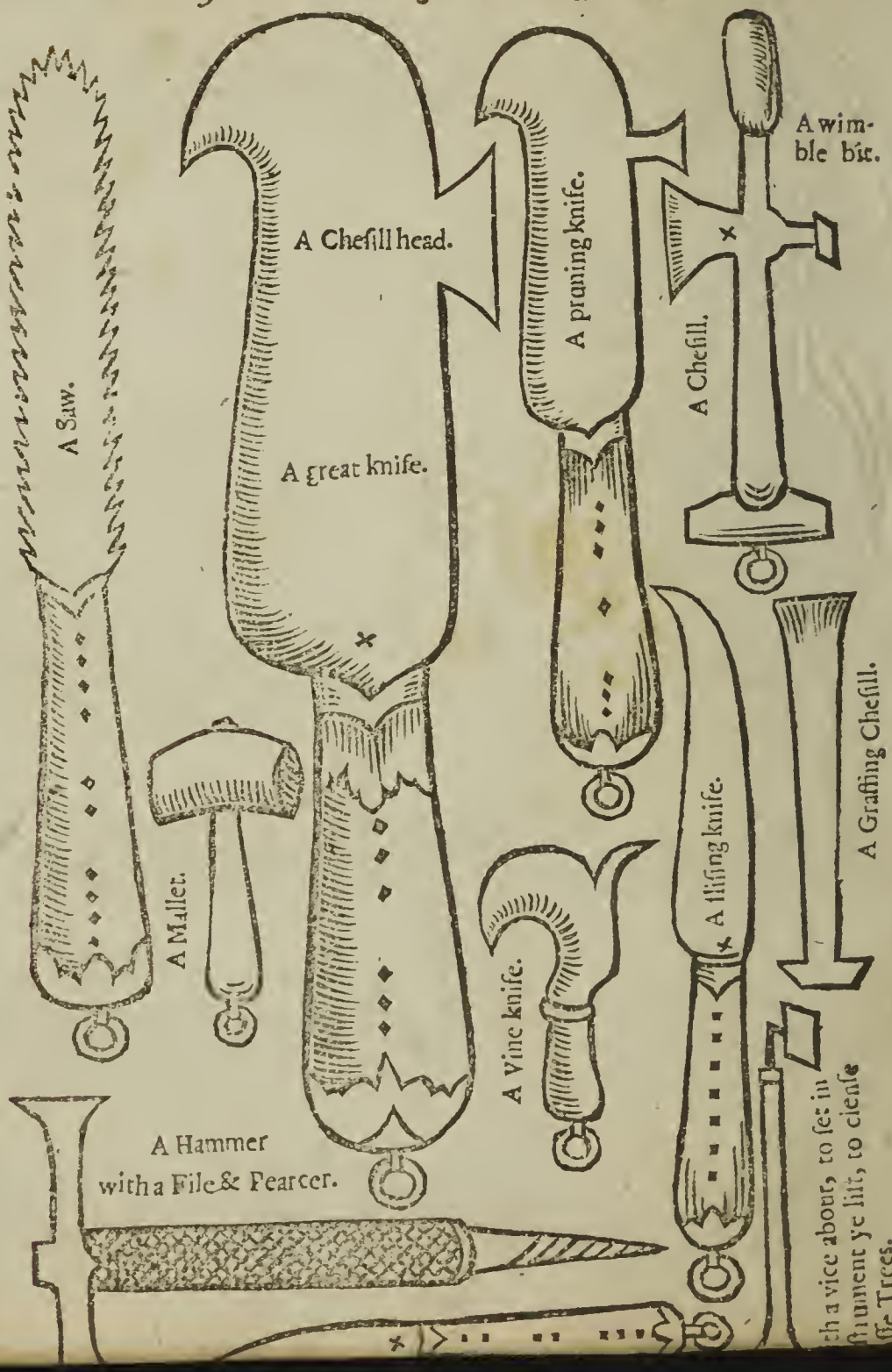
Water of Lettuce distilled profiteth the liuer, it cooleth the bloud inflamed, it staieth the flixe Disenteria, it amendeth trembling of members, and helpeth sleepe, it helpeth women lacking milke, it ceasseth a drie cough, it mollifieth the throat, cleanseth the breast and lungs, ceasseth thirst, tempereth heate of the stomacke, liuer & kidneies, it looseth the belly. fo. 65.

Water of Cheruill distilled, helpeth men bursten and hurt by grieuous fals, and resolueth the bloud clotted in lumps, it profiteth against the stone of the kidneis, it looseth the belly: it procureth a good stomacke, comforteth the heart, putteth away shaking of the feuer, is healthfull for the head, and comforteth the senses, it remooueth the paines of the lungs. fol. 75

Water distilled of Strawberries, amendeth an vnnaturall heat, ceasseth thirst proceeding of the liuer, or of choller, it cooleth the liuer, looseth the breast, refresheth the hart, purgeth the blood, helpeth the kings euill, preuaileth against the stone, loines and kdneis, it cureth blisters in the mouth, it procureth womens Termes, helpeth a broken legge, healeth all foule legs, it cureth filthy wounds, and assuageth swellings of the face, helpeth the lepry, purgeth blood, remooueth spots out of the eyes, & comforteth nature, expelleth poisons, assuageth burning humours, and comforteth conception, staieth watering in the eies, & cooleth heat in them, restoreth a dim sight, it cureth pimples in the face fo. 81. 82.

Water of Betonie distilled, putteth away dropsie, iaundise & ague, cureth diseases of the kidneys & milt. fo. 1[illegible].

Instruments for Graffing.



THE

Country-Mans

NEW ART OF

PLANTING

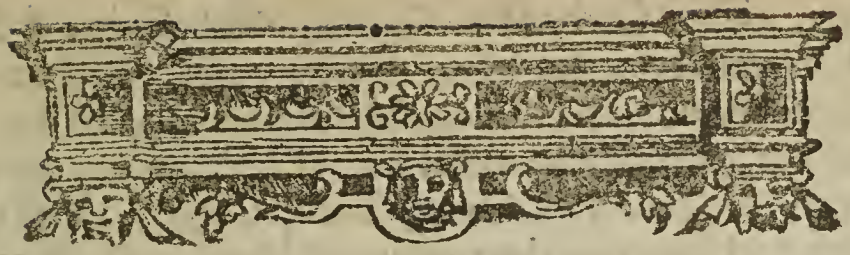
AND

GRAFFING:

Directing the beſt way to make any ground good for a Rich Orchard: With the manner how to Plant and Graffe all ſorts of Trees, to Set and Sow Curnels; As alſo the Remedies and Medicines concerning the ſame; With divers other New Experiments:

Practiſed by LEONARD MASCALL.

Publiſhed by Authority.



Instructions for the PLANTER *and* GRAFFER.

ALwaies before ye do intend to Plant or Graffe, it ſhall be meet to have good experience in things meet for this Art, as in knowing the Natures of all Trees and Fruits, and the differences of Climates, which be contrary in every Land: alſo to underſtand the Eaſt and Weſt winds, with aſpects and Stars, to the end ye may begin nothing that the Wind or Raine may oppreſſe, that your labour be not loſt, and to marke alſo and conſider the diſpoſition of the Elements that preſent yeare, for all years be not of like opperation, nor yet after one ſort: the Summer and Winter do not bare one face on the Earth, nor the Spring time alwaies Raine, or Autumne alwaies moiſt: of this none have underſtanding, without a good and lively marking ſpirit, few or none (without learing) may diſcerne of the varieties and qualities of the earth, and what it doth aske or refuſe. Therefore it ſhall be good to have underſtanding of the ground where ye doe

 plant,

plant, either Orchard or Garden with fruit: first it behoveth to make a sure defence, to the end that not onely rude persons and Children may be kept out, but all kind of hurtfull Cattel, indamaging your Plants or Trees, as Oxen, Kine, Calves, Horses, Hogs, and Sheep, as the rubbing of Sheep doth greatly burne the Sap, and often doth kill young Trees and Plants; and were they are broken, or bruised with Cattell, it is doubtfull to grow after. It shall be good also to Set, Plant, or Graffe Trees all of like nature, and strength together, that the great and high Trees, may not overcome the low and weak, for when they be not of like height, they grow nor ripe not your fruit so well at one time, but the one before the other: That earth which is good for Vines, is good also for other fruit.

Ye must digge your holes a yeere before ye plant, that the earth may be the better seasoned, mortified, and wax tender, both by Raine in Winter, and Heat in Sommer, that thereby your Plants may take root the sooner, if ye wil make your holes and plant both in a year, at the least, ye ought to make your holes two months before ye plant, and as soone as they be made, then it shall be good to burn straw, or such like therein, to make your ground warme: the further ye make them asunder, the better your Trees shall beare, make your holes like unto a Furnace, that is, more straight in the mouth then beneath, whereby the roots may have the more roome, and by straightnesse of the mouth, the lesse Raine or cold shall enter thereby in Winter, and also lesse heat to the root in Sommer.

Looke

Looke alſo that the earth ye put to the roots, be neither wet, nor laid in water: they doe commonly leave a good ſpace betwixt every Tree, for the hanging boughes, being nigh together, ye cannot ſet roots, nor ſow nothing ſo well under your trees, nor they will not bear frute ſo well: Some loweth fortie foot, ſome thirtie foot, ſome thirtie between every Tree: Your plants ought to be greater then the handle of a ſhovell, and the leſſer the better: See they be ſtraight, without knots, or knobs, having a long ſtraight graine of barke, which ſhall the ſooner be apt to take Graffes, and when ye ſet branches or boughes of old Trees, chooſe the youngeſt and ſtarighteſt, branch thereof, and thoſe Trees which have borne yearly good fruit before, take of thoſe that grow on the Sunny ſide, ſooner then thoſe that grow in the covert or ſhadow, and when ye take up or alter your plants, ye ſhall note to what winds your plant is ſubject, and ſo let them be ſet againe, but thoſe which have grown in drie grounds, let them be ſet in moiſt ground: Your plants ought to be cut off three foot long. If ye will ſet two or three plants together in a hole, ye muſt take heed the roots touch not one another, for then the one will periſh and rot the other, or die by Wormes or other Vermin, and when you have placed your plants, in the earth, it ſhall be good to ſtrike down to the bottome of every hole, two ſhort ſtakes as great as your arme, on either ſide your hole, one: and let them appear but a little above the earth, that ye may (thereby in Sommer) give water unto the roots if need be. Your young plants, and rooted Trees are commonly ſet in Au-

tumne. from the firſt unto the fifteenth of October, yet ſome are of opinion better after *Alhollontide* unto *Chriſtmas*, then in the Spring, becauſe the earth will die too ſoone after; and alſo to ſet Plants without root after *Michaelmas*, that they may be the better mollified and gather root againſt the Spring, whereof ye ſhall find hereafter more at large. Thus much have I thought meet to declare unto the Planters and Graffers, whereby they may the better avoid the occaſion and danger of Planting and Graffing, which may come often times through ignorance.

The

The Table of all the principall things contained in this Booke, which ye ſhall hereafter finde by number and Leafe.

Of the ſeven Chapters following.

CHAP. I.

This Chapter treateth of the ſetting of Curnels, of Apple trees, Plum trees, Peare trees and Service trees

How to chooſe your Pepins at the firſt preſſing. Page 1
How to uſe the earth to ſow your Pepins on 2
How to ſee unto Poultry for marring your beds, and how to weed or cleanſe your beds of quarters. 2
How to pluck up the wilde Cions. 3

CHAP. II.

This Chapter treateteth how to ſet your wilde trees come of Pepins, when they be firſt plucked up.

How to dung your wilde trees come of Pepins. page 3.
How to cut the principall roots in ſetting againe, 3
How to ſet your trees in ranke being young. 4
How to make a ſpace from one ranke to another, 4
How to water your plants being dry, 4
How in removing your trees, to plant them againe, 5
The beſt time for to remove, 5
Of negligence and forgetfulneſſe, 5
Not ſo good to graffe the ſervice tree, as to ſet him, 5
Some trees without graffing have good fruit, and other ſome being graffed, have but evill fruit, 6
For to augment and multiply your trees, 6
The manner to change the fruit of the Pepin tree. 6
How to make good Cider. 6

CHAP. III.

This Chapter treateth of the ſetting of trees which come of Nuts.

How to ſet trees that do come of Nuts, and the time to plant or ſet them. 7
For to ſet them in the ſpring time. 8
Of the dung and deep digging thereof 8
Of Nuts and ſtones like the trees they come of. 8
Of planting the ſaid Nuts. 8
Why fruit ſhall not have ſo good ſavour. 8
To ſet the Pine tree. 9
To ſet Cherry trees, 9
Trees of Baſtard and wilde Nuts. 9
To ſet Filbards and Haſell wands. 9
To ſet Damſons and Plum trees 9
To graffe Cions of Plums, on the like, 10
To ſet all ſorts of Cherry trees. 10
How to order Plum trees, and Cherry-trees, 10
How to graffe Plum trees, and Cherry-trees. 10
How to prune or cut trees. 10
How to cleanſe & dreſs the roots of trees. 11
To keepe the ſtock, being greater then the graffes. 11
The remedy when a bough is broken. 11
How to enlarge the hole about the roots, 12
To ſet ſmall ſtaves to ſtay your Cions, 12
What tree to prune. 13
Why the ſowre Cherry dureth not ſo long as the great helme Chery. 13
To graffe one great Cherry with an other. 13
Of deep ſetting or ſhallow. 13

CHAP. IV.

This Chapter sheweth how to set other trees, of great Cions pricks in the earth without roots, with the pruning of lesser Cions.

TRees taking root prickt of branches. 14
How to set them. 14
How to binde them that be weake. 14
How to dig the earth to set them in. 14
Of Cions without roots. 15
To plant the Fig tree 15
How to set Quinces 15
The way to set Mulbery trees. 15
The time to cut Cions. 16
To set bush trees, as Gooseberies, and small Reisons. 16

CHAP. V.

This Chapter treateth of foure manner of Graffings.

OF divers wayes of graffing. 16
The first way of graffing all sorts of trees. 16
To graffe Apple trees, Peare trees, Quince trees, and Medlar trees. 16
The graffing of great Cheries. 17
To graffe Medlars on other Medlars. 17
Of divers kind of graffes on one tree. 17
The graffing of the Fig tree. 17
Of graffing the great Abricots, 18
Of graffing of the Service tree. 18
The setting of the Service tree. 18
Of trees hard to graffe in the shield. 18
How to see to trees charged with fruit, 18
Of trees for to choose your Cions on. 18
The Cions on the East part are best. 19
To choose your tree for graffes. 19
To keepe graffes a long time. 19
To keepe graffes ere they bud. 19
How you ought to begin to graffe. 19
When is good graffing the wild stocks, 19
To marke if the tree be forward or not. 20
When ye graffe, what to be furnished withall. 20
Of graffes not prospering the first year. 20
For to graffe well and sure, 20
How to trim your graffes. 20
How to cut graffes for Cherries and Plums. 21
A note of your incision. 21
For to take heed in graffing, ye raise not the barke. 21
How to cut your stock. 21
If your wild stock be great and slender. 21
Trees as great as a mans arme. 22
Of great trees as big as ones legge. 22
The graffs being pinched in the stocks. 22
How you ought to cleave your stocks, 22
To graffe the branches of great trees, 22
How to cut great old branches. 22
How to bind your graffs against winds. 23
To set many graffes in one cleft. 23
To saw your stock before ye cleave him. 23
If the stock cleave too much, or the barke open, 23
How graffes never lightly take. 23
How to set graffes right in the stock, 23
Of setting in of the graffes. 24
A note of the same. 24
How to draw forth the wedge, 24
How to cover your clifts on the head, 24
How ye ought to see well to the binding of your graffes, 24
How you ought to temper your Clay, 25
How to bush your graffe heads. 25
The second way to graffe high branches. 25
The third manner of graffing, is betwixt the barke and the tree. 26
How to dreisse the head, to placce your graffes betwixt the bark and the tree. 26
How to cover the head of your stock, 26
The manner of graffing in the shield. 27
To graffe in Summer so long as the trees be leaved, 27
The big Cions are best to graffe. 27
How to take off the shield, 27
How to know if your scutchion or shield be good or bad. 28
How to graffe on young trees, 28
How to set or place your shield, 28
Note also, 28
How to raise up the barke, to set your shield on. 28
How to binde on your shield, 29
On a tree yee may graffe two or three shields. 29
Of the time to unbinde your shield. 29

How to cut the branches, graft on trees. 29

CHAP. VI.

This Chapter is of transplanting, or altering the trees.

THe sooner yee transplant or set them, it shall be the better, p. 30
To plant or set towards the South. 30
How to cut the branches before ye set. 30
Apple trees commonly must be disbranched, afore ye set them againe. 31
All wilde stocks must be disbranched. 31
What trees do love the Sunne, and what trees the cold aire, 31
Of many sorts and manner of trees. 31
How to plant or set trees at large. 32
Ordering your trees. 33
How ye ought to enlarge the holes, when ye plant your trees. 34
Of dung and good earth for your trees. 34
If worms be in the earth, at your roots of trees. 34
To dig well the earth about the roots, 34
The nature of places, 34
Of good earth. 35
With what ye ought to bind your trees, 35

CHAP. VII.

This Chapter treateth of medicining and keeping the Trees, when they are planted and set.

THe first counsell is, when your trees be but plants (in dry weather) they must be watered. 35
With what dung ye ought to dung your trees. 35
When ye ought (in Summer) to uncover your trees. 35
When to cut or prune your trees. 36
How to cut great branches, and when, 35
How to leave your great branches cut. 36
Of the trees having great branches. 36
Of the barrennes of trees, of cutting ill branches, and uncovering the roots. 37
Of trees which ye must break, or pluck up the roots. 37
What doth make a good Nut. 37
Trees eaten and destroyed with Cattell, to be graft againe. 37
How wilde stocks ought not hastily to be removed. 37
When to cut naughty Cions from the head, 38
How some times to cut the principall members. 38
How to guide and govern the said trees 38
A kind of sicknes in tree. 38
Trees which have wormes in the barke 39.
Of Snailes, Ants and wormes that marre trees. 39
How to take those strange creeping worms, 39
To keep Ants from trees. 40
A note of all aires and weathers 41
To defend the Caterpiller. 41

Here followeth the Table of Graffing strange and subtile waie, in using of fruits and trees.

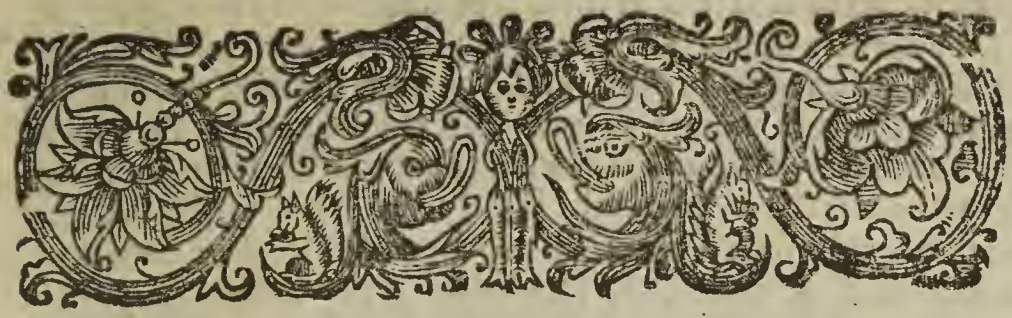
TO graffe one Vine upon another. 42
To help a tree long without fruit. 42
To have Peaches two months afore others, 42
To have Damsons unto *Alhallontide*, 42
To have Medlars Cherries and Peaches in eating to taste like spice. 43
To make a Muscadell tast. 43
To have Apples and Peares to come without blossoming, 43
To have Apples and Chestnuts tath, and long on the trees to remaine, 43
To have good Cheries unto *Alhallontide* 43
To have rath Medlars two months before others, 44
To have Pears timely. 44
To have Misples or Medlars without stones. 44
To have other Pears betimes, 44
To have Mulberies ripe very soon, and dure long 44
To keep Pears a yere. 44
To have fruit tast halfe an Apple, and half a Pear. 44
Times of Graffing. 45
To graffe the Quince Apple 45
To destroy Pismires or Ants about the tree. 45
Another for the same, 45
To have Nuts, Plums, and Almonds, great

ter and fairer then others. 45
To make an Oake(or other tree) as green in Winter as in Summer, 45
The time of planting without roots, and with roots, 46
To keep fruit from the frost. 46
The chosen daies to plant and graffe. 46
To have green Roses all the yeare. 46
To keepe Reisons or Grapes good a yeare. 46
To make fruit laxative from the tree. 46
Of the Soile, & manuring of the earth. 47.

Here followeth a Table of divers other practiques, meet to be knowne

TO graffe one Vine upon another, p. 48
Chosen dayes to graffe in, and to choose your Cions. 48
How to gather your Cions. 48
Of wormes in the trees or fruit, 49
The setting of stones, and the ordering thereof. 50
How to gather Gumme of any tree. 50
To set a whole Apple, 50
The setting of Almonds. 50
The watring of Pepins 51
To plant or set Vines. 51
To set or plant the Cherry tree. 51
To keepe Cherries good a yeare. 52
Remedy against Pismiers and Ants, 52
The setting of Chestnuts. 52
To make all stone fruit tast, as ye shal think good 53
The graffing of the Medlar or Mispel. 53
The bearing of fruit of the Fig tree. 53
The planting the Mulbery & Fig tree. 53
The tree that beareth bitter fruit. 54
To helpe barren trees, 54
Another way for the same, 54
To keep fruit after they be gathered. 54
The Mulbery tree liketh his earth. 54
Of moise on your trees. 55
To keepe Nuts long 55
To cut or prune the Peach thee. 55
To colour Peach stones, 56
If Peach trees be troubled with wormes, 56
To have the Peach without stones, 56
Another for the same. 57
To helpe trees that doe not prosper. 57
To graffe Apples, to last on the trees to Alhallontide. 57
To make Cherries and Peaches smell like spice. 57
To graffe thee an Apple shall be halfe sweet, and halfe sower. 57
To graffe the Rose on the Holly tree. 57
Of the keeping of plums. 58
Of the altering of Peares. 58
Of the making of Cider and Perry. 58
How to helpe frozen Apples. 59
How to make Apples fall from the tree. 59
To water trees in Summer, if they wax dry about the root. 59
How to cherish Apple trees. 59
How to make an Apple grow in a glasse. 59
How to graffe many sorts of Apples on one tree 60
How to colour Apples of what colour yee list. 60
How to graffe, and to have Apples without core. 60
Of the setting of Vine plants. 61
How to prune or cut a Vine in Winter, 62
Of the ordering of the Vine and Grape. 62
How to have Grapes without stones, 64
To make the Vine to bring a Grape to tast like Claret. 64
Of the gathering of your Grapes. 65
How to know if your Grapes be ripe enough. 65
How to prove or tast Wine. 65
Of the ordering, setting, and planting of Hops. 66
How to choose your Hop. 67
How to sow the seeds. 67
Of the setting your Poles. 67
How to prune the Hop. 67
How to gather your Hops. 68
What poles are best for your purpose. 68
How to order and dresse your hills. 68
Of the best ground for your Hop, 69
A note of all the rest above said. 69
How to pack and keep your Hops. 70

The



The Art of PLANTING AND GRAFFING.

CHAP. I.

This Chapter treateth of the setting of Kernels, young Plum trees, and Pear trees, of Damson and Service trees.

For to make young trees of the Pepins of Apples, Pears, Plums, and Services; First ye must prepare and make a great bed or quarter well replenished, blend or mixt with good fat earth, and placed well in the Sun, and to be well laboured and digged a good time before you do occupy it: and if ye can by any means, let it be digged very deep the Winter before, in blending or mixing it well together with good fat earth, or else let it be mixed almost the halfe with good dung: and so let it rot and ripen together with the earth. And see alwais that plot be clean where you intend to Plant, that no wild Cion or Plants do spring or grow thereon. Then in the moneth of *September*, *December* or thereabouts, take of the Pepins,

or Pomes of the ſaid fruit at the firſt preſſing out of your liquor, beſore the kernels be marred or bruiſed: then take out of them, and rub a few at once in a cloth, and dry them betwixt your hands, and take ſo many thereof as you ſhall thinke good: then make your bed ſquare, faire and plaine, and ſow your ſeeds thereon, then take and cover them with a rake lightly, or with earth, not putting too much upon them. This done, divide your beds into quadrants or ſquares, of four foot broad or thereabouts, that when ye liſt, ye may cleanſe them from the one ſide to the other, without treading thereon. Then ſhall ye cover your Seeds or Pepins with fine earth, ſo lifting all over them, that then they may take the deeper and ſurer root, and keepe the better in Winter following, and if ye liſt ye may rake them a little all over, ſo that ye raiſe not your Pepins above the earth.

Another way how one may take the Pepins at the firſt coming of the liquor or preſſing.

YE ſhall chooſe the greateſt and faireſt kernels or Pepins, and take them forth at the firſt bruiſing of your fruit; then dry them with a cloth, and keepe them all the Winter, untill St. *Andrews* tide: then a little after ſow them in good earth, as thin as ye ſow Peaſon, and then rake them over as the other.

How one ought to uſe his earth to ſow Pepins without dunging.

BUt in this manner of digging (in the Spring) it is not ſo great need for to raiſe or dig ſo deepe as that which is dunged in Winter: but to divide your quarters, in covering your Pepins not ſo much with earth as thoſe which be ſowen with good dung, but when ye have ſowen them, rake them a little all over.

How ye ought to take heed of Poultrey for ſcraping of your beds or quarters.

AS ſoon as your Pepins be ſown upon your beds or quarters let this be done one way or other, that is, take good heed that your Hens do not ſcrape your beds or quarters; therefore ſtick them all over light and thin with boughes or thornes, and take good heed alſo to Swine, and all other Cattel.

How

How to weed or clense your beds or quarters.

WHen the Winter is past and gone, and that ye see your Pepins rise and grow, so let them increase the space of one yeare: but see to clense weeds, or other things which may hurt them, as ye shall see cause. And in the Summer when it shall wax dry, water them in the evenings.

How one ought to pluck up the wild Cions.

WHen these wild Cions shall be great, as of the growth of one year, ye must then pluck them up all in the winter following, before they do begin to spring againe: Then shall ye set them and make of them a wild Orchard as followeth.

CHAP. II.

This Chapter treateth how one shall set againe the small wild trees, which come of Pepins, when they be first pluckt up.

FOr the barstard or wild trees, incontinent as soone as they be pluckt up, ye must have of other good earth well trimmed and dunged, and to be wel in the Sun, and well prepared and drest, as it is said already of the Pepins.

How to dung your Bastard or wild young trees which come of Pepins.

ABout Advent (before Christmas) ye must dig and dung well the place whereas ye will set them, and make your square of earth even and plaine, so large as ye shall thinke good; then set your wild trees so far one from another as ye thinke meet to be graft, so that they may be set in even rankes and in good order, that when need shall require, ye may remove or renew any of them or any part thereof.

How ye ought in re-planting or setting, to cut off in the midst the principall great root.

IN what part soever ye do set your trees, ye must cut off the great master root, within a foot of the stock, and all other big roots, so that ye leave a foot-long thereof, and so let them be set, and

make your rankes crosse-wise one from another halfe a foot, or thereabouts, and ye must also see that there be of good dung more deep and lower then ye do set your trees, to comfort the said roots withall.

How you ought to set your trees in ranke.

YE shall set your small young trees in rankes, halfe a large foot one from another: and let them be covered as ye do set them, with good fat earth all over the roots.

How to make the space from one ranke to another.

YE shall leave between your ranks, from one ranke to another, one foot, or thereabouts, so that ye may presse between every ranke for to clense them if need require, and also to graffe any part or parcell thereof when time shall be meet. But ye must note, in making thus your rankes, ye shall make as many Allies as rankes. And if ye thinke it not good to make so many Allies, then divide those into quarters of five foot broad, or thereabouts, and make and set foure ranks (in each quarter of the same) one foot from another, as ye use to set great Cabbage. And as soon after as ye have set them in ranks and good order, as is aforesaid, then shall ye cut off all the sets even by the ground. But in thus doing, see that ye do not pluck up or loose the earth which is about them: or if ye will, ye may cut them before ye do set them in ranks; If ye do so, see that ye set them in such good order, and even with the earth, as is aforesaid. And it shall suffice also to make your ranks as ye shall see cause. And looke that ye furnish the earth all over with good dung, without mingling of it in the earth, nor yet to cover the said plants withall, but strowed betwixt: and ye must also look well to the clensing of weeds, grasse, or other such things which will be a hurt to the growth of the Plants.

How to water Plants when they wax drie.

IT shall be good to water them when the time is dry: in the first yeare; Then when they have put forth new Cions, leave no more growing but that Cion which is the principal and fairest, upon every stock one: all the other cut off hard by the stock: and ever as there do grow small twigs about the stock, ye shall (in the moneth of *March* and *April*) cut them all off hard by the stock. And if ye then stick by every plant a pretty wand, and so bind them

with

with willow barke, brier, or Oziers, it shall profit them much in their growth. Then after five or six yeares growth, when they be so big as your finger, or thereabouts, ye may then remove any of them whereas you will have them grow and remain.

How one ought to remove trees and to plant them againe.

THe manner how ye ought to remove trees, is shewed in the sixt Chaper following: then about two or three year after their removing, ye shall graffe them, for then they will be the better rooted. As for the others which ye leave still in rankes, ye may graffe them whereas they stand, as ye shall see cause good. When ye have plucked up the fairest to plant in other places (as is aforesaid) the manner how to Graffe them, is shewed in the fifth Chapter following. But after they shall be so graft, in what place soever it be, ye shall not remove or set them in other places againe, untill the Graffes be well closed upon the head of the wild stock.

When the best time is to re-plant or remove.

WHen the head of the stock shall be all over closed about the graffes, then ye may when ye will, transplant and remove them (at a due time) where they shall continue. For with often moving, ye shall do them great hurt in their roots, and be in danger to make them die.

Of negligence and forgetfulnesse.

IF peradventure yee forget (through negligence) and have let small Cions two or three years grow about the roots of your stocks unplucked up, then if ye have so done, ye may well pluck them up and set them in rankes, as the other of the Pepins. But ye must set the rankes more large, that they may be removed without hurting of each others roots: and cut off all the small twigges above as need shall require, though they be set or graffed. Order them also in all things as those small Cions of a years growth.

It is not so convenient to graffe the Service tree, as to set him.

WHereas ye shall see young Service trees, it shall be most profit in setting them; for if ye graffe them, I beleeve ye shall win nothing thereby. The best is onely to pluck up the young Bastard trees when they are as great as a good walking-staffe; then prune or cut off their branches and carry them to set whereas they

may be no more removed: and they shall profit more in setting then graffing.

Some trees without graffing bring forth good fruit, and some other being graffed be better to make Sider of.

IT is here to be marked, that though the Pepins be sowed of the Pomes of Pears and good Apples, yet ye shall find that some of them do love the tree whereof they came: and those be right, which have also a smooth barke, and as faire as those which be graffed: the which if yé plant or set them thus growing from the master root without graffing, they shall bring as good fruit, even like unto the Pepin whereof he first came. But there be other new sorts commonly good to eat, which be as good to make Sider of as those which shall be graffed for that purpose.

When you list to augment and multiply your trees.

AFter this sort ye may multiply them, being of divers sorts and diversities, as of Pears, or Apples, or such like. Notwithstanding, whensoever you shall find a good tree thus come of the Pepin, as is aforesaid, so shall ye use him. But if ye will augment trees of themselves, ye must take Graffes and so graffe them.

Of the manner and changing of the fruit of the Pepin tree.

WHensoever ye doe replant or change your Pepin trees from place to place, in so removing often the stock, the fruit thereof also changes: but fruit which doth come of graffing doth alwaies keep the forme and nature of the tree whereof he is taken: for as I have said, as often as the Pepin trees be removed to a better ground, the fruit thereof shall be so much amended.

How we ought to make good Sider.

HEre is to be noted, if ye will make good Sider of what fruit soever it be, being Pears or Apples, but specially of good Apples & wild fruit, have alwaies regard unto the ripening thereof; so gathered dry, then put them in dry places, on boords in heaps, covered with dry straw, and whensoever ye will make Sider thereof, chuse out all those that are black, bruised, and rotten Apples, and throw them away, then take and use the rest for Sider. But here to give you understanding, do not as they do in the Country

of *Mentz*, which do put their fruit gathered into the midest of their Garden, in the raine and mislings, upon the bare earth, which wil make them to lose their force and vertue, and doth make them also withered and tough, and likely a man shall never make good Sider that shall come to any purpose or good profit thereof.

To make an Orchard in few yeares.

SOme do take straight slips, which do grow from the roots, or of the sides of the Apple trees, about *Michaelmas*, and do so plant or set them (with Oates) in good ground, whereas they shall not be removed, and so graffe (being well rooted) thereon. Othersome do take and set them in the spring time (after *Christmas*) in like wise, and do graffe thereon when they be well rooted: and both do spring well. And this manner of way is counted to have an Orchard the soonest. But these trees will not indure past twenty or thirty years.

CHAP. III.

This Chapter is of setting Trees of Nuts.

How one ought to set trees which come of Nuts.

FOr to set trees which come of Nuts; when ye have eaten the fruit, looke that ye keepe the Stones and Kernels thereof, then let them be dried in the wind, without the vehemency of the Sunne, so reserve them in a box and use them as before.

Of the time when ye ought to plant or set them.

YE shall plant or set them in the beginning of Winter, or afore *Michaelmas*, whereby they may the sooner spring out of the earth. But this manner of setting is dangerous: for the Winter then comming in, and they being young and tender in coming up, the cold wil kill them. Therefore it shall be best to stay and reserve them till after Winter. And then before ye do set them, ye shall soke or steep them in Milke, or in Milke and Water, so long till they do stink therein: then shall ye dry them and set them in good earth, in the change or increase of the Moon, with the small end upward, four fingers deep; then put some stick thereby to marke

For to set them in the Spring time.

IF ye will plant or set your Nuts in the Spring time where ye will have them still to remain, and not to be removed, the best and most easie way is to set in every such place (as ye think good) three or four Nuts nigh together, and when they do all spring up, leave none standing but the fairest.

Of the dunging and deep digging thereof.

ALso whereas ye shall think good, ye may plant or set all your Nuts in one square or quarter together in good earth and dung, in such place and time as they use to plant. But see that it be well dunged, and also digged good and deep, and to be well mingled with good dung throughout; then set your Nut, three fingers deep in the earth, and halfe a foot one from another: ye shall water them often in the Summer when there is dry weather, and see to weed them, and dig it as ye shall see need.

Of Nuts and Stones like the trees they came of.

IT is here to be noted, that certaine kind of Nuts and Curnels do love the trees they came of, & their fruit is like unto them, when they be planted in good ground, and set well in the Sun; which be, the Walnuts, Chestnuts, all kind of Peaches, Figs, Almonds, and Apricots; all these do love the Trees they came of.

ALL the said Trees do bring as good fruit of the said Nuts, if they be well planted, and set in good earth, and well in the Sun, as the fruit and Trees they came of.

Why fruit shall not have so good savour.

IF ye plant good Nuts, good Peaches, or Figs in a Garden full of shadow, the which hath afore loved the Sun, as the Vine doth, for lack thereof, their fruit shall not have so good savour, although it be all of one fruit: and likewise so it is with all other fruit and trees; for the goodnesse of the earth. and the faire Sun, doth preserve them much.

For to set the Pine tree.

FOr to set the Pine tree, ye must set or plant them of Nuts, in March, or about the shoot of the sap, not lightly after; ye must also set them where they may not be removed after, in holes well digged, and wel dunged, not to be transplanted or removed again, for very hardly they wil shoot forth Cions, being removed, especially if ye hurt the master root thereof.

For to set Cherrie trees.

FOr to set sower Cherries which do grow commonly in Gardens, ye shall understand they may well grow of stones, but better it shall be to take of the small Cions which do come from the roots: then plant them, and sooner shall they grow then the stones, and those Cions must be set when they are small, young and tender, as of two or three years growth; for when they are great, they profit not so well: and when ye set them, ye must see to cut off all the boughes.

Trees of Bastard and wild Nuts.

THere be other sort of Nuts, although they be well set in good ground, and also in the Sun, yet will they not bring halfe so good fruit as the other, nor commonly like unto those Nuts they came of, but be a bastard wild or sower fruit, which is the *Filberd*, smal *Nuts*, of *Plums*, of *Cheries*, and the great *Apricots*: therefore if ye will have them good fruit, ye must set them in manner and forme following.

How to set Filberds or Hasell trees.

FOr to set Filberds or Hasels, and to have them good, take the small wands that grow one from the root of the Filbert or Hasel tree (with short hairy twigs) and set them, and they shall bring as good fruit as the tree they came of. It shall not be needfull to prune, or cut off the branches thereof when ye set them, if they be not great; but those that ye do set, let them be of two or three years growth, and if ye shall see those Cions which ye have planted, not to be faire and good, or do not grow and prosper well, then (in the spring time) cut them off hard by the root, that other small Cions may grow thereof.

To set Damsons or Plum trees.

JN setting Damsons or Plum trees, which fruit ye would have like to the tree they came of; if the said trees be not graft before, ye shal take only the Cions that grow from the root (of the old stock)

which groweth with ſmall twigs, and plant or ſet them : and their fruit ſhall be like unto the trees they came of.

To take Plum graffes, and graffe them on ether Plum trees.

ANd if your Plum tree be graft already, and have the like fruit that ye deſire, ye may take your graffes thereof; and graffe them on your Plum trees, and the fruit that ſhal come thereof, ſhal be as good as the fruit of the Cions which is taken from the root, becauſe they are much of like effect.

To ſet all ſorts of Cherries.

TO ſet all ſorts of great Cherries, and others, ye muſt have the graffes of he ſame trees, and graffe them on other Chery trees although they be of ſower fruit : and when they are ſo graft, they wil be as good as the fruit of the tree whereof the graffe was taken, for the ſtones are good to ſet, to make wild Cions, or plants to graffe on.

The manner how one may order both Plum trees and Cherry trees.

FOr as much as theſe two kind of trees, that is, the Cherry and the Plum tree; for when they be ſo graft, their roots be not ſo good, nor ſo free as the branches above; wherefore the Cions that do come from the roots, ſhall not make ſo good and frank trees of; It is therefore to be underſtood, how this manner and ſort is to make franke trees, that may put forth good Cions in time to come, which is, when they be great and good; then if ye will take thoſe Cions, or young ſprigs from the roots, ye may make good trees thereof, and then it ſhall not need to graffe them any more after, but to augment one by the other, as ye do the Cions from the root of the Nut, as is aforeſaid, and ye ſhall do as followeth

How to graffe Plum trees and Cherrie trees.

YE may well graffe Plum trees, and great Cherry trees, in ſuch good order as ye liſt to have them, and as hereafter ſhall be declared in the fifth Chapter following: for theſe would be graffed while they are young and ſmall, and alſo graft in the ground, for thereby one may dreſſe & trim them the better, and put one graffe in each ſtock of the ſame. Cleave not the heart, but a little on the one ſide, nor yet deep,, or long open.

How ye muſt prune or cut your trees.

WHen your graffes be well taken on the ſtock, and that the graffes do put forth faire & long, above one years grow, ye muſt prune or cut the branch off, commonly in the Winter, (when

they prune their Vines) a foot lower, to make them ſpread the better : then ſhall ye mingle all through with good fat earth, the which will draw the better to the place, which ye have ſo pruned or cut.

The conveniente ſt way to clenſe and prune, or dreſſe the roots of trees.

AND for the better clenſing and pruning trees beneath, ye ſhall take away all the weeds, and graffe about the roots; then ſhal ye dig them ſo round about, as ye would ſeeme to pluck them up, and ſhall make them halfe bare; then ſhall ye enlarge the earth about the roots; and whereas ye ſhal ſee them grow fair and long, place or couch them in the ſaid hole and earth againe : then ſhal ye put the cut end of the tree where it is graft, ſomewhat lower then his roots were whereby his Cions ſo graft ſhall ſpring ſo much the better,

When the ſtock is greater then the graffe.

WHen as the tree waxeth, and ſwelleth greater beneath the graffing then above; then ſhall ye cleave the roots beneath, and wreath them round, and ſo cover them againe. But ſee ye break no root thereof, ſo wil he come to perfection : But moſt men do uſe this way; If the ſtock wax greater then the graffes, they do ſlit down the barke of the graffes above, in two or three parts, or as they ſhall ſee cauſe : and ſo likewiſe, if the graffes wax greater above then the ſtock, ye ſhall ſlit down the ſtock accordingly, with the edge of a ſharp knife. This may well be done at any time in *March*, *April*, and *May*, in the increaſe of the Moon, and not lightly after.

The remedy when any bough or member of a tree is broken.

IF ye ſhall chance to have boughes, or members of trees broken, the beſt remedies ſhall be to place thoſe boughes or members right ſoon again, (then ſhall ye comfort the roots with good fat earth) and bind faſt thoſe broken boughes or members, both above and beneath, and ſo let them remain unto another year, till they may cloſe and put forth new Cions.

When a member or bough is broken, how to prune them.

WHereas ye ſhall ſee under or above ſuperfluous boughes, ye may cut or prune off, (as ye ſhall ſee cauſe) all ſuch boughes hard by the tree, at a due time, in the Winter following. But leave all the principal branches; and whereas any are broken, let them be cut off beneath, or elſe by the ground, and caſt them away : thus

must ye do yearly, or as ye shall see cause, if ye will keep your trees well and fai e.

How one ought to enlarge the hole about the trees root.

IN pruning your trees, if there be any roots, ye must enlarge them in the hole, and so wreath them, as is aforesaid, and use them without breaking, then cover them againe with good fat earth, which yee shall mingle in the said hole, and it shall be best to be digged all over a little before, and see that no branch or root be left uncovered; and when you have thus dressed your trees, if any root shall put forth, or spring hereafter out of the said holes, in growing, ye may so prune them as ye shall see cause, in letting them so remaine two or three years after, untill such time as the said graffes be sprung up, and well branched.

How to set small staves by to strengthen your Cions.

TO avoid danger, ye shall set or prick small staves about your Cions, for fear of breaking, and then after three or four years, when they be wel branched, ye may then set or plant them in good earth, (at the beginning of Winter) but see that ye cut off all the small branches hard by the stock, then ye may plant them where ye think good, so as they may remaine,

In taking up of trees, note.

YE may well leave the master root in the hole (when ye digge him up) if the removed place be good for him, cut off the master root by the stub, but pare not off all the small roots, and so plant him, and he shall profit more thus, then others with all their master roots. When all trees be great, they must be dis-branched, or boughes cut off, before they be set again, or else they will hardly prosper. If the trees be great, having great branches or boughes, when ye shall digge them up, ye must dis-branch them before ye set them againe; for when trees shall be thus pruned, they shall bring great Cions from their roots, which shall be frank and good to replant, or set in other places, and shall have also good branches and roots, so that after it shall not need to graffe them any more, but shall continue one after another to be free and good.

How to coueh the roots when they are pruned.

IN setting your trees againe, if ye will dresse the roots of such as ye have pruned, or cut off the branches before, ye shall leave all such smal roots which grow on the great root, and ye shal so place those roots in re-planting again not deep in the earth, so that they

may ſoon grow, and put forth Cions: which being well uſed, ye may have fruit ſo good as the other afore mentioned, being of three or four years growth, as afore is declared.

What trees to prune.

THis way of pruning is more hard for the great Chery (called Healmier) then for the Plum tree. Alſo it is very requiſite and meet for thoſe Cions, or trees, which be graft on the wild ſower Chery tree, to be pruned alſo for divers and ſundry cauſes.

VVhy the ſower Chery dureth not ſo long as the Healmire or great Cherrie.

THe wild and ſower Chery, of his own nature will not ſo long time endure (as the great Healme Chery) neither can have ſufficient ſap to nouriſh the graffes, as the great Healme Chery is graft; therefore when ye have pruned the branches beneath, and the roots alſo, ſo that ye leave roots ſufficient to nouriſh the tree, then ſet him. If ye cut not off the under roots the tree will profit more eaſily, and alſo the lighter to be known, when they put forth Cions from the root of the ſame, the which ye may take hereafter.

To graffe one great Chery upon another.

YE muſt have reſpect unto the Healme Chery, which is graft on the wild Gomire (which is another kind of great Chery) and whether you do prune them or not, it is not materiall: for they dure a long time. But ye muſt ſee to take away the Cions, that do grow from the root of the wild Gomire, or wild Plum tree, becauſe they are of nature wild, and do draw the ſap from the ſaid trees.

Of deepe ſetting or ſhallow.

SEt your ſtocks or trees ſomewhat deeper on the high grounds, then in the vallies, becauſe the Sun (in Summer) ſhall not dry the root: and in the low ground more ſhallow, becauſe the water (in Winter) ſhall not drown or annoy the roots; Some do marke the ſtock in taking up, and to ſet him again the ſame way, becauſe he will not alter his nature: ſo likewiſe the graffes in graffing.

CHAP. IV

This Chapter sheweth how to set other Trees which come of Wild Cions, pricked in the earth without roots: and also of pruning the meaner Cions.

Trees take root prickt of branches.

THere be certaine which take root, being pricked of branches pruned off other Trees, which be the Mulbery, the Fig tree, the Quince tree, the Service tree, the Pomgranate tree, the Apple tree, the Damson tree, and divers sorts of other Plum trees, as the Plum tree of Paradise, &c.

How one ought to set them.

FOr to set those sort of Trees, ye must cut off the Cions, twigs or boughes, betwixt Alhallontide and Christmas, not lightly after. Ye shall choose them which be as great as a little staffe or more; and look whereas ye can find them fair, smooth, and straight and full of sap withall, growing of young trees, as of the age of three or foure years growth, or thereabouts, and look that ye take them so from the Tree with a broad Chesil, that ye break not or loose any part of the barke thereof, more then half a foot beneath, neither of one side or other; then prune or cut off the branches, and prick them one foot deepe in the earth, well digged and ordered before.

How to bind them that be weake.

THose plants which be slender, ye must prune or cut off the branches, then bind them to some stake or such like to be set in good earth, and well mingled with good dung, and also to be wel and deeply digged, and to be set in a moist place, or else to be well watred in Summer.

How one ought for to dig the earth they set them in.

AND when that ye would set them in the earth, ye must first prepare to dig it, and dung it well throughout a large foot deep in the earth. And when as ye will set them every one in his place made (before) with a crow of Iron, and for to make them take root the better, ye shal put with your plants, watered Oates or Barl[illegible] shall let them grow the space of three or foure years or

when they ſhall be wel branched, then ye may remove them; and if ye break off the old ſtubby roots and ſet them lower, they will laſt a long time the more. If ſome of thoſe plants do chance to put forth Cions from the root, ye muſt pluck them up though they be tender, and ſet them in other places.

Of Cions without roots.

IF the ſaid plants have Cions without roots, which come from the tree root beneath, then cut them not till they be of two or three years growth, by that time they will gather roots to be planted in other places.

To plant the Fig tree.

THe ſaid plants taken of Fig trees graffed, be the beſt. Ye may likewiſe take other ſorts of Fig trees, and graffe one upon the other, for like as upon the wild trees do come the Pepins, even ſo the Fig, but not ſo ſoon to proſper and grow.

How to ſet Quinces.

LIkewiſe the naure of Quinces is to ſpring, if they be pricked (as aforeſaid) in the earth, but ſometimes I have graffed with great difficulty (ſaith mine Author) upon a white Thorne, and it hath taken and born fruit, faire to looke on, but in taſt more weak then the other.

The way to ſet Mulberies.

THere is alſo another way to ſet Mulberies, which is as followeth, if you do cut in Winter certaine great Mulbery boughes or ſtocks aſunder in the body (with a ſaw) in tronchions a foot long or more, then ye ſhal make a great furrow in good earth wel and deep, ſo that you may cover well again your tronchions, in ſetting them an end half a foot one from another, then cover them againe, that the earth may be above thoſe ends, three or foure fingers high; ſo let them remaine, and water them (in ſummer) if need be ſomething, and cleanſe them from all hurtfull weeds and roots.

Another for the ſame.

NOte that within a ſpace of time after, the ſaid tronchions wil put forth Cions, the which when they be ſomewhat ſprigged, having two or three ſmall twigs, then ye may tranſplant or remove them where ye liſt, but leave your tronchions ſtil in the earth, for they will put forth many motions, the which if they ſhall have ſcarce of root, then dung your tronchions with good earth, and

The time to cut Cions.

YE shal understand that all trees which do commonly put forth Cions, if ye cut them in Winter, they will put forth and spring more abundantly, for then they be all good to set and plant.

To set Bush trees, or Gooseberies, or Reisons.

THere be many other kind of Bush trees, which will grow of Cions pricked in the ground: as the Goosebery tree, the smal Reison tree, the Barbery tree, the Black-thorne tree, these with many other, if planted in Winter, will grow without roots: ye must also prune them and they will take well enough; so likewise ye may prick (in March) of Oziers in moist grounds, and they will grow, and serve to many purposes for your garden.

CHAP, V.

This Chapter treateth of four manner of Graffings.

IT is to be understood that there be many waies of graffings, whereof I have here only put four sorts, the which be good, both sure and wel proved, and easie to do, the which ye may use wel in two parts of the year, & more, for I have (saith he) graffed in our ground, in every month, except *October* and *November*, and they have taken wel, which I have (saith he) in the Winter begun to graffe, and in the Summer graft in the Scutchion or shield according to the time, forward or slow: for certain trees, specially young faire Cions have enough or more of their sap unto mid August, then others some at *Midsommer* before.

The first way to graffe all sorts of trees.

AND first of all it is to be noted, that all sorts of Frank, trees, as also trees wild of nature, may be graft with graffes, and in the Scutchion, & both do take well, but specially those trees which be of like nature: therefore it is better so to graffe. Howbeit they may well grow and take of other sorts of trees, but certain trees be not so good, nor will prosper so well in the end.

How to graffe Apple trees, Peare trees, Quince trees, and Medlar trees.

THey graffe the Pear graffe on the Pear stock, and Apples upon Apple stocks, Crab or Wilding stocks, the Quince and Medlar upon the White thorne: but most commonly they use to graffe one

Apple upon another, and both Pears and Quinces they graffe on Hathorn and Crab ſtock. Another kind of fruit called in *French Saulfey*, they uſe to graffe on the willow ſtock; the manner thereof is hard to do, which I have not ſeen, therefore I will let paſs at this preſent.

The graffing of great Cheries.

THey graffe the great Chery, called in French *Heaulmiers*, upon the Crab ſtock, and another long Chery called *Guymiers* upon the wild or ſower Cherry tree, and likewiſe one Chery upon another.

To graffe Medlars.

THe Miſple or Medlar, they may be graffed on other Medlers, or on the white Thorn; the Quince is graffed on the white or black Thorne, and they do proſper well; I have graffed (ſaith he) the Quince upon the wild Pear ſtock. and it hath taken and born fruit, well and good, but they will not long endure. I believe (ſaith he) it was becauſe the graffe was not able enough to draw the ſap from the Pear ſtock. Some graffe the Medler on the Quince to be great. And it is to be noted, although the ſtock and the graffe be of contrary natures: yet notwithſtanding, neither the graffe nor Scutchion, ſhall take any part of the nature of the wild ſtock ſo graffed, though it be Pear, Apple, or Quince, which is contrary againſt many which have written, that if ye graffe the Medler upon the Quince tree, they ſhall be without ſtones, which is an abuſe and mockery. For I have (ſaith he) proved the contrary my ſelfe.

Of divers kinds of graffe.

IT is very true, that one may ſet a tree, which ſhall beare divers ſorts of fruit at once, if he be graffed with divers kinds of graffs, as the black, white, and green Chery together, and alſo Apples of other trees, as Apples and Pears together, and in the Scutchion, (ye may graffe) likewiſe of divers kinds alſo, as on Pears, Apricots, and Plums together, and of others alſo.

Of the graffing the Fig.

YE may graffe the Fig tree upon the Peach tree or Apricot, but leave a branch on the ſtock, & there muſt be according for the ſpace of years, for one ſhall change ſooner then the other. All trees aboveſaid, do take very well being graffed one with the other. And I have not known, or found of any others, howbeit (ſaith he)

I have curiouſly ſought and proved, becauſe they ſay one may graffe in Coleworts, or on Elms, which I think are but jeſts.

Of the great Apricots.

THe great Apricots they graffe in Summer, in the Scutchion or ſhield, in the ſap or barke of the leſſer Apricot, and they be graffed on Peach trees, Fig trees, and principally on Damſon or Plum trees, for then they will proſper the better.

Of the Service tree.

OF the Service tree they ſay and write, that they may hardly be graffe on other Service trees, either on Apple trees, Pear or Quince tree: and I believe this to be very hard to do, for I have tried (ſaith he) and they would not prove.

The ſetting of Services.

THerefore it is much better to ſet them of Kernels, as it is aforeſaid, as alſo in the ſecond Chapter of Planting of Cions, or other great trees, which muſt be cut in Winter, as ſuch as ſhall be moſt meet for that purpoſe.

Trees which be very hard to be graffed, in the ſhield or Scutchion.

ALl other manner of trees aforeſaid, doe take very well to be graffed with Cions, and alſo in the ſhield, except Apricots on Peaches, Almonds, Percigniers, the Peach tree, do take hardly to be graffed, but in the ſhield in Summer, as ſhall be more largely hereafter declared. As for the Almond, Percigniers and Peaches, ye may better ſet them of Curnels of Nuts, whereby they ſhall the ſooner come to perfection to be graffed.

How a man ought to conſider thoſe trees, which be commonly charged with fruit.

YE ſhall underſtand that in the beginning of graffing, ye muſt conſider what ſort of trees doe moſt charge the ſtock with branch and fruit, or that do love the Country or ground where you intend to plant or graffe them: for better it were to have abundance of fruit, then to have very few or none good.

Of trees whereof to cruſe your graffes.

OF ſuch trees as you will gather your graffes to graffe with, ye muſt take them at the ends of the principall branches, which be alſo faireſt & greateſt of ſap, having two or three fingers length of the old wood, with the new, and thoſe Cions of eyes ſomewhat nigh together, are the beſt; for thoſe which be long, or far one from another, be not ſo good for to bring fruit.

The Cions towards the East are best.

YE shall understand that those Cions which do grow on the East or Orient part of the tree, are best : ye must not lightly gather of the evill or slender graffes, which grow in the midst of the trees, nor any graffes which do grow within on the branches, or that do spring from the stock of the tree, nor yet graffes which be on very old trees, for thereby ye shall not lightly profit to any purpose.

To chuse your trees for graffes.

AND when the trees whereas you intend to gather your graffes, be small and young, as of five or six yeare growth, do not take of the highest graffe thereof nor the greatest, except it be be of a small tree of two or three years, the which commonly hath too much of top or wood, otherwise not, for you shall but mar your graffing

How to keepe graffes a long time.

YE may keepe graffes a long time good, as from *Alhallontide* (so that the leaves be fallen) unto the time of graffing, if that they be well covered in the earth half a foot deep therein, and so that none of them do appeare without the earth.

How to keepe graffes before they be budded.

YE shal not gather them except ye have great need, until *Christmas* or thereabouts, and put them not in the ground nigh any wals, for feare of Moles, Mice; and water, maring the place and graffes. It shall be good to keep graffes in the earth before they begin to bud, when that ye will graffe betwixt the bark and the tree, and when the trees begin to enter into their sap.

How one ought to begin to graffe.

YE may well begin to graffe (in claving the stock) at *Christmas* or before, according to the coldnesse of the time, and principally the Healme or great Chery, Pears, Wardens, or forward fruit of Apple : and for Medlers it is good to tary until the end of *January* and *February*, until *March*, or until such time as ye shall see trees begin to bud or spring.

When it is good graffing the wild stocks.

IN the spring time it is good graffing the wild stocks (which be great) betwixt the barke and the tree, such stocks as be of lateward spring, and kept in the earth before. The Damson or Plum tarrieth longest to be graft : for they do not shew or put forth sap

Marke if the tree be forward or not.

YE ought to consider alwaies, whether the tree be forward or not, or to be graffed soon or lateward, and to give him a graffe of the like haft or flownesse: even so ye must marke the time, whether it be slow or forward.

When one will graffe, what necessiries he ought to be furnished withall.

WHensoever ye gee to graffing, see ye be first furnished with graffes, clay and moss clothes, or barkes of sallow to bind likewise withall. And ye must have a small saw, and a sharp knife, to cleave and cut graffes withall. But it were much better if you should cut your graffes with a great penknife or some other like sharp knife, having also a small wedge of hard wood, or of Iron, with a hooked knife, and also a small mallet. And your wild stocks must be well rooted before ye do graffe them: and be not so quick to deceive your selves, as those which do graffe and plant all at one time; yet they shall not profit so wel; for where the wild stock hath not substance in himselfe, much lesse to give unto the other graffes, for when a man thinks sometime to forward himselfe, ye doth hider himselfe.

Of graffes not prospering the first yeare.

YE shall understand, that very hardly your graffes shall prosper after, if they doe profit or prosper well in the first yeare; for whensoever (in the first yeare) they profit well, it were better to graffe them somewhat lower then to let them so remaine and grow.

For to graffe well and sound.

AND for the best understanding of graffing in the cleft, ye shall first cut away all the small Cions above the body of the stock beneath, and before ye begin to cleave your stock, dresse and cut your graffes somewhat thick and ready; then cleave your stock, and as the cleft is small or great (if need be) part it smooth within; then cut your incision of your graffes accordingly, and set them in the clefts as even and as close as you can possibly.

How to trim your graffes.

YE may graffe your graffes full as long as two or three trunchions, or cut graffes, which ye may likewise graffe withall very well, and be as good as those which do come of old wood, and often times better, as to graffe a bough; for often it so happeneth, a man shall find of Oylets or eyes hard by the old slender wood, yet

better it were to cut them off with the old wood, and chuse a better and fairer place at some other eye in the same graffe, and to make your incision thereunder, as aforesaid, and cut your graffes in making the incision on the one side narrow, and on the other side broad, and the inner side thin, and the out side thick, because the outside (of your graffe) must joyne within the clefr, with the sap of the barke of the wild stock, and it shall be so set in. See also that ye cut it smooth as your clefts are in the stock, in joyning at every place both even and close, and especially the joynts or corners of the graffes on the head of the stock, which must be well and clean pared before, and then set fast therein.

How to cut graffes for Cheries and Plums.

IT is not much requisite in the Healme Chery, for to joyne the graffes (in the stock) wholly throughout, as it is in others, or to cut the graffes of great Cheries, Damsons, or Plums, so thin and plain as ye may other graffes, for these sorts have a greater sap or pith within, the which ye must alwaies take heed in cutting it too nigh on the one side, or on the other, but at the end thereof chiefly to be thin cut aud flat.

Note also.

AND yet if the said incision be straighter and closer on the one side then on the other side, pare it where it is most meet, and where it is too straight open it with a wedge of Iron, and put in a wedge of the same wood about in the clefr, and thus may ye moderate your graffes as ye shall see cause.

How in graffing to take heed that the bark do not rise.

IN all kind of cutting your graffes, take heed to the bark of your graffes that it do not rise (from the wood) on no side thereof, and specially on the outside, therefore ye shall leave it thicker then the inner side: Also ye must take heed when as the stocks do wreath in cleaving, that ye may joyne the graffe therein accordingly: the best remedy therefore is to cut it smooth within, that the graffe may joyne the better: ye shall also unto the greatest stock, chuse for them the greatest graffes.

How to cut your stocks.

HOw much the more your stock is thin and slender, so much more ye ought to cut him lower, and if your stock be as great as your finger, or thereabouts, ye may cut him a foot or halfe a foot from the earth, and dig him about, and dung him with Goats

dung, to helpe him withall, and graffe him but with one graffe or Cion.

If the wild ſtocke be great and ſlender.

IF your wild ſtock be great, or as a big as a good ſtaffe, ye ſhal cut him round off, a foot or thereabouts above the earth, then ſet two good graffes in the head or cleft thereof.

Trees as great as one arme.

WHen your ſtock is as great as your arme, ye ſhall ſaw him off three or four foot, or thereabouts, from the earth, for to defend him, and ſet in the head three graffes, two in the cleft, and one betwixt the barke and the tree, on that ſide where ye may have moſt ſpace.

Great trees as big as your leg.

JF the ſtock be as bigge as your leg, or thereabouts, ye ſhall ſaw him faire and clean off, four or five foot high from the earth, and cleave him acroſs (if ye will) and ſet in four graffes in the clefts, thereof, or elſe one cleft onely, and ſet two graffes in both the ſides thereof, and other two graffes betwixt the barke and the tree.

When the graffes be pinched with the ſtocke.

YE muſt for the better underſtanding, marke the graffe betwixt the bark and the tree; for when the ſap is full in the wood of wild ſtocks being great, then they do commonly pinch or wring the graffes too ſore, if ye do not put a ſmall wedge of green wood in the cleft thereof, to helpe them withall againſt ſuch danger.

How ye ought to cleave your ſtocke.

WHenſoever ye ſhal cleaae your wild ſtock, take heed that ye cleave them not in the midſt of the heart or pith, but a little on the one ſide, which ye ſhall think good.

How to graffe the branches of great trees

WHenſoever ye would graffe great trees, as great as your thigh or greater, it were much better to graffe the branches thereof, then the ſtock or body; for the ſtock will rot before the graffes ſhall cover the head.

How to cut branches old and great.

JF the banches be too rude, and without order, the beſt ſhall be to cut them all off, and within three or four years after they wil bring faire new Cions againe, and then it ſhall be beſt to graffe

them, and cut off all the superfluous and ill branches thereof.

How ye ought to bind your graffes throughout for fear of winds.

AND when your graffes shall be grown, ye must bind them, for fear of shaking of the wind; and if the tree be free and good of himselfe, let the Cions grow still, and ye may graffe any part or branch ye will in the cleft, or betwixt the barke and the tree, either in the Scutchion, if your bark be fair and loosed.

To set many graffes in one cleft.

WHen ye will put many graffes in one cleft, see that one incision (of your graffe) be as large as the other, not to be put into the cleft so slightly and rashly, and that one side thereof be not more open then the other, & that these graffs be all of one length: it shall suffice also, if they have three eyes one each graffe without the joynt thereof.

How to saw your stock before ye cleave him.

IN sawing your stock, see that ye tear not the bark about the head thereof, then cl ave his head with a long sharp knife, or such like, and knock your wedge in the midst thereof, (then pare him on the head round about) and knock your wedge in so deep till it open meet for your graffes, but not so wide; then holding in one hand your graffe, and in the other hand your stock, set your graffe in close, bark to bark, and let your wedge be great above at the head, that ye may knock him out fair and easily again.

If the stocke cleave to much, or the barke do open.

IF the stock do cleave too much, or open the bark with the wood too low, then softly open your stock with your wedge, and see if your incision of your graffe be meet and just according to the cleft; if not, make it untill it be meet, or else saw him off lower.

How graffes never lightly take.

ABove all things ye must consider the meeting of the two saps, betwixt the graffe and the wild stock, which must be set in just one with another: for ye shall understand, if they do not joyn, and the one delight with the other, being even set, they shall never take together, for there is nothing to joyne their increase, but onely the sap, recounting the one against the other.

How to set the graffes right in the cleft.

WHen the barke of the stock is thicker then the graffe, ye must take good heed, of the setting in of the graffe in the

the cleft, to the end that his ſap may joyn right with the ſap of the ſtock, on the inſide; and ye ought likewiſe to conſider of the ſap of the ſtock, if ye do ſurmount the graffes on the outſides of the cleft too much, or not.

Of ſetting in the graffes.

ALſo ye muſt take good heed, that the graffes be well and clean ſet in, and joyn cloſe upon the head of the ſtock. Likewiſe that the inciſion which is ſet in the cleft, do joyne very well within on both ſides, but ſometimes it may do ſervice, when as the graffes do draw too much from the ſtock, or the ſtock alſo on the graffes do put forth.

Note alſo.

WHen the ſtock is rightly cloven, there is no danger in cutting the inciſion of the graffes, but a little ſtraight rebated to the end thereof, that the ſap may joyne one with the other, the better and cloſer together.

How ye ought to draw out your wedge.

WHen your graffes ſhal be wel joyned with the ſtocks, draw your wedge faire and ſoftly forth, for fear of diſplacing your graffes, ye may leave within the cleft a ſmall wedge of ſuch green wood as is aforeſaid, and ye ſhall cut it off cloſe by the head of your ſtock, and ſo cover it with a bark as followeth.

To cover your clefts on the head.

WHen your wedge is drawne forth, put a green pill of thick barke of Willow, Crab, or Apple, upon your clefts of the ſtocks, that nothing do fall between: then cover all about the clefts on the ſtock head, two fingers thick with good Clay, or nigh about that thickneſſe, that no wind nor raine may enter. Then cover it round with good Moſs, and then wreath it over with clothes, or peels of Willow, Brier or Oziars, or ſuch like, then bind them faſt, and ſtick certain long pricks on the graffes head amongſt your Cions, to defend them from the Crows, Jayes, or ſuch like.

How ye ought to ſee to the binding of your Graffes.

BUt alwaies take good heed to the binding of your heads that they wax not ſlack or ſhag, neither on the one ſide or other, but remain faſt upon the Clay, which Clay muſt remaine faſt (likewiſe on the ſtock head) under the binding thereof; wherefore the ſaid Clay muſt be moderated in ſuch ſort as followeth.

How ye ought to temper your Clay.

THe best way therefore is to try your clay between your hands, for stones and such like, and so to temper it as ye shall thinke good, if so it require of moistnesse or dryneſſe, and to temper it with the haire of beasts: for when it dryeth, it holdeth not (o herwise) so well on the stock, or if ye knead of Mosse therewith, or mingle Hay thin therewith: some do judge that the Moss doth make the tree moist; But I think (saith he) that commeth of the disposition of place.

To bush your graffe head.

WHen ye shall bind or wrap your graffe head with a band, take small thornes, and bind them within, for to defend your graffes from Kites or Crows, or danger of other fowles, or pr prick sharp white sticks thereon.

The second way to graffe high branches on trees.

THe second manner to graffe, is strange enough to many: This kind of graffing is on the tops of branches of Trees: which thing to make them grow lightly, is not so soon obtained: wheresoever they be graffed, they do onely require a faire young wood, a great Cion or twig, growing highest in the tree top, which Cions ye shall chuse to graffe on, of as many sorts of fruit as ye wil, as ye shall think good, which order followeth.

TAke graffes of other sorts of tree, which you will graffe in the top thereof then mount to the top of the tress which ye would graffe, and cut off the tops of all such branches, or as many as ye would graffe on, and if they be grater then the graffes, which ye would graffe, ye shall cut and graffe them lower as ye do the small wild stock aforesaid. But if the Cions that you cut be as great as your graffe that you graffe on, ye shal cut them lower betwixt the old wood and the new, or a little more higher or lower: then cleave a little, and chuse your graffes in the like sort, which ye would plant, whereof ye shall make the incision short, with the bark on both sides like, and as thick on the one side as the other, and set so just in the cleft, that the barks may be even and close, as wel above as beneath, on the one side as the other, and so bind him as is aforesaid. It shall suffice that every graffe have an oylet; or eye, or two at the most, without the joynt, for to leave them too long it shall not be good, and ye must dresse it with Clay and Mosse, and bind it, as is aforesaid. And likewise ye may Graffe these, as

ye do the little wild stocks, which should be at great as your graffs, and to graffe them, as ye do those with Sap like on both sides, but then ye must graffe them in the earth, as three fingers of, or thereabouts.

The manner of Graffing of graffes which may be set betwixt the barke and the Tree.

To graffe betwixt the barke and the Tree.

THis manner of graffing is good, when trees do begin to enter into their Sap, which is about the end of *February*, unto the end of *April*, and especially on great wild stocks, which be hard to cleave, ye may set in foure or five graffes in the head thereof, which graffes ought to be gathered afore, and kept close in the earth till then, for by that time aforesaid, ye shall scantly find a tree, but that he doth put forth or bud, as the Apple called *Capendu*, or such like. Ye must therefore saw these wild stocks, more charily, and higher, so they be great, and then cut the graffes which ye would set together, so as you would set them upon the wild stock that is cleft, as is aforesaid. And the inclosed of your graffes must not be so long, nor so thick, and the bark a little at the end thereof must be taken away, and made in manner as a Launcet of Iron, and as thick on the one side as the other.

How to dresse the head, to place the graffes betwixt the bark and the tree.

ANd when your garffes be ready cut, then shall ye ceanse the head of your stock, and pare it with a sharp knife, round about the barke thereof; to the end your graffes may joyne the better thereon; then by and by take a sharp pen-knife, or other sharpe pointed knife, and thurst it dow betwixt the bark and the stock, so long as the incision of your graffes be, then put your graffs softly down therein in the hard joynt: and see that it doth sit close upon the stock head.

How to cover the head of your stocke

WHen as ye have set in your graffes, ye must then cover it well about with good tough Clay and Mosse, as is said of the others, and then you must incontinent environ or compass your head with small thorny bushes, and bind them fast thereon all aboot for fear of great birds, and likewise the wind.

Of the manner of graffing in the Shield or Scutchion.

THe fourth manner to graffe, which is the last, is to graffe in the Scutchion, in the sap, in Sommer, from about the end of the moneth of *May*, until *August*, when as tree be yet strong in sap and leaves, for otherwaies it cannot be done, the best time is in *June* and *July*, so it is some years when the time is very dry, that some trees do hold their sap very long, therefore ye must tarry till it returne.

For to graffe in Sommer so long as the trees be full leaved.

FOr to begin this manner of graffing well, ye must in Sommer when the trees be almost ful of sap, and when they have sprang forth new shouts, being somewhat hardned, take a branch thereof in the top of the tree, the which ye will have graffed, and chuse the highest and the principallest branches, without cutting it from the old wood, and chuse thereof the principallest oylet or eye or budding place, of each branch one, within which oylet or eye ye shal begin to graffe as followeth.

The big Cions are best to graffe.

PRincipally ye must understand, that the smallest and naughty oylets or buds of the said Cions be not so good to graffe, therefore chuse the greatest and best ye can find; first cut off the leafe hard by the oylet, then ye shal trench or cut (the length of a barley corne) beneath the oylet round about the bark, hard to the wood, and so likewise above: then with the sharp point of a knife, slit it down half an inch beside the oylet or bud, and with the point of a sharp knife softly raise the said shield or Scutchion round about, with the oylet in the middest, and all the sap belonging thereunto.

How to take of the shield from the wood.

AND for the better raising your said shield or Scutchion from the wood, after that ye have cut him round about, and then slit him down, without cutting any part of the wood within, ye must then raise the side next you that is slit, and take the same shield betwixt your fingers and thumb, and pluck or raise it softly off, without breaking or brusing any part thereof, and in the opening or plucking it off, hold it with your finger hard on the wood, to the end the sap of the oylet may remain in the shield, for if it go off (in plucking it) from the barke, and stick to the wood, your Scutchion is nothing worth.

To know your Scutchion or shield when he is good or bad.

AND for the more easie understanding, if it be good or bad, when it is taken from the wood, look within the said shield, and if ye shall see it crack, or open within, then it is of no value, for the chief sap doth yet remain behind with the wood, which should be in the shield, and therefore ye must chuse and cut another shield, which must be good and sound, as aforesaid, and when your Scutchion shall be wel taken off from the wood, then hold it dry by the oylet or eye betwixt your lips, until you have cut and taken off the barke from the other Cion or branch, and set him in that place, and look that ye do not foule or wet it in your mouth.

Of young trees to graffe on.

BUt ye must graffe on such trees, as be from the bignesse of your little finger, unto as great as your arme, having their barke thin and slender, for great trees commonly have their barke hard and thick, which ye cannot well graffe this way, except they have some branches with a thin smooth bark, meet for this way to be done.

How to set or plant your shield

YE must quickly cut off round the bark of the tree that ye will graffe on, a little longer then the shield that ye set on, because it may joyne the sooner and easier, but take heed that in cutting off the bark, ye cut not the wood within.

Note also.

AFter the incision once done, ye must then cover both the sides or ends well and softly with all, with a little bone or horn, made in manner like a thin skin, which ye shall lay all over the joynts or closings of the said shield, somewhat longer and larger, but take heed for hurting or crushing the bark thereof.

How to lift up the barke, and to set your shield on.

THis done, take your shield or Scutchion, by the oylet or eye that he hath, and open him faire and softly by the two sides, and put them straight way on the other tree, whereas the bark is taken of, and joyne him close barke to barke thereon; then plain it softly above and at both the ends with the thin bone, and that they joyn above and beneath bark to bark, so that he may feed well the branch of that tree.

How to bind on your shield.

THis done, ye must have a wreath of good hemp, to bind the said shield on his place: the manner to bind it is this, ye shall make a wreath of hemp together as great as a Goose-quill, or thereabouts, or according to the bignes or smalnes of your tree: then take your hemp in the midst, that the one halfe may serve for the upper halfe of the shield, in winding and crossing (with the hemp) the said shield on the branch of the tree, but see that ye bind it not too straight, for it shall let him from taking or springing, and likewise their sap cannot easily come or passe from the one to the other: and see also that wet come not to your shield, nor likewise the hemp that ye bind it withal: Ye shall begin to bind your Scutchion first behind in the midst of your shield, in coming still lower and lower, and so recover under the oylet and taile of your shield, binding it nigh together, without recovering of the said oylet, then ye shall returne again upward, in binding it backward to the midst where ye began. Then take the other part of the hemp, and bind so likewise the upper of your shield, and encrease your hemp as ye shall need, and so returne againe backward, and ye shall bind it so, till the fruits or clefts be covered (both above and beneath) with your said hemp, except the oylet and his taile, the which ye must not cover, for that taile will shed apart, if the shield do take.

On one tree ye may graffe or put two or three shields.

YE may very well if ye will, on every tree graffe two or three shields, but see that one be not right against the other, nor yet of the one side of the tree; let your shields so remain bound on the trees, one moneth or more, after they be graffed, and the greater the tree is, the longer to remain, and the smaller the lesser time.

The time to unbind your shield.

ANd then after one moneth, or six weeks past, ye must unbind the shield, or at the least cut the hemp behind the tree, and let so remaine the Winter next following, and then about the moneth of *March* or *April* if ye will, or when ye shall see the sap of the shield put forth, then cut the branch off three fingers above the shield, or thereabouts.

How to cut and govern the branches graffed on the trees.

THen in the next year after that the Cions shall be well strengthened, and when they do begin to spring, then shall ye cut

them all hard off, by the ſhield above; for if he had cut them ſo nigh in the firſt year, when they began firſt to ſpring or bud, it ſhould greatly hinder them againſt their increaſe of growing: alſo when thoſe Cions ſhall put forth a faire wood, ye muſt bind and ſtay them in the midſt, faire and gently with ſmall wands, or ſuch like, that the wind and weather hurt them not. And after this manner of graffing, which is practiſed in th ſhield or Scutchion way ye may eaſily graffe the White Roſe on the Red; and likewiſe ye may have Roſes of divers colours and ſorts, upon one branch or root. This I thouhht ſufficient and meet to declare of this kind of graffing at this this preſent.

CHAP. VI.

This Chapter treateth of tranſplanting or altering of Trees.

The ſooner ye tranſplant or ſet them. it ſhall be the better.

YE ought to tranſplant or ſet your trees from *Alhallontide* unto *March*, and the ſooner the better, for as ſoon as the leaves are fallen from the trees, they be meet for to be planted, if it be not in a very cold, or moiſt place, the which then it were beſt for to tarry unto *January* or *February*: to plant in the froſt is not good.

To plant or ſet towards the South, or ſunnie place is beſt.

AFore ye do pluck up your trees for to plant them, if ye will marke the South ſide of each tree, that when ye ſhal re-plant them, ye may ſet them again as they ſtood before, which is the beſt way as ſome do ſay. Alſo if ye keep them a certain time, After they he taken out of the earth, before ye plant them again, they wil rather recover there in the earth, ſo they be not wet with rain, nor otherwiſe; for that ſhall be more contrary to them, then the great heat or drought.

How to cut the branches of trees, before they be ſet,

WHenſoever ye ſhall ſet or re-plant your tree, firſt ye muſt cut off the boughes, and eſpecially thoſe which are great branches, in ſuch ſort that ye ſhall leave the ſmall twigs or ſprigs on

the ſtocks of your branch, which muſt be but a ſhaftment long, or ſomewhat more, or elſe, according as the tree ſhall require, which ye do ſet.

Apple trees commonly muſt be diſbranched before they be replanted or ſet.

ANd chiefly the Apple trees, being Graffed or not Graffed, do require to be disbranched before they be ſet again; for they ſhall proſper thereby much better: the other ſort of trees may wel paſſe unbranched, if they have not too great or large branches: and therefore it ſhall be good to tranſplant or ſet as ſoon after as the graffes are cloſed, on the head of the wild ſtock: as for ſmall trees, which have but one Cion or twig, it needs not to cut them above, when they be replanted or removed.

All wild ſtocks muſt be disbranched when they are replanted or ſet.

ALl wild trees or ſtocks, which ye thinke for to graffe on, ye muſt firſt cut off all their branches before ye ſet them again: alſo it ſhall be good, alwaies to take heed in replanting your trees, that ye do ſet them again in as good or better earth then they were in before, and ſo every Tree according as his nature doth require.

What trees love the ſaire Sunne, what trees the cold aire.

COmmonly the moſt part of trees do love the Sunne at Noone, and yet the South wind (*or vent d'aval*) is very contrary againſt their nature, and ſpecially the Almond tree, the Apricot, the Mulbery tree, the Fig tree, and the Pomgranade tree. Certaine other trees there be which love cold aire, as theſe: The Cheſtnut tree, the wild and eager Chery tree, the Quince tree, & the Damſon or Plum tree, the Walnut loveth cold aire & a ſtony white ground. Peare trees love not greatly plain places, they proſper wel enough in places cloſed with walls, or high hedges, and ſpecially the Pear called *bon Chriſten.*

Of many ſorts and manner of trees, following their nature.

THe Damſons or Plum tree doth love a cold fat earth, and clay withall, the (Healme) great Chery doth love to be ſet or planted upon clay. The Pine tree loveth light earth, ſtonie and ſandy. The Medlar commeth well enough in all kind of grounds, and doth not hinder his fruit, to be in ſhadow and moiſt places. Haſel nut trees love the place to be cold, leane, moiſt and ſandy; Ye ſhall underſtand, that every kinde of fruitfull tree doth

love, and is more fruitful in one place, then another, as according unto their nature. Nevertheleſſe yet we ought to nouriſh them (all that we may) in the place where we ſet them in, in taking them from the place and ground they were in. And ye muſt alſo conſider when one doth plant them, of the great and largeſt kind of trees, that every kind of tree may proſper and grow, and it is to be conſidered alſo, if the trees have commonly grown afore ſo large in the ground or nor; for in good earth the trees may wel proſper and grow, having a good ſpace one from another, more then if the ground were lean and naught.

How to place or ſet trees at large.

IN this thing ye ſhall conſider, ye muſt give a competent ſpace from one tree to another, when as ye make the holes to ſet them in, not nigh, nor that one tree touch the other. For a good tree planted, or ſet well at large, it profiteth oftentimes more of fruit then three or foure trees, ſet too nigh together. The greateſt and largeſt trees commonly are Walnuts, and Cheſtnuts, if ye plant them ſeverally in rank, as they do commonly grow upon high waies, beſides hedges and fields; they muſt be ſet 35. foot a ſunder, one from another, or thereabouts, but if ye wil plant many ranks in one place together, ye muſt ſet them the ſpace of 45. foot one from another, or thereabouts, and ſo farre ye muſt ſet your ranks one from another. For the Pear trees and Apple trees, and other ſort of trees, which may be ſet of this largeneſſe one from the other, if ye do plant onely in ranks by hedges in the fields or otherwiſe, it ſhall be ſufficient of 20. foot one from another. But if ye will ſet two ranks upon the ſides of your great Allyes in gardens, which be of ten or twelve foot broad, it ſhall be then beſt to give them more ſpace, the one from the other in each rank, as about 25. foot; alſo ye muſt not ſet your Trees right one againſt the other, but entermedling or between every ſpace, as they may beſt grow at large, that if need be, ye may plant of other ſmaller trees between, but ſee that ye ſet them not too thick. If ye liſt to ſet or plant all your trees of one bigneſſe, as of young trees like rods, being Pear trees, or Apple trees, they muſt be ſet a good ſpace one from another, as of twenty or thirty foot in ſquare, as to ſay, from one rank to another. For to plant or ſet of ſmaller trees, as Plum trees, Apple trees, of the like bigneſſe, it ſhall be ſufficient for them fourteen or fifteen foot ſpace in quarters. But if ye will plant or ſet

two ranks, in your Allies in Gardens, ye muſt deviſe for to proportion it after the largeneſſe of your ſaid Allies. For to plant or ſet eager or ſower Chery trees, this ſpace ſhall be ſufficient enough the one from the other, that is, of ten or twelve foot, and therefore if you make of great or large Allies in your Garden, as of ten foot wide, or thereabouts, they ſhall come well to paſſe, and ſhall be ſufficient to plant your trees, of nine or ten foot ſpace: and for the other leſſer ſorts of treee, as of Quince trees, Figge trees, Nut trees, and ſuch like, which be not commonly planted, but in one ranke together.

Ordering your trees.

WHen that ye plant or ſet ranks, or every kind of trees together, ye ſhall ſet or plant the ſmalleſt towards the Sun, and the greateſt in the ſhade, that they may not annoy or hurt the ſmall, nor the ſmall the great. And whenſoever ye wil plant or ſet Peare trees, and Plum trees (in any place) the one with another, better it were to ſet the Plum trees next the Sunne, for the Peares wil dure better in the ſhade. Alſo ye muſt underſtand, when ye ſet or plant any ranks and trees together, ye muſt have more ſpace betwixt your ranks and trees, (then when ye ſet but one ranke) that they may have room ſufficient on every ſide.

Ye ſhall alſo ſcarcely ſet or plant Pear trees, or Apple trees, or other great Trees, upon dead or Moſſie barren ground unſtirred, for they increaſe thereon to no purpoſe. But other leſſer trees very well may grow, as Plum trees, and ſuch like: now when all the ſaid things above be conſidered, ye ſhall make your holes according to the ſpace that ſhall be required of every tree that ye ſhall plant or ſet, and alſo the place meet for the ſame ſo much as ye may convenient, ye ſhall make your holes large enough; for ye muſt ſuppoſe the tree ye do ſet, hath not the halfe of his roots he ſhall have hereafter, therefore ye muſt help him and give him of good fat earth, (or dung) all about the roots when as ye plant him. And if any of the ſame roots be too long, and bruiſed and hurt, ye ſhall cut them clean off ſlope wiſe, ſo that the upper ſide of each root ſo cut, may be longeſt in ſetting, and for the ſmal roots which come forth all about thereof, ye may not cut them off as the great roots.

How ye ought to enlarge the holes for your trees when ye plant them.

WHen as ye set the trees in the holes, ye must then enlarge the roots in placing them, and see that they take all downwards, without turning any roots the end upwards; and ye must not plant or set them too deep in the earth, but as ye shal see cause. It shall be sufficient for them to be planted or set (halfe a foot, or thereabouts) in the earth,, so that the earth be above all the roots halfe a foot or more, if the place be not very burning and stony.

Of dung and good earth, for your Plants and trees.

AND when as ye would replant or set, ye must have of good fat earth or dung, well mingled with a part of the same earth, whereas ye took your plants out of, with all the upper crests of the earth, as thick as ye can have it: the said earth which ye shall put about the roots, must not be put to nigh the roots, for doubt of the dung being laid to nigh, which wil put the said roots in a heat, but let it be wel mingled with the other earth, and wel tempered in the holes, and the smallest and slendereſt Cions that turn up among those roots, ye may plant therewith very well.

If ye have wormes amongst the earth of your roots.

IF there be worms in the fat earth or dung, that ye put about your roots, ye must mingle it well also with the dung of Oxen or Kine, or slekt Sope ashes about the root, which will make the worms to die, for otherwise they greatly hurt the roots.

To digge well the earth about the tree roots.

ALso ye must dig well the earth, principally all round about the roots, and more often if they drie, then if they be wet; ye must not plant or set trees when it raineth, nor let the earth be very moist about the roots, The trees that be planted or set in vallies, commonly prosper wel by drought; and when it raineth, they that be on the hils are better by watering by drops then others; but if the place or ground be moist of nature, ye must plan or set your trees the deeper thereon.

The nature of the place.

ON high and drie places, ye must plant or set your trees a little more deep, then in the vallies; and ye must not fill the holes in high places, so full as the other, to the end that the rain may better moisten them,

Of good earth.

YE ſhal underſtand that of good earth commonly cometh good fruit; but in certain places (if that they might be ſuffered to grow) they would ſeaſon the tree the better. Otherwiſe they ſhall not come to proof, nor yet have a good taſt.

With what ye ought to bind your trees

WHenſoever your trees ſhal be replanted or ſet, ye muſt knock in (by the root) a ſtake, and bind your trees thereto for fear of the wind: and when they do ſpring, ye ſhall dreſſe them and bind them with bands that may not break, which bands may be of ſtrong ſoft herbs, as Bulruſhes or ſuch like; or of old linen clouts, if the other be not ſtrong enough; or elſe ye may bind them with Oziars, or ſuch like, but for fear of fretting or hurting your trees.

CHAP. VII.

This Chapter treateth of medicining and keeping the Trees when they are planted.

The firſt councel is, when your trees be but plants (in drie weather) they muſt be watered

THe young trees which be newly planted, muſt ſometimes in Summer be watred when the time waxeth drie, at the leaſt the firſt year after they be planted or ſet. But as for other greater trees which are wel taken & rooted a good time, ye muſt dig them all over the roots after *Alhallontide*, and uncover them four or five foot compaſs about the root of the trre; and let them ſo lie uncovered until the latter end of Winter. And if ye do then mingle about each tree of good fat earth or dung, to heat and comfort the earth withall, it ſhall be good.

With what dung ye ought to dung your trees.

AND principally unto Moſſie trees, dung them with Hogs dung mingled with other earth of the ſame ground, & let the dung of Oxen be next about the roots; and ye ſhall alſo abate the Moſs of the tree with a great knife of wood, or ſuch like, ſo that ye hurt not the bark thereof.

When ye ought to uncover your trees in Summer.

IN the time of Summer, when the earth is ſcantly halfe moiſt, it ſhall be good to dig at the foot of the trees, all about the roots of

ſuch as have not been uncovered in the Winter before, and to mingle it with good fat earth: and to fill it againe, and they ſhall do well.

When ye ought to cut or prune your trees.

AND if there be in your trees certaine branches of ſuperfluous wood, that ye will cut off, tarry until the time of the entering in of the ſap, that is, when they begin to bud, as in *March* and *April:* Then cut off as ye ſhall ſee cauſe, all ſuch ſuperfluous branches hard by the tree, that thereby the other branches may proſper the better, for then they ſhall ſooner cloſe the ſap upon the cut places then in the Winter, which ſhould not do ſo well to cut them, as certain do teach which have not good experience. But for ſo much as in this time trees be entering into the ſap, as is aforeſaid; Take heed therefore in cutting then off your great branches haſtily that through their great weight, they do not cleave or ſeparate the bark from the tree, in any part thereof.

How to cut your great branches and when.

AND for the better remedy: Firſt you ſhall cut the ſame great branches, halfe a foot from the tree, and after to ſaw the reſt clean hard by the body of the tree, then with a broad Chefil, cut all clean and ſmooth upon that place, then cover it with Ox dung. Ye may alſo cut them well in winter, ſo that ye leave the Trunk or branch ſomewhat longer, ſo as ye may dreſſe and cut them again in March and April, as is before mentioned.

How ye ought to leave the great branches cut.

OTher things here are to be ſhewed of certaine great and old trees onely, which in cutting the great branches thereof trunchion wiſe, do renew again, as Walnuts, Mulbery trees, Plum trees, Chery trees, with others, which ye muſt disbranch the boughes thereof, even after *Alhallontide*, or as ſoon as their leaves be fallen off, and likewiſe before they begin to enter into Sap.

Of trees having great branches.

THe ſaid great branches when ye ſhall disbranch them, ye ſhall ſo cut them off in ſuch Trunchions, to lengthen the tree, that the one may be longer then the other, that when the Cions be grown good and long thereon, ye may graffe on them again as ye ſhall ſee cauſe, according as every arme ſhall require.

Of barrennesse of trees, the time of cutting ill branches, and of unoovering the roots.

Sometimes a man hath certain old trees, which be almost spent, as of the Pear trees, and Plum trees, and other great trees, the which bare scant of fruit; but when as ye shall see some branches well charged therewith, then ye ought to cut off all the other ill branches and boughes, to the end that those that remain may have the more sap to nourish their fruit, and also to uncover their roots after *Alhallontide*, and to cleave the greatest roots thereof (a foot from the trunk) and put into the said clefts, a thin slate of hard stone; there let it remaine, to the end that the humour of the tree may enter out thereby, and at the end of Winter, ye shall cover him againe, with as good and fat earth as ye can get, and let the stone alone.

Trees which ye must helps, or pluck up by the roots.

All sorts of trees which spring Cions from the roots, as Plum trees, all kind of Chery trees, and small Nut trees, ye must helpe in plucking their Cions from the roots in Winter, as soon as conveniently ye can, after the leafe is fallen. For they do greatly pluck down and weaken the said trees, in drawing to them the substance of the earth.

What dath make a good Nut,

But chiefly to plant these Cions, the best way is to let them grow and be nourished two or three years from the root, and then to transplant them or set them in the Winter, as is aforesaid. The Cions which be taken from the foot of the Hasell tree, make good Nuts, and be of much strength and vertue, when they are not suffered to grow to long from the root, or foot aforesaid.

Trees eaten with beasts, must be graffed againe.

When certaine graffes being well in Sap, of three or foure years or thereabouts be broken, or greatly endamaged with beasts, which have broken thereof, it shall little profit to leave those graffes so, but it were better to cut them, and to graffe them higher or lower then they were before. For the graffes shall take as well upon the new as old Cion being graffed on the wild stock: But it shall not so soon close, as upon the wild stock head.

How your wild stocks ought not hastily to be removed.

In the beginning when ye have graffed your graffes on the wild stock, do not then hastily pluck up those Cions, or wild stocks

ſo graffed, untill ye ſhall ſee the graffes put forth a new ſhoot, the which remaining ſtill, ye may graffe thereon again, ſo that your graffes in haſty removing any chance to die.

When to cut off the naughty Cions from the wood.

WHen your graffes on the ſtocks ſhal put forth new wood, or a new ſhoot, as of two or three foot long, and if they put forth alſo of other ſmall ſuperfluous Cions (about the ſaid members or branches that ye would nouriſh) cut off all ſuch ill Cions hard by the head, in the ſame year they are graffed in, but not ſo long as the wood is in ſap, till the winter after.

How ſometimes to cut the principall members.

ALſo it is good to cut ſome of the principall members or branches, in the firſt year, if they have too many, and then again, within two or three years after, when they ſhall be well ſprung up, and the graffes well cloſed on the head of the ſtock, ye may trim or dreſſe them again, in taking away the ſuperfluous branches, if any there remain; for it is ſufficient enough to nouriſh a young tree to leave him one principal member on the head, ſo that he may be one of thoſe, that have been graffed on the tree before, yea, and the tree ſhall be fairer and better in the end then if he had two or three branches, at the foot. But if the tree have been graffed with many great Cions, then ye muſt leave him more largely, according as ye ſhall ſee cauſe or need, to recover the clefts on the head of the ſaid graffe or ſtock,

How to guide and govern the ſaid tree.

WHen that your trees do begin to ſpring, ye muſt order and ſee to them wel, the ſpace of three or four years, or more, until they be well and ſtrongly grown, in helping them above, in cutting the ſmal twigs and ſuperfluous wood, until they be ſo high without branches as a man, or more if it need be, and then ſee to them well, in placing the principall branches, if need be, with forks or wands prickt right and well about them at the foot, and to prune them, ſo that one branch do not approach too nigh the other, nor yet fret one the other, when as they do inlarge and grow, and ye muſt cut off certaine branches in the tree, whereas they are thickeſt.

A kinde of ſickneſſe in trees.

WHen certain trees are ſick of the Gall, which is a kind of ſickneſſe that doth eat the bark [illegible]

and take out all the ſame infection with a Cheſil, or ſuch like thing. This muſt be done at the end of Winter, then put on that infected place of Ox dung, or Hogs dung, and bind it faſt thereon with clouts, and wrap it with Oziars, ſo let it remaine a long time, till It ſhall recover again.

Trees which have worms in the barke.

OF trees which have wormes within their barks, whereas ye ſhall ſee a ſwelling or riſing therein, there ye muſt cleave the ſaid bark unto the wood, to the end the humour may alſo diſtil out thereat, and with a little hook ye muſt pluck or draw out the ſaid wormes, with all the rotten wood that ye can ſee; then ſhall ye put upon the ſaid place, a plaiſter made of Ox dung, or Hogs dung mingled and beaten with Sage, and a little of unſlackt Lime, then let it be wel blended together, and ſpread it on a cloth, and bind it faſt and cloſe thereon ſo long as it will hold. The Lees of Wine ſhed or poured upon the roots of tree (the which be ſomewhat ſick through the coldneſſe of the earth) doth them much good.

Snailes, Ants and Wormes doth mar trees.

ALſo ye muſt take heed of all manner of young trees, and ſpecially of thoſe graffes, the which many worms and Flyes do endamage and hurt in the time of Sommer; thoſe are the Snailes, the Piſmires, or Ants: the field Snaile which hurteth alſo all other ſorts of trees that be great, principally in the time that the Cuckow doth ſing, and betwixt *April* and *Midſomer*, while they be tender. There be little beaſts called Sowes, which have may legs, and ſome of them be gray, ſome black, and ſome have a long ſharpe ſnout; which be very noyſome, and great hurters of young graffes, and other young trees alſo, for they cut off in eating the tender tops, (of the young Cions) as long as ones finger.

How ye ought to take the ſaid worms

FOr to take them well, ye muſt take heed and watch in the heat of the day (your young trees) and where you ſhall ſee any, put you hand ſoftly underneath, without ſhaking the tree, for they will ſodainly fall when one thinks to take them) therefore ſo ſoon as ye can, (that they flie not away nor fall) take him (quickly on the Cion) with your other hand.

To

To keepe Ants from young trees.

FOr to keepe the young trees from Snailes and Ants, it ſhall be good to take Aſhes and to mingle unſlackt Lime, beaten in pouder therewith, then lay it all about the root of the tree, and when it raineth, they ſhall be beaten down into the Aſhes and die: but ye muſt renew your Aſhes after every raine from time to time; alſo to keepe them moiſt, ye muſt put certain ſmall veſſels full of water at the foot of your ſaid trees, and alſo the Lees of Wine, to be ſpread on the ground there all abouts. For the beſt deſtroying of the ſmall ſnailes on trees, ye muſt take good heed in the ſpring times before the trees be leaved; then if ye ſhall ſee as it were ſmal warts, knobs or branches on the trees, the ſame will be ſnailes. Provide to take them away faire and ſoftly, before they be full cloſed, and take heed that ye hurt not the wood or barke of the ſaid tree as little as ye can; then burn thoſe branches on the earth, or all to tread them under your feet, and then if any do remain or renew, look in the heat of the day, and if ye can ſee any, which will commonly be one the clefts or forks of the branches, and alſo upon the branches lying like tofts or tops together, then wrap your hands all over with old clothes (and bind leaves beneath them, and above them) and with your two hands rub them down therein, and ſtraight way fire it, if ye do not quickly with diligence, they will fall, and if they fall on the earth, ye cannot lightly kill them; but they will renew againe: theſe kind of worms are noiſome, Flies which be very ſtrange, therefore take heed that they do not caſt a certain redneſſe on your face and body; and whereas there be many of them, they be dangerous: it is ſtrange to tell of theſe kind of Worms, if ye come under or among the trees whereas be many, they will caſt your face and hand (your covered body, as your neck, braſt and arms) full of ſmall ſpots, ſome red, ſome black, ſome blewiſh, which wil ſo tingle and trouble you like Nettles, ſometimes for a day, or a day and a night after: they be moſt on Plum trees, and Apple trees, nigh unto moiſt places, and ill airs: yet nevertheleſſe by the grace of God there is no danger (that I underſtand) to be taken by them. Ye ſhall underſtand, that if it be in the evening, or in the morning, when it raineth, they remaine about the graffing place of the tree, therefore it will be hard to find them, becauſe they are ſo ſmall, Moreover, if ſuch branches do remain in the upper part of the boughes or tree

ye ſhal put drie ſtraw under the boughes, then with a wiſp on a poles end, ſet fire on all and burn them.

A note in Spring time of Fumigations.

HEre is to be underſtood and noted, that in the ſpring time onely, when trees do begin to put forth leaves and bleſſoms, ye muſt then alwaies take heed unto them, for to defend them from the froſt (if there come any) with Fumigations or ſmokes, made on the wind ſide of your Orchards (or under your trees) with ſtraw, hey, drie chaffe, drie Ox dung, or ſaw-duſt dried in an Oven, or Tanners Oze dried likewiſe, or *Galbanum*, or old ſhooes, thatch of houſes, or haie, and ſuch like, none of theſe to be mingled with the other: all theſe be good againſt the froſt in the ſpring time, and ſpecially good againſt the Eaſt wind, which breedeth (as ſome ſay) the Caterpiller worm.

To defend trees from the Caterpiller.

SOme to defend their trees from the Caterpiller, when the bloſſoming time is dried (if there be no froſt) by caſting of water, or ſalt water, every ſecond or third day upon their trees (with inſtruments for the ſame, as with Squires of Wood or Braſſe, or ſuch like) for in keeping of them moiſt, the Caterpiller cannot breed thereon: this experience have I known proved of late to be good. For to conclude, he that wil ſet or plant trees, muſt not paſſe for any pains, but have a pleaſure and delight therein, in remembring the great profit that commeth thereby: Againſt ſcarceneſſe of Corne, fruit is a good ſtay for the poore, and often it hath been ſeen, one Acre of Orchard ground, worth foure Acres of Wheat ground.

Here followeth a little Treatise, how one may Graffe & Plant artificially, and Dextrously, and to make many things very strange in Gardens.

FOr to graffe a subtile way, take one oylet, or eye of a Graffe, slit it round about and beneath, and then behind down right, wreath him off, and set him upon another Cion, as great as he is, then dress him, as is aforesaid, and he shall grow and bare.

To graffe one Vine upon another.

FOr to graffe one Vine upon another, ye shall cleave him as ye do other trees, and then put the Vine graffe in the clefts, then stop him close and wel with wax, and so bind him, and he shall grow.

If a tree be long without fruit.

YE shal uncover his root, & make a hole with a Piercer, or small Auger, in the greatest root he hath, without piercing through the root, then put in a pin (in the said hole) of dry wood (as Oake or Ash) and so let it remain in the said hole, and stop it close again with wax, and then cast earth and cover him again, and he shall bear the same yeare.

For to have Peaches two months before others.

TAke your Cions of a Peach tree that doth soon blossome in the Spring time, and graffe them upon a franke Mulbery tree, and he shall bring forth Peaches two moneths before others.

To have Damsons or other Plums until Alhallontide

FOr to have Damsons all the Sommer long until *Alhalltntide*, and of many other kind of sorts likewise, ye shall graffe

them

them upon the Goosebery tree, unpn the Franke Mulbery tree, and upon the Cherry tree, and they shall endure upon the trees tell *Alhallontide.*

To make Medlars, Cherries, and Peaches in eating to tast like spice.

FOr to make Medlars, Cherries and Peaches, to tast in the eating pleasant like spice, the which ye may also keepe until new come againe: ye shall graffe them upon the franke Mulbery tree, as I have afore declared, and in the graffing ye shall wet them in Hony, and put a little of the powder of some good spices, as the powder of Cloves, of Cinamon, or Ginger.

To make a Muscadel tast.

FOr to make a Muscadel taste, take a Gouge or Chesil of Iron, (and cut your sap round about): then put in your Gouge or Chesil, under your sap on your Cion, and raise three eyes or oylets round about, and so take off fair and softly your bark round about and when it is so taken off, anoint it all over within the bark, with powder of cloves or Nutmegs, then set it on again, and stop it close with wax round about, that no water may enter in, and within thrice bearing, they shall bring a faire Muscadel Reison, which ye may after both graffe and plant, and they shall be after a Muscadel fruit: some slits the bark down, and so put in of Spice.

To set Apples and Pears to come without blossoming.

FOr to make Apples and Pears, and other sorts of fruit to come without blossoming, that is, ye shall graffe them (as ye doe other kind of fruit) upon the Fig tree.

To have Apples and Chestnuts rath, and also long on the trees.

FOr to have Apples called (in *French*) *de blanc Durel*, or *de Troall*, and of Chestnuts very rath, & long (as unto *Alhallontide*) on the trees; and to make such fruit also to endure the space of two years, ye shall graffe them on a laterward furit, as Pome Richard, or upon a Pear tree, or Apple tree of Dangoisse.

To have good Cherries on the trees at Alhallontide.

TO have Cherries on many trees good for to eat unto *Alhallontide*, ye shall graffe them upon a franke Mulbery tree, and likewise to graffe them upon a Willow, or Sallow tree, and they shall

To have rath Medlars two months before others.

FOr to have Medlars two months sooner then others: and the one shall be better far then the other, ye shall graffe them upon a Goosebery tree, and also a franke Mulbery tree, and before ye do graffe them, ye shal wet them in honey, and then graffe them.

To have rath or timely Peares.

FOr to have a rath Peare, the which is in *France*, as the Pear *Cailonet*, and the Pear *Hastimean*. For to have them rath or soon, ye shall graffe them on the Pine tree; And for to have them late, ye shal graffe them on the Peare called in France *Dangoisse*, or no other like hard Pears.

To have Misples or Medlars without stones.

FOr to have Medlars without stones, the which shall tast sweet as honey, ye shal graffe them as the other, upon an Eglantine, or sweet Briar tree, and ye shal wet the graffes (before ye graffe them) in hony.

To have Peares betimes.

FOr to have the Peare *Anguisse* or *Pearmain*, or *Satigle*, (which be of certain places so called) a month or two before others, the which shal endure and be good until the new come againe, ye shal graffe them upon a Quince tree, and likewise upon the frank Mulbery tree.

To have ripe and franke Mulberies very soon or late.

FOr to have franke or ripe Mulberies very soon, ye shall graffe them upon a rath Peare tree, and upon the Goosebery tree, and to have very late, and to endure unto *Alhallontide*, ye shall graffe them upon the Medlar tree.

How to keepe Peares a yeare.

YE shall take of fine Salt very drie, and put thereof with your Pears into a barrel, in such sort, that one Pear doth not touch another, so fill the barrel if ye list, then stop it, and let it be set in some drie place, that the Salt do not wax moist, thus ye may keepe them long and good.

To have your fruit tast halfe Apples, halfe Pears.

IF you wil have your fruit tast halfe a Pear, and halfe an Apple, ye shal in the spring take graffes, the one a Peare, and the other an Apple, ye shall cleave or pare them in the graffing joynt or

ſtock, and ſee wel that no raine do enter therein upon your joynts, and that fruit ſhall bring thee halfe a Peare, and the other halfe an Apple in taſt.

Time of graffings.

IT is good alſo to graffe one or two dayes before the change, and no more, for looke ſo many more dayes, as ye ſhall graffe before them, ſo many more years it wil be ere your trees ſhall bring fruit: alſo it is good graffing all the increaſe of the moon, but the ſooner after the change the better.

To graffe the Quince Apple.

IF ye graffe the Quince Apple upon an Apple ſtock, ye ſhall not long continue without the Canker, but to graffe him on a knotty young Crabſtock, he ſhall endure long witſtout the Canker.

To deſtroy Piſmires, or Ants about a tree

FOr to deſtroy Emits or Ants, which be aboat a tree, if ye remove and ſtir the earth all about the root, of the ſaid tree, then put thereon all about, a great quantity of the ſoot of a Chimney, and the Ants or Piſmires wil either away, or elſe ſhortly die.

Another for the ſame.

YE ſhal take of the ſaw-duſt of Oke-wood onely, and ſtrew that all about the tree root, and the next raine that doth come, all the Piſmires or Ants ſhal die there. For Earewigges, ſhoes ſtopt with hay, and hanged on the tree one night, they come all in.

To have Nuts, Plummes, and Almonds.

Nuts greater then other.

FOr to have great Nuts, Plummes, and Almonds greater then others, ye ſhall take foure Nuts, or of any of this fruit aboveſaid, and put them into a pot of earth, joyning the one with the other as near as ye can, then make a hole in the bottome of the pot, through the which holes theſe Nuts ſhall be conſtrained to iſſue and being ſo conſtrained, ſhall come to perfection and grow together as in one tree, the which in time ſhall bring fruit greater and larger then others.

To make Oake or other tree to be green in Winter as in Summer.

ALſo to make an Oake or other tree to be green as wel in Winter as in Summer, ye ſhall take the graffe of an Oake tree, or

eſt way is, to graffe one through the other. Alſo who ſo wil edifie or make an Orchard, he ought (if he can) to make it in a moiſt place whereas the South winds, or Sea winds may have recourſe into them.

The time of Planting without roots and with roots.

ALſo the beſt time to plant or ſet without roots, as with branches or ſteverings of all ſorts of trees which hath a great pith, as Fig-trees, Haſell trees, Mulbery trees, and Vines, with other like trees, all which ought to be ſet from the midſt of September (if the leaves be off) unto *Alhallontide*; and all other trees with roots, ought to be ſet in Advent until *Chriſtmas*, or a non after, if the time be not very cold and dangerous.

To keepe fruit from the Froſt.

ALſo to keep fruit from the froſt, and in good colour, until the new come againe, ye ought ſo for to gather them whem the time is faire and drie, and the moon in her decreaſing; and that they lie alſo in very drie places by night, covered thin with wheat-ſtraw, and if the time of Winter be cold and very hard, then put on Hay above them in your ſtraw, and take it away when as a fair time commeth: and thus ye ſhal keep your fruit faire and good.

The dayes to Plant and Graffe.

ALſo (as ſome ſay) from the firſt day of the New Moon, unto the 13. day thereof, is good for to plant, or graffe, or ſow, and for great need, ſome do take unto the 17. or 18 day thereof, and not after, neither graffe nor ſow, but as is aforementioned, a day or two daies before the change, the beſt ſignes are, *Taurus*, *Virgo*, and *Capricorne*,

To have green Roſes all the yeare.

FOr to have green Roſes, ye ſhall (as ſome ſay) take your Roſe buds in the Spring time, and then graffe them upon the Holly ſtock, and they ſhall be green all the year.

To keepe Reiſons or Grapes good a year.

FOr to keep Reiſons or Grapes good all a whole yeare, ye ſhall take of good drie ſand, and then lay your Reiſons or Grapes therein, and it ſhal keep them good a whole year. Some keep them in a cloſe Glaſſe from the aire.

To make fruit Laxative from the tree.

FOr to make any fruit laxative from the tree, what fruit ſoever it be, make a hole in the ſtock, or in the maſter root of the tree

(with a great Piercer ſlopewiſe) not through, but unto the pith, or ſomewhat further, then fill the ſaid hole with the juyce of Elder, of *Centorie*, or of *Seny*, or *Turbith*, or ſuch like laxatives, then fill the ſaid hole therewith, of which of them ye wil, or elſe ye may take three of them together, & fill the ſaid hole therewith and then ſtop the ſaid hole cloſe, with ſoft wax, then clay it thereon, and put Moſs very wel over all, ſo that nothing may iſſue or fal out, and all the fruit of the ſaid Tree ſhall be from thence forth laxative.

Of the Soyle.

IF your ground be barren (for ſome are forced to make an Orchard of barren ground) make a pit three quarters deep, and two yards wide and round in ſuch places where you would ſet your trees, and fill the ſame with fat, pure, and mellow earth, one whole foot higher then your Soyle, and therein ſet your Plant. For who is able to manure an whole Orchard plot, if it be barren? But if you determine to manure the whole ſite, this is your way: Digge a trench half a yard deep, all along the lower, (if there be a lower) ſide of your Orchard plot, caſting up all the earth on the inner ſide, and fill the ſame with a good ſhort, hot, and tender mucke, and make ſuch another Trench, and fill the ſame as the firſt, and ſo the third, and ſo thoughout your ground. And by this meanes your plot ſhall be fertile for your life. But be ſure you ſet your trees, neither in dung nor barren earth.

Your ground muſt be plaine, that it may receive and keepe moyſture, not onely the Rain falling thereon, but alſo water caſt upon it, or deſcending from higher ground by Sluces, Conduits, &c. For I account moyſture in Sommer very needfull in the ſoyle of Trees, and drought in Winter. Provided that the ground neither be boggy, nor the inundation be paſt 24. hours at any time, and but twice in the whole Sommer, and ſo oft in Winter. Therefore if your plot be in a Bank, or have a deſcent, make trenches by degrees. Allyes, Walks, and ſuch like, ſo as the water may be ſtayed from paſſage. And if too much water be any hinderance to your walks (for drie walks do wel become an Orchard, & an Orchard them:) raiſe your walks with earth firſt, & then with ſtones, as big as Walnuts: & laſtly with gravel. In Sommer you need not doubt to much water from heaven, either to hurt the health of your body, or of your trees. And if overflowing moleſt you after one day, avoid it then by deep trenching.

Graſſe alſo is thought deedfull for moyſture, ſo you let it not touch the roots of your trees, for it will breed Moſſe and the barall of your tree neer the earth wou[illegible]

Here followeth certaine wayes of Planting and Graffing, with other necessaries herein meet to be knowne.

To graffe one Vine on another.

YOu that wil graffe one Vine upon another, ye shall in January, cleave the head of the Vine, as ye do other stocks, and then put in your Vine graffe or Cion, but first ye must pare him thin, ere ye set him in the head, then Clay and Mosse him as the other.

Chosen dayes to Graffe in, and to choose your Cions

WHensoever that yee wil Graffe, the best chosen time is on the last day before the changs, and also in the change, and on the second day after the change, if ye graffe (as some say) on the third, fourth, and fifth day after the change, it wil be so many yeares, ere those Trees bring forth fruit. Which thing ye may believe if ye wil, but I wil not. For some do hold opinion, that it is good graffing from the change, unto the eighteenth day thereof, which I think to be good in all the increasing of the Moon, but the sooner the better.

To gather your Cions.

SUch Cions or Graffes, which ye do get on the other Trees, the young Trees of three or foure yeares, or five or six yeares are [illegible] to have graffes. Take them off no under boughes but in the top

upon the East side, if ye can, and of the fairest and greatest. Ye shal cut them two inches long of the old Wood, beneath the joynt. And whensoever ye wil graffe, cut or pare your graffes taperwise from the joynt, two inches or more of length, which ye shall set into the stock: and before ye set it in, ye shall open your stock with a wedge of Iron, or hard wood, faire and softly: then if the sides of your clefts be ragged, ye shal pare them with the point of a sharp knife on both sides, within and above, then set in your graffes close on the outsides, and also above, but let your stock be as little while open as you can, and when your graffes be wel set in, pluck forth your wedge: and if your stock do pinch your graffs much, then ye must put in a wedge of the same wood to helpe your graffes: Then ye shall lay a thick barke or pill over the cleft, from the one graffe to the other, to keepe out the Clay and Raine, and so Clay them two fingers thick round about the Cliffes, and then lay on Mosse, but Wool is better next to your Clay, or else to temper your Clay with Wool or Haire, for it shall make it bide closer, and also stronger on the stock head: some take Wool next the Clay, and wrapeth it all over with linnen clouts, for the Wool being once moist, wil keepe the Clay so a long time. And othersome take Woollen clouts, that have been laid in the juyce of Worm-wood, or such like bitter things, to keep creeping wormes from comming under to the graffes. If ye graffe in Winter, put your Clay uppermost, for Summer your Moss. For in Winter the Moss is warme, and your Clay wil not cleave. In Summer your Clay is cold, and your mosse keeps him from cleaving or chapping. To bind them, take of Willow pils, of cloven Briers, of Oziers, or such like. To gather your graffes on the East part of the tree is counted best: if ye gather them below on the under boughes, they wil grow flaggie, and spreading abroad: If ye take them in the top of the tree, they wil grow upright. Yet some do gather their Cions or Graffes on the sides of the trees, and so graffe them again on the like sides of the stocks, the which is of some men not counted so good for fruit. It is not good to graffe a great stock, for they will be long ere they cover the head thereof.

Of Wormes in trees or fruit.

IF ye have any trees eaten with Wormes, or do bring Wormie fruit, yee shal use to wash all his body and great branches, with two parts of Cow pisse, and one part of Vinegar, or else if

ye can get no Vinegar, with Cow pisse alone, tempered with common Ashes: then wash your trees therewith before the Spring, and in the Spring, or in Summer. Annisseeds sown about the tree roots, drive away wormes, and the fruit shal be the sweeter.

The setting of stones, and ordering thereof.

AS for Almond trees, Peach trees, Cherry trees, Plum trees, or others, ye shall thus plant or set them. Lay first the stones in water, three dayes and foure nights, untill they sinke therein: then take them betwixt your finger and your thumb, with the small end upward, and so set them two fingers deep in good earth. And when ye have so done, ye shall rake them all over, and so cover them: and when they begin to grow or spring, keepe them from weeds, and they shall prosper the better, especially in the first yeare. And within two or thee years after, ye may set or remove them where ye list, then if ye doe remove them againe after that, ye must prune off all his twigs, as ye shall see cause, nigh the stock: thus ye may do of all kind of trees, but especially those which have the great sap, as the Mulbery, or Fig trees, or such like.

To gather Gumme of any tree.

IF ye list to have the Gumme of an Almond tree, ye shal sticke a great naile into the tree, a good way, and so let him rest, and the Gum of the tree shal issue thereat: thus do men gather Gumme of all sorts of trees: yea, the common Gumme that men douse and occupy.

To set a whole Apple.

ALso some say, that if ye set a whole Apple four fingers in the earth, all the Pepins or Curnels in the same Apple will grow up together in one whole stock or Cion, and all those Apples shall be much fairer and greater then others, but ye must take heed, how ye do set those Apples, which doe come in leap yeare, for in a leap yeare (as some do say) the Curnels or Pepins are turned contrary, for if ye should so set, as commonly a man doth, ye shall set them contrary.

Of setting the Almond.

ALmonds do come forth and grow commonly wel, if they be set without the shel or huske, in good earth, or in rotten Hogges dung: If ye lay Almonds one day in Vinegar, then shall they (as some say) be very good to plant: or lay them in Milt and water,

Of Pepins watered.

THe Pepins and Curnels of those Trees, which have a thick or rough barke, if ye lay them three dayes in water, or else until they sinke therein, they shall be the better, then set them, or sow them, as is aforementioned, and then remove them, when they be wel rooted, of three or foure years growth, and they shal have a thin brak.

To plant or set Vines.

IF ye plant or set Vines, in the first or second yeare, they wil bring no fruit, but in the third yeare they wil beare, if they bee wel kept: ye shall cut them in January, and set them soone after they be cut from the Vine, and ye shall set two together, the one with the old wood, and the other without, and so let them grow, in plucking away all weeds from about them, and then ye shal remove them in the second and third yeare, being wel rooted, yee shal set them wel a foot deepe in good fat earth, with good dung as of one foot deepe, or thereabouts, and keepe them cleane from weeds, for then they wil prosper the better, & in summer when the Grape is knit, then ye shal break off his top or brance, at one or two joynts after the Grape, and so the grape shal be the greater, and in the winter when ye cut them, yee shal not leave past two or three leaders on each branch, on some branch but one leader, which must be cut betwixt two joynts, and ye shal leave the young Vine to bee the leader. Also ye shal leave thereof three or foure joynts at all times; if a young Cion do come forth of the old branch, or side thereof, if ye do cut him, ye shal cut him hard by the old branch, and if ye wil have him to bring the Grape next yeare, ye shal leave two or three joynts thereof, for the young Cions alwaies bringeth the grape: ye may at all times, so that the grape be once taken and knit, ever as the superfluous Cions doe grow, ye may breake them off at a joynt, or hard by the old branch, and the grapes wil be the greater: thus ye may order your Vine all the summer long without any hurt.

To set or plant the Cherry.

CHerry trees, and all the trees of stone fruit, would be planted or set of Cions, in cold grounds and places of good earth, and likewise in high or hilly places, drie and wel in the shade: if ye do remoue, ye ought to remove them in November and January, if ye shal see your Cherry tree wax rotten, then shal ye make a hole in the

cer, that the humour may passe forth thereby, then afore the spring shut him up againe with a pine of the same Tree: thus ye may do unto all other sorts of trees when they begin to rot, and is also good for them which beare scant of fruit or none.

To keepe Cherries good a yeare.

YEe shall cut off the stalkes, and then lay them in a wel leaded pot, and fill the said pot therewith, then put unto them of good thin Honey, and fill the said pot therewith, then stop it with Clay that no aire enter in, then set them in some faire Seller, and put on sand under and all about it, and cover the pot wel withal, so let it stand or remaine: thus ye may keepe them a yeare, as fresh as though they came from the tree, and after this sort ye may keep Pears or other fruit.

Against Pismiars.

IF ye have Cherry trees laded or troubled with Pismiars or Ants, ye shal rub the body of the tree, and all about the root with the juyce of Purslaine, mingled halfe with Vinegar. Some doe use to annoint the Tree beneath, and all about the body, with Tarre and Birdlime, with Whol, & oyle boiled together, and annoint the tree beneath therewith, and lay Chalkestones all about the tree root, some say it is good therefore.

The setting of Chestnuts.

THe Chestnut-tree, men do use to plant like unto the Fig-tree. They may be both planted and graffed wel, they wax wel in fresh and fat earth, for in sand they like not. If ye will set the curnels, ye shal lay them in water until they doe sinke, and those that doe sinke to the bottome of the water be best to set, which ye shal set in the Moneth of November and December, four fingers deep, a foot one from another, for when they be in these two moneths set, or planted, they shall endure long, and beare also good fruit; yet some there be that plant or set them first in dung like beanes, which wil be sweeter than the other sort, but those which be set in the two moneths aforesaid, shall first beare their fruit, men may prove which is best, experience doth teach. This is another way to prove & know, which Chestnuts be best to plant or set; that is, ye shal take a quantity of nuts, then lay them in sand the space of thirty dayes, then take and wash them in water faire and clean, and throw them into water again, and those which do sinke

naught : thus may ye doe with all other Curnels or Nuts.

To have all stone fruit taſt as ye ſhall thinke good.

IF ye wil have all ſtone fruit taſt as ye ſhal fancy or thinke good, ye ſhall firſt lay your ſtones to ſoke in much liquor or moiſture, as ye will have the fruit taſt of, and then ſet them; as for the Date tree (as ſome ſay) he bringeth no fruit except he be a hundred yeare old ; and the Date ſtone muſt ſoke one moneth in the water, before he be ſet, then ſhall ye ſet him with the ſmall end upward in good fat earth, in hot ſandie ground four fingers deep, and when the boughs do begin to ſpring, then ſhall ye every night ſprinckle them with raine water, (or other if ye have none) ſo long till they be come forth and grown.

Of graffing the Medlar and Miſple tree.

FOr to graffe the Medlar, or Miſple : men do uſe to graffe them on the white Hathorne tree, they will prove well, but yet ſmal and ſowre fruit ; to graffe one Medlar upon another is the better, ſome men do graffe firſt the Wilding Cion upon the Medlar ſtock, and ſo when he was wel taken and grown, then they graffe thereon the Medlar againe, the which doth make them more ſweet, very great and faire.

Of the Fig-tree.

THe Fig tree in ſome Countries, beareth his fruit four times a yeare, the black Figs are the beſt, being dried in the Sun, and then laid in a veſſel in beds one by another, and then ſprinkled or ſtrawed all over, every lay with fine meale, then ſtop it up, and ſo it is ſent out of the Land. If the Fig tree wil not beare, ye ſhal dig him all about, and under the roots in February, and take out then all his earth, and put unto him the dung of privie, for that he liketh beſt : ye may mingle with it of other fat earth, as Pigeons dung minged with oyle and pepper ſtampt, which ſhal forward him much to annoint his roots therewith : ye ſhall not plant the Fig tree, in cold times, he loveth hot, ſtonie, or gravelly ground, and to be planted in Autumne is beſt.

Of the Mulbery tree.

IF ye wil plant the Mulbery tree, the Fig tree or others which bring no ſeed, ye ſhall cut a twig or branch (from the tree root) of a years growth, with the old wood or barke, about a cubit long, which ye ſhall plant or ſet all in the earth, ſave a ſhaftnet long to

it, and so let it grow, in watering it as ye shall see need. This must be bone before the leaves begin to spring, but take heed that ye cut not the end or top above, for then it shall wither and dry.

Of trees that beare bitter fruit.

OF all such trees as beare bitter fruit, to make them bring sweeter, ye shall uncover all the roots in January, and take out all that earth, then put unto them of Hogges dung great plenty, and then after put unto them of other good earth, and so cover them therewi hal wel againe, and their fruit shall have a sweeter tast. Thus men may dee with other trees which bring bitter fruit.

To helpe barren trees.

HEre is another way to helpe barren trees, that they may bring fruit: if ye see your tree not bare in three or foure years good plenty, ye shall bore a hole with an Auger or Pearcer, in the greatest place of the body (within a yard of the ground) but not through, but unto or past the heart, ye shall bore him aslope: then take honey and water mingled together a night before, then put the said honey and water into the hole, and fill it therewith, then stop it close with a short pin made of the same tree, not striken in too far for piercing the Liquor.

Another way.

IN the beginning of Winter, ye shall dig those trees round about the roots, and let them so rest a day and night, and then put unto them of good earth, mingled wel with good store of water Oates, or with water Barley or Wheat, laid next unto the roots, then fill it with other good earth, and he shall beare fruit, even as the boring of a hole in the master root, and strike in a pin, and so fill him again, shal help him to bear, as afore declared.

To keepe your fruit.

ALl fruit may be the better kept, if ye lay them in dry places, in dry Straw or Hay; but Hay ripeth too soon, or in a Barly mow, not touching one the other, or in Chaffe, or in vessels of *Juniper*, or *Cipres* wood, ye may so keep them wel in dry Salt or Hony and upon boards, whereas the fire is nigh all the winter, also hanging nigh fire in the winter, in Nets of yarn.

The Mulbery tree.

THe Mulbery tree, is planted or set by the Figtree, his fruit is first sower, and then sweet, he liketh neither dew or raine, for they hurt him, he is wel pleased with foule earth and dung: His

branches wil wax dry within every ſix years; then muſt ye cut them off, as for other trees they ought to be pruned every year, as ye ſhal ſee cauſe, and they wil be the better, and to plant them from mid *February*, to mid *March* is beſt.

Of Moſſe of trees.

YE muſt not let your trees be too long uncleanſed, ye muſt rub off the moſs with a grate of wood, or a rough hair, or ſuch like when they be moiſt or wet, for then it wil off the ſooner, for moſſe doth take away the ſtrength and ſubſtance of the fruit, and makes the trees barren at length: when you ſee your trees begin to wax Moſſie, ye muſt in the winter uncover their roots, and put under them good earth; this ſhall helpe them, and keep them long without Moſſe, for the earth not ſtirred about the root, is one cauſe of Moſſineſſe, and alſo the barrenneſſe of the ground wherein hee ſtandeth, and your Moſſe doth ſuccour in Winter, Flies and other vermine, and ſo doth therein hide them in Summer, which is occaſion of eating the bloſſoms, and tender Cions thereof.

To keepe Nuts.

FOr to keepe Nuts long, ye ſhal drie them, and cover them in drie ſand, and put them in a drie Bladder, or in a Fat made of Walnut tree, and put of drie Ivie berries therein, and they ſhall be much ſweeter. To keep Nuts green a yeare, and alſo freſh, ye ſhal put them into a pot with Honie, and they ſhall continue freſh a yeare, and the ſaid Honey wil be gentle and good for many Medicines. To keep Walnuts freſh and green, in the time of ſtraining of Vergjuyce, ye ſhall take of that Pommis, and put thereof in the bottome of a barrel, then lay your Walnuts all over, then Pommis over them, and ſo Walnuts againe, and then of the Pommis, as you ſhall ſee cauſe to fill your veſſel. Then ſtop him cloſe as ye do a barrell, and ſet him in your Seller, or other place, and it ſhal keep your Nuts freſh and green a yeare. Some uſe to fill an earthen pot with ſmall Nuts, and then put to them drie ſand, and cover them with a lid of earth, or ſtone, and then they clay it, ſettin g the mouth of the pot downward, two foot within the earth, in their garden, or other place, and ſo they will keepe very moiſt and ſweet until new come.

To cut the Peach tree.

THePeach tree is of this nature, if he be cut (as ſome ſay) green,

cut it hard by the body: the withered twigs even as they wither, must be cut off hard by the great branch, or body thereof, for then they doe prosper the better. If a Peach tree do not like, ye shall put to his roots, the Lees of Wine mingled with water, and also wash his roots therewith, and likewise the branches, then cover him againe with good earth mingled with his own leaves, for those he liketh best. Ye may graffe Peach upon Peach, upon Hasil, or Ash, or upon Cherie tree, or ye may graffe the Almond upon the Peach-tree. And to have great Peaches, ye must take Cowes milke, and put good earth thereto, then all to strike the bodie of the tree therewith, both upward and downward, or else open the root all bare, three dayes and three nights, then take Goats milke, and wash all the roots therewith, and then cover them againe: this must be done when they begin to blossome, and so shall he bring great Peaches.

To colour Peach stones.

TO colour Peach stones that all the fruit thereof shall have the like colour hereafter, that is, ye shall lay or set Peach stones in the earth seven dayes or more, untill ye shall see the stones begin to open, then take the stones and the curnels softly forth thereof, and what colour ye wil, colour the curnel therewith, and put them into the shel againe, then bind it fast together, and set it in the earth, with the smal end upward, and so let him grow, and all the Peaches which shall come of the same fruit, (graffed or ungraffed) wil be of the same colour. The Peach tree ought to bee planted in Autome, before the cold do come, for he cannot abide the cold.

If Peach-trees be troubled with worms

IF any Peach trees be troubled with wormes, ye shall take two parts of Cow pisse, with one part of Vinegar, then shall ye sprinckle the tree all over therewith, and wash his roots and branches also, and it wil kill the wormes: This may ye do to all other trees, which be troubled with worms.

To have the Peach without stones.

YE shall take a Peach tree newly planted, then set a Willow hard by, which ye shall bore a hole through, then put the Peach tree through the said hole, and so close him on both sides thereof, Sap to Sap, and let him so grow one yeare, then the next yeare ye shal cut off the Peach stock, and let the Willow feed him

and cut off the upper part of the willow alſo three fingers high, and the next winter ſaw him off nigh the peach, ſo that the Willow ſhall feed but the Peach onely : and this way ye may have peaches without ſtones.

Another way for the ſame.

YEe ſhall take the graffe of Peaches, and graffe them upon the Willow ſtocke, and ſo ſhall your Peaches be likewiſe without ſtones.

If Trees doe not proſper.

IF that ye ſee that your trees doe not wax nor proſper, take and open the roots in the beginning of January, or aſore, and in the biggeſt root thereof, make a hole with an Auger to the pith or more, then ſtrike therein a pin of Oake, and ſo ſtop it againe cloſe, and let it be wel waxt all about the pinne, then cover him againe with good earth, and he ſhall doe well: ſome doe uſe to cleave the root.

How to graffe Apples, to laſt on the tree till Alhallontide.

HOw ye may have many ſorts of Apples upon your trees untill *Alhallontide*, that is, ye ſhall graffe your Apples upon the Mulbery tree, and upon the Cherry tree.

To make Cherries and Peaches ſmell, and taſt like ſpice.

HOw to make Cherries and Peaches, ſhall be pleaſant, and ſhall ſmell and taſt like ſpice, and that yee may keepe them well, till the new do come againe, ye ſhall graffe them on the Mulbery tree, as is aforeſaid. But firſt ye ſhall ſoke them in Honey and Water, wherein ye ſhall put of the powder of Cloves, Ginger, and Cinamon.

To graffe an Apple which ſhall be halfe ſweet, and halfe ſower.

TO graffe that your Apples ſhall be the one halfe ſweet, and the other halfe ſower : ye ſhall take two Cions, the one ſweet and the other ſower, ſome doe put the one Cion through the other, and ſo graffes them between the barke and the tree : and ſome againe doe pare both the Cions finely, and ſo ſets them joyning into the ſtock, incloſing ſap to ſap, on both the outſides of the graffes, untothe outſides of the ſtocke, and ſo ſets them into the head as the other, and they ſhall bring fruit, the one halfe ſweet, and the other halfe ſower.

To graffe a Roſe on the Holly.

FOr to graffe the Holly, that his leaves ſhall keepe all the yeare green : Some do take and leave the Holly, and ſo graffes in a

white or red Rose bud, and then put Clay and Mosse to him, and let him grow, and some do put the Rose bud into a slit of the bark, and so putteth Clay and Mosse, and binds him featly therein, and let him grow, and he shall carry his leafe all the yeare.

Of keeping of Plums.

OF Plummes there be many sorts, as Damsons, which bee all blacke, and counted the best: All manner of other Plums a man may keepe wel a yeare, if they be gathered ripe, and then dryed and put into vessels of Glasse: If ye cannot dry them wel in the Sunne, ye shall dry them on hurdels of Oziars made like Lettice Windows, in a hot Oven after Bread is drawne forth, and so reserve them. If a Plum-tree like not, open his root, and powre in all about the dregs of Wine mixt with water, and so cover him wel again, or powre on them stale Urine, or old pisse of old men, mixt with two parts of Water, and so cover him as before.

Of altering Peares, or stony fruit.

IF a Peare doe tast hard or gravelly about the core, like small stones, ye shall uncover his roots (in the Winter, or afore the spring) and take out all the earth thereof, and pick out all the stones as clean from the earth, as ye can about his root, then sift that earth, or else take of other good fat earth without stones, and fill all his roots againe therewith, & he shal bring a soft and gentle Peare to eat; but ye must see well to the watering of him often.

The making of Cider and Perrie.

OF Apples and Peares, men doe make Cider and Perry, and because the use thereof in most places is knowne, I wil here let pass to speake any further thereof; but this (in the pressing your Cider,) I wil counsel you to keepe cleane your vessels, and the places wherein your fruit doth lye, and especially after it is bruised or broken, for then they draw filthy aire unto them, and if it be nigh, the Cider shall be infected therewith, and also bare the taste after the infection thereof: therefore as soone as you can, turne it into cleane and sweet vessels, as into vessels of white Wine, or of Sack or Claret, and such like, for these shall keep your Cider the better and the stronger a long time after: Ye may hang a smal bag of Linnen by a threed, down into the lower part of your vessel, with powder of Cloves, Mace, Cinamon, and Ginger, and such like, which will make your Cider to have a pleasant tast.

To

To helpe frozen Apples.

OF Apples that be frozen in the cold and extreame Winter. The remedie to have the Ice out of them, is this : Ye shall lay them first in cold water a while, and then lay them before the fire, or other heat, and they shall come to themselves again.

To make Apples fall from the trees.

IF ye put of fiery coles under an Apple tree, and then cast of the powder of Brimstone therein, and the fume thereof ascend up, and touch an Apple that is wet, that Apple shall fall incontinent.

To water trees in Summer, if they wax dry about the root.

WHereas Apple trees be set in dry ground, and not deepe in the ground, in Sommer if they want moisture, ye shall take of wheat strow, or other, and every evening (or as ye shall see cause) cast thereon water all about, and it will keepe the trees moist from time to time.

To cherish Apple trees.

IF ye use to throw (in winter) all about your Apple-trees on the roots thereof, the Urine of old men, or stale pisse long kept, they shall bring fruit much better, which is good for the Vine also, or if ye do sprinckle or anoint your Apple tree roots with the gall of a Bull, they shall beare the better.

To make an Apple grow in a Glass.

TAke a glasse, what fashion you wil, and put your Apple therein when he is but smal, and bind him fast to the Glasse, and the glasse also to the tree, and let him grow, thus ye may have Apples of divers proportions, according to the fashion of your glasse. Thus may ye make of Cucumbers, Gourdes, or Pomicitrons, the like fashion.

THese three branches and figure of graffing in the shield in Sommer, is, the first branch sheweth how the barke is taken off, the middle place sheweth, how it is set too, and the last branch sheweth how to bind him on, in saving the oylet or eye from bruising.

To graffe many sorts of Apples on one tree.

YOu may graffe on one Apple tree at once, many kind of Apples, as one every branch a contrary fruit, as is afore declared, and of Peares the like: but see as nigh as you can, that all your Cions be of like springing, for else the one will not grow and shadow the other.

To colour Apples.

TO have coloured Apples, with what colour ye shall think good, ye shall bore slope a hole with an Auger, in the biggest part of the body of the tree, unto the midst thereof, or there abouts, and then looke what colour ye will have them of. First ye shall take water, and mingle your colour therwith, then stop it up again

with a ſhort pin made of the ſame wood or tree, then wax it round about: ye may mingle with the ſaid colour what ſpice ye liſt, to make them taſt thereafter: thus may ye change the colour and taſte of any Apple: your colours may be of *Saffron*, *Tourne ſoule*, *Braſell Saunders*, or others what ye ſhall ſee good. This muſt be done before the Spring do come: ſome doe ſay, if ye graffe on the Olive ſtock, or on the Alder ſtock, they will bring red Apples. Alſo they ſay, to graffe to have fruit without core, ye ſhall graffe in both the ends of your Cion into the ſtock, and when they be faſt grown to the ſtock, ye ſhall cut it in the midſt, and let the ſmaller end grow upward, or elſe take a Cion and graffe the ſmall end of the ſtock downward, and ſo ſhall ye have your Apple tree on S. *Lamberts* day, (which is the 17. of *September*) they ſhall never waſt, conſume, nor wax dry, which I doubt.

The ſetting of Vine Plants.

THeſe figures do ſhew how ye ought to plant and ſet your Vines in two and two together, the one to have a part of the old tree, and the other may be all of the laſt Cion: but when ye plant him with a part of the old tree, he ſhall commonly take root ſooner then the new Cion, ye muſt weed them every moneth, and let not the earth be too cloſe above their roots at the firſt, but now and then looſe it with a ſpade as ye ſhall ſee a raine paſt, for then they ſhall enlarge, and put forth better. Further herein ye ſhall underſtand after.

How to prune or cut a Vine in Winter

THis figure ſheweth, how all Vines ſhould bee pruned and cut, in a convenient time after Chriſtmas, that when ye cut them yee ſhall leave his branches very thin, as ye ſee by this figure : yee ſhall never leave above two or three leaders at the head of any principall branch, yee muſt alſo cut them off in the midſt between the knots of the young Cions, for thoſe be the leaders which will bring the Grape, the reſt in order yee ſhall underſtand as followeth.

Of the Vine and Grape.

SOmewhat I intend to ſpeake of the ordering of the Vine and Grape, to plant or ſet the Vine : the plants or ſets which be gathered from the Vine(and ſo planted)are beſt,they muſt not be old gathered, nor lie long unplanted after they be cut, for then they will ſoone gather corruption, and when ye doe gather your plants, ye muſt take heed to cut and chuſe them, where yee may with the young Cion, take a joynt of the old wood with the new, for the old wood will ſooner take root then the new,& better to grow then If it were all young Cion, ye ſhall leave the old wood to the young Cion, a foot, or halfe a foot, or a ſhaftnet long,the young Cion ye ſhall cut the length of three quarters of a yard or thereabouts, and ye ſhall chuſe of thoſe young Cions that bee thickeſt joynted or nigh joynts together, and when yee ſhall plant or ſet them, looke that your ground be well digged in the winter before, then

in January ye may both cut and Plant, but cut not in the froſt for that is danger of all kinde of trees, or ye may plant in the beginning of February; and when ye doe plant, ye ſhall take two of thoſe plants, and ſet or lay them together, a foot deepe in the earth, for two plants ſet together will not ſo ſoone faile, as one alone, and lay them a foot long wayes in the earth. ſo that there may be above the earth three or foure joynts: ye may plant a young Cion with the old, ſo that he be thick or nigh joynted, for then he is he better to root, and alſo to bring fruit: then when ye have ſet or laid them in the earth, then cover them well therewith, in treading it faſt downe unto the plants, but let the ends of your Cions or plants be turned upright, above the earth three or foure joynts, and there ſhall be more when they be ſet, ye ſhall cut them off, and ye ſhall cut them alwaies in the midſt betweene the two joynts, and then let them ſo grow, and ſee that ye weede them alwaies cleane, and once a moneth looſe the earth round about them and they ſhall prove the better. If it be very dry and hot in the Summer after, yee may water them, in making a hole with a Crow of Iron to the root, and there yee ſhall poure in water in the evening. As for the pruning of them, when the Grape is taken and cluſtered, then ye may break the next joynt or two after the Grape, of all ſuch ſuperfluous Cions as yee ſhall ſee cauſe, which wil cauſe the Grape to wax bigger: Yee may alſo breake away all ſuperfluous budder, or ſlender branches, which commeth about the root, or on the under branches which ye thinke wil have no Grape, and when ye prune or cut them in winter following, ye ſhall not cut the young Cion nigh the old, by three or foure joynts, ye ſhall not cut them like Oziers, to leave a ſort of heads together on the branch, which doth kill your Vine, ye ſhall leave but one head, or two at the moſt, of the young Cions upon the old branch, and to cut thoſe young Cions three or foure knots or joynts off, for the young Cions doe carry the Grape alwaies, and when yee leave upon a great branch many Cions, they cannot be well nouriſhed, and after yee have ſo cut them in winter, ye ſhall bind them with Oziars, in placing thoſe young branches as ye ſhal ſee cauſe, and in the ſpring time, when the branches are tender, ye ſhall binde them ſo, that the ſtormy tempeſt or winde doe not hurt them, and to bind them withall, the beſt is, great ſoft Ruſhes, and when the Grape is cluſtered,

then ye may break off all such branches as is afore declared, upon one old branch, three or foure heads be enough, for the more heads your branch hath, the worse your Grape shall be nourished, and when ye cut off any branch, cut him off hard by or nigh the old branch: if your Vine wax old, the best remedy is, if there grow any young Cion about the root, ye shall in the winter cut off the old Vine hard by the ground, or as nigh as you can, and let the young Vine lead, and he will continue a long time, if ye cover and fill the place about the root with good earth againe. There is also upon, or by every cluster of Grapes, a small Cion like a Pigs taile, turning about, which doth take away the sap from the Grape, if ye pinch it off hard by the stalke of your Grape, your fruit shall be the greater. If your Vine wax too rank and thick of branches, ye shall dig the root in winter, and open the earth, and fill it up againe with sand and ashes blend together, and whereas a Vine is unfruitfull and doth not beare yee shall bore a hole (with an Auger) unto the heart or pith, in the body or thickest part thereof, then put in the said hole a small stone, but fill not the hole close therewith, but so that the sicknesse of the Vine may passe thereby. Then lay all about the root of good earth mingled with good dung, and so shall he not be unfruitfull, but beare well ever after: or also, to cast on old mens Urine or pisse, all about the root of the barren Vine, and if he were halfe lost or mard, he should grow againe, and wax fruitfull, as before: This is to be done in winter.

To have Grapes without stones.

YEe shall take young plants or brances, and shall set or plant the top or small end downward in the earth, and so ye may set two of them together for failing, as I have afore declared of the others, and those branches shall bring Grapes without stones.

To make your Vine to bring a Grape to tast like Claret.

TO make your Vine to have a Grape, to taste like Claret Wine, and pleasant withall, ye shall bore a hole in the stock unto the heart, or pith thereof, then shall ye make a lectuary with the powder of cloves, of Cinamon mingled with a little fountaine or running water, and fill the said hole therewith, and stop it fast and close with wax, and so bind it fast thereon, with a linnen cloth, and those Grapes shall tast like Claret wine.

Of gathering your Grapes.

ALl Crapes that men do cut, before they are thorow ripe, the wine ſhall not be naturall, nor yet ſhall long endure good: But if ye will cut or gather grapes to have them good, and to have good VVine thereof, ye muſt cut them in the full, or ſoon after the full of the Moone, when ſhe is in *Cancer*, in *Leo*, in *Scorpio*, and in *Aquarius*, the Moon being in the waine, and under the earth.

To know if your Grape be ripe enough.

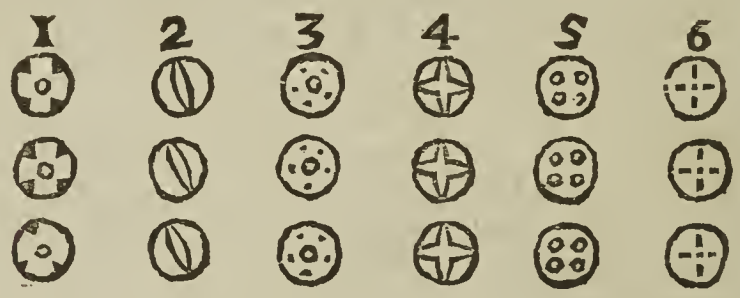
FOr to know if your grapes be ripe enough, or not, which yee ſhall not onely know in the taſt, but in ſight and taſte together, as in taſt if they be ſweet, and full in eating, and in ſight, if the ſtone will ſoone fall out, being chafted or bruiſed, which is the beſt knowledge, and alſo whether they be white or blew, it is all one matter: The good Grape is he, which commeth out all watry, or thoſe which be all clammie as birdlime: By theſe ſignes ſhall ye know when to cut, being thorow ripe or not, and whereas you doe preſſe your wine, ye muſt make your place ſweet and cleane, and your veſſels within to be cleane alſo, and ſee that they have ſtrong heads, and thoſe perſons which doe preſſe the Grape, muſt looke their hands, feet, and body be cleane waſhed, when as they goe to preſſe the Grape, and that no woman be there having her termes: And alſo ye ſhall eat of no Cheboles, Scalions, Onions, or Garlike, Anniſſeeds, or ſuch like: For all ſtrong ſavours your wine will draw the infection thereof, and as ſoone as your Grape is cut and gathered, you ſhall preſſe your VVine after as ſoone as ye may, which will make your VVine to be more pleaſant and ſtonger, for the Grapes which tarry long unpreſt, maketh the wine to be ſmall and ill: yee muſt ſee that your Veſſells be new and ſweet with'n, and to be waſhed with ſweet water, and then well dryed againe, and to prefume them with Maſtick, and ſuch ſweet vapour; and if your veſſell chance not to be ſweet, then ſhall ye pitch him on the ſides, which pitch will take away all evill, and ſuch ſtinging ſavour therein.

To prove or taſte Wine.

AND whenſoever ye will prove or taſt any VVine, the beſt time is, early in the morning, and take with you three or foure ſops of bread, then dip one after another into the wine, for therein ye ſhall find (if there be any ſharp taſt of the wine. Thus I leave (as this preſent) to ſpeak any further here of the Vine and Grape.

If this my ſimple labour be taken in good part (gentle Reader) it ſhall the more hereafter encourage me to ſet forth another book more at large, touching the Art of Planting and Graffing, with other things neceſſary to be known.

Here followeth the beſt times how to order or chooſe, and to ſet or plant Hoppes.



IN this figure ye ſhall underſtand, the placing and making of the Hoppe hills, by every Cipher over his head : The firſt place is ſhewed, but one Pole ſet in the midſt, and the Hoppe beneath: The ſecond ſheweth, how ſome doth chop down a Spade in the midſt of the Hill, and therein layes his Hop rootes. The third place is ſhewed, how other ſome do ſet out one Pole in the midſt, and the Hop roots at holes put in round about. The fourth place ſheweth, how ſome chop in a Spade croſs in the top, and there layes in his roots. The fifth place ſheweth, how ſome do ſet foure Poles thereing, and put the Hop round about the Hill. The ſixth place ſheweth, that ſome uſe to make croſſe holes in the ſides, and there lay the Hop roots. Thus many practiſes have been proved good : Provided alwaies that your Hills be of good fat earth, ſpecially in the midſt down unto the bottom. This I thought ſufficient to ſhew by this figure, the diverſity in ſetting, whereof the laying of the Hop is counted the ſureſt way.

THe beſt, and common ſetting time of Hoppes, is from mid *November*, to midde *February*, then muſt ye digge and cleanſe the ground of weeds, and mixe it well with good mould and fat earth. Then divide your hils a yard one from another orderly: in making them a yard a ſunder, and two foot and a halfe broad in the bottome, and when that ye plant them, ye ſhall lay in every

hill three or foure roots : Some doe in ſetting of them lay them croſſe-wiſe in the midſt of the hill, and ſo cover them again : ſome ſets the roots in foure parts of the hill, otherwiſe do make holes round about the hils, and put the roots therein, and ſo cover them again with light earth : Of one ſhort root in a yeare ye may have many plants, to ſet and lay as ye ſhall ſee it good, and it ſhall be ſufficient for every plant, to have two knots within the grouud, and one without : ſome do chop a Spade croſs in the hill, and lay in croſſe the Hop, and ſo cover it.

To chuſe the Hop.

YEe ſhall chuſe your roots beſt for your Hop, in the Summer before ye ſhall plant them, for then ye ſhall ſee which beares the Hop, for ſome there is that brings none; but that which breares chooſe for your plants, and ſet of thoſe in your hils, for ſo ſhall ye not be deceived, and they ſhall proſper well.

To ſow the ſeeds.

SOme doe hold, that ye may ſow among other ſeeds, the ſeeds of Hops, and ſo will increaſe and be good to ſet, or elſe to make beds, and ſow them alone, whereby they may increaſe to be ſet, and when they be ſtrong, ye may remove and ſet them in your hils, and plant them as the other before mentioned.

The ſetting your Poles.

THe beſt time is in Apriil, or when your roots be ſprang halfe, a yard long or more, then by every plant or Hop, in your hils, ye ſhall ſet up a pole of 13. or 14. foot long, or there abouts, as cauſe ſhall require. Some do uſe to ſet but foure poles in every hill, which is thought ſufficient, and when ye ſhall ſet them, ſee that ye ſet them ſo faſt, that great winds doe not caſt them down.

How to prune the Hop-tree.

YEe ſhall marke when the Hop doth bloſſom, and knit in the top, which ſhall be perceived to be the Hop, then take and cut up all the reſt growing thereabouts (not having Hop thereon) hard by the earth, that all thoſe which carry the Hop, might be the better nouriſhed : thus ſhall ye do in Summer, as ye ſhall ſee them increaſe and grow, untill the time of gathering.

To gather the Hoppe.

AT such time afore *Michaelmas*, as ye shall see your Hop wax browne or somewhat yellow, then he is best to be gathered in a dry day, in cutting your Hop by the ground, then pluck up your pole therewith for shaking off your Hop, so carry them into some dry house, and when ye have so pluckt them, yee shall lay them on borded lofts, or on hurdels of clothes, that the wine may dry them, and the aire, but not the Sun, for the same well take away the strength thereof, nor with fire, for that will doe likwise? and ye shall tosse and turne them daily till they be dry: to try them when they are dry, hold them in your hand a space, and if they cleave together when ye open your hand, they are not then drie: but if they flatter asunder in opning your hand, then ye may be sure they are drie enough. If not, let them remaine and use ye them as is before said. Ye shall understand the drinesse of them is to preserve them and long to last, but if need be, ye may occuped them well undryed, with less portion to sow.

What Poles are best.

YEe shall prepare your Poles of such wood as is light and stiff, and which will not bow with every winde, the best and meetest time to get them is in Winter, when the sappe is gone downe, and as soone as ye have taken of your Hoppe, lay your Poles in sundry places untill the next spring, whereby they may endure the longer.

How to order and dresse your Hills.

AFter the first yeare is past, you Hop being increased to more plenty of roots in your hils, yee shall after *Michaelmas* every yeare, open your hils, and cast down the tops unto the roots, uncovering them, and cut away all the superfluous roots, some doth pluck away all the roots that spreads abroad without the hils, then opens the hils and puts of good new earth unto them, and so covers them againe, which shall keepe them from the Frost, and also make the ground fat, so shall ye let them remaine unto the Spring, of the yeare, in February or March, then againe, if ye shall see any superfluous roots, ye may take them away, and cut them up, and your Hop shall be the better; then againe cast up the earth about your hils, and clensing them from all weeds and other roots, which will take away their strength, if the heatbs remaine, so let them rest till your Poles may be set therein.

Of ground for your Hop.

THe Hoppe delighteth and loveth a good and reasonable fat ground, not very cold, nor yet too moist, for I have seene them prove well in *Flanders*, in drie sandy fields, the Hoppe hils being of good fat earth, ye may (as some say) for great neede make your Hoppe grow and beare on any kinde of rockie ground so that your hils be great and fat earth; but the lower ground commonly proveth the best, so that it stand well and hot in the Sun.

A view of the rest above-said.

YEe shall marke and understand, all this order above-said, is to have many Hoppes and good, with a few roots, and plants placed in a small plot of ground. Ye shall understand, the wilde Hoppe that groweth in the hedges, is as good to occupie as the other, to set or plant in any other place but looke that ye take not the barren Hoppe to plant, some Hoppe will be barren for want of good earth, and lack of dressing, which yee shall perceive (as I have told you) in the summer before, that when they should beare they will be barren, which is for want of good fat earth, or an unkinde yeare, or lacke of weeding and good ordering. Therefore such as are minded to bestow labour on the ground, may have as good Hoppe growing in this Country, as is in other Countries: but if ye will not goe to the cost, to make Hop-yards, ye may with a light charge have Hops grow in your hedge-rowes, to serve as well as the other, and shall be as good for the quantity as the other in all respects: ye may (for lack of ground) plant Hop-roots in hedge-rowes, when ye do quick-set, set up poles by them when time shall require in the spring, and to bestow every winter after the gathering your Hoppe: on every hill head, a shovell full of dung to comfort the earth, for then will they beare the more plenty of Hoppe the next yeare following: to conclude, you that have grounds may well practise in all things afore mentioned, and specially to have Hoppe in this ordering, for your selves, and others: also ye shall give encouragement for others to follow hereafter. I have heard by credible persons, which have knowne a hundred hils, (which is a small plat of ground) to bear three hundred pound of Hoppe, so that the commodity is much, and the gaines great: and one pound of our Hoppe dryed and ordered, will goe as farre as two pound of the best Hoppe that com-

meth from beyond the Seas. Thus much I thought meet and necessary to write, of the ordering and planting of the Hop.

How to packe your Hoppes.

WHen your Hoppes be well toſſed and turned on boarded floores, and well dryed (as I have afore ſhewed) ye ſhall put them into great ſackes according to the quantity of your Hoppes, and let them be trodden downe hard together, which will keepe their ſtrength longer; and ſo ye may reſerve them, and take at your pleaſure. Some doe uſe (which have but ſmall ſtore) to tread them into dry Fats, and ſo preſerve them for their uſe, which is counted the better way, and the leſſe portion doth ſerve, and will longer keepe their vertue and ſtrength.

VViſhing long life and proſperous health,
To all furtherers of this Common-wealth.

FINIS.